THE MAHĀVASTU
VOLUME III
THE MAHĀVASTU

VOLUME III

Translated from the Buddhist Sanskrit

By

J. J. JONES, M.A. (Wales)

Head of the Department of Printed Books
National Library of Wales, Aberystwyth

L U Z A C & C O M P A N Y L T D.

46 GREAT RUSSELL STREET, LONDON, W.C.1

1956
## CONTENTS

| Abbreviations in footnotes | vii |
| Foreword                   | ix  |
| Kuśa Jātaka                | 1   |
| Jātaka of the Bull         | 26  |
| Jātaka of the Monkey (1)   | 28  |
| Jātaka of the Monkey (2)   | 29  |
| Puṇyavanta Jātaka          | 31  |
| Vijitāvin Jātaka           | 39  |
| Ordination of Mahā-Kāśyapa | 45  |
| Conversion of Śāriputra and Maudgalyāyana | 56 |
| The Five Hundred Merchants | 70  |
| Buddha's Visit to Kapilavastu | 93 |
| Jātaka of the Crow         | 122 |
| Jātaka of the Female Elephant | 126 |
| Conversion of the Asuras   | 133 |
| Jātaka of Nalinī           | 136 |
| Padumāvatī                 | 148 |
| Earlier History of Padumāvatī | 165 |
| Rāhula in a Former Life    | 167 |
| Ordination of Five Hundred Śākyans | 170 |
| Jātaka of Gangapāla        | 178 |
| Mahāgovindīya Sūtra        | 193 |
| Former Buddhhas            | 219 |
| Story of Sarvāṇḍada       | 239 |
| Rāhula                     | 242 |
| After the Enlightenment    | 261 |
| Dharmalabdha Jātaka        | 274 |
| Visits to Nāga Kings       | 287 |
| Goat-herd’s Banyan-tree    | 288 |
| Trapuṣa and Bhallika       | 290 |
| From Uruvilvā to Benares   | 299 |
| Rolling of the Wheel       | 322 |
CONTENTS

Ājñāta Kaundinya - - - - - 344
The Five Monks - - - - - 350
Kṣāntivādin - - - - - 354
Sarabhanga - - - - - 358
The Thirty Monks - - - - - 372
Pūrṇa the Son of Maitrāyaṇi - - - - 373
Questions of Maitrayaṇi - - - - 379
Questions of Nalaka - - - - - 388
Yaśoda - - - - - 401
Jātaka of Yaśoda - - - - - 414
Temptation by Mara - - - - - 416
Instructions on Begging - - - - - 419
The Three Kāśyapas - - - - - 425
Chapter of the Thousand Conversion of Bimbisara - - - - 439
Arindama - - - - - 450
Indexes - - - - - 463

ABBREVIATIONS IN FOOTNOTES*

A. = Anguttara Nikāya
AA. = Anguttara Nikāya Commentary
Amg. = Ardha-Māgadhi
Ap. = Apadāna
AsP. = Aṣṭasahasrika-prajñāpāramitā (ed. R. Mitra)
Av. and AvŚ. = Avadāna-śataka (ed. Speyer)
B.H.S. = Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit Dictionary (F. Edgerton)
Bk. of Disc. = Book of the Discipline (Trans. of the Vinaya-Piṭaka, by I. B.
  Horner)
B.R. = Böhtlingk und Roth : Sanskrit Wörterbuch
Bsk. = Buddhist Sanskrit Commentary
BudA. = Buddhavamsa Commentary
C.P.D. = Critical Pali Dictionary (D. Andersen and H. Smith)
Cpd. = Compendium of Philosophy (Trans. of Abhidhamm’-atthasangaha,
  by S. Z. Aung and Mrs. Rhys Davids)
D = Digha Nikāya
DA = Digha Nikāya commentary
Dbh. = Daśabhūmikasūtra (ed. Rahder)
Dh. = Dhammapada
DhA. = Dhammapada Commentary
Dhs. = Dhammasangani
Dhs. trsl. = Buddhist Manual of Psychological Ethics (Trans. by Mrs. Rhys
  Davids)
DhāsA. = Āthasālīni
Dhās. = Dhammasangrahā (Anecdota Oxoniensia)
Dia. = Dialogues of the Buddha (Trans. of Dīgha Nikāya)
Divy. = Divyāvadāna (ed. Cowell and Neil)
D.P. = Dīpanika (G. Malalasekera)
Dvbs. = Dīpaṁkara
Further Dia. = Further Dialogues of the Buddha (Trans. of Majjhima
  Nikāya)
G.S. = Gradual Sayings (Trans. of Anguttara Nikāya)
Gv. = Gaṇḍavyūha (ed. Suzuki and Idrizi)
I.H.Q. = Indian Historical Quarterly
It. = Itivuttaka
J. = Jātakas (ed. Fausboll)
J.P.T.S. = Journal of the Pali Text Society
J.R.A.S. = Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society
KhA. = Khuddaka-Pāṭha Commentary
K.S. = Kindred Sayings (Trans. of Saṁyutta Nikāya)
Kvu. = Kathā-Vatthu
Lal. Vist. and L.V. = Lalita Vistara (ed. Leffmann)
M. = Majjhima Nikāya
MA. = Majjhima Nikāya Commentary
Mbh. = Mahābhārata
Mg. = Māgadhi
Mānvs. = Mahāvaṃsa
Mhvu. = Mahāvastu
Miñ. = Milindapañha (Royal Asiatic Society)
Miñ. Anth. = Minor Anthologies of the Pali Canon
Mindic = Middle Indic
MnA. = (Ārya-) Mahāśrīmūlakalpa (ed. Ganapari Śāstri)
MPS. = Mahāparinirvāṇasūtra (ed. E. Waldschmidt)

vii
FOREWORD

In the Foreword to the first volume of this translation, and again in that to the second, the translator expressed his intention to give, with this third and final volume, a detailed study of the composition of the whole of the Mahāvastu. It is now seen, however, that such a study could not be contained within the limits of a foreword. A long article, or even a whole volume, would be needed to do anything like justice to the subject. Partial analysis, confined to the more prominent or extensive passages, would not suffice to give a fair conception of the manner and process of the composition of the whole text. The traditions which have gone to the making of the Mahāvastu are so numerous and so varied that a comparative study of them must needs make use not only of Pali texts, canonical and commentarial, but also of other Buddhist Sanskrit works, not to speak of Tibetan and Chinese.

Here, therefore, the translator must confine himself to a few general remarks, forgoing even the quotation of parallel or relevant texts which, in a full study, would be indispensable to the argument. These remarks may consequently seem to be based too much on impressions, but the translator is convinced, even from the little progress he has already made with his full critical and comparative study, that these general remarks give a fair idea of the conclusions to which such a study will lead. Besides, he may justly claim that any mere impressions he may seem to indulge in derive a certain degree of validity from the simple fact that they are the result of a long and close acquaintance with the text of the Mahāvastu.

Some scholars have spoken of an author of our text, others of its redactor or redactors, but a more accurate description of its creation would be gained by imagining a community of monks, over a more or less long period of time, busily engaged, out of motives of piety, in gathering traditions of the Buddha's life and teaching from all sources accessible to them. Prose versions and metrical versions, and sometimes
more than one of each, are often given of one and the same episode, and we can reasonably assume that these are from various traditions that came to the compilers’ notice at different times and from different sources. The narrative, indeed, would often be more coherent if many of these additional versions had been left out. They are not always introduced in the right place. When a narrative is given in mixed prose and verse it sometimes happens that the metrical version overlaps the prose, while at other times, on the contrary, it leaves a gap in the narrative. The addition of a single metrical version to the prose is perfectly natural. For when the two come together the metrical version may be seen to have been added because it was recognised as being more original, and, therefore, it serves as confirmation of the story as related in the prose. Anomalous forms are often, if not generally, common to prose and verse, which is proof that the verse tradition was present to the mind, if not actually in the hands, of the redactor of the prose paraphrase.

It sometimes happens, again, that a repetitive metrical version is not given in full. Parts are left out, and the context can only be understood by reference to the fuller prose version. But this does not necessarily mean that the latter is the earlier or original form of the tradition. Rather it may be taken to imply that the narrator, perhaps out of boredom, leaves out details which are assumed to be already known to the listener or reader.

Where the narrative is given in mixed prose and verse, the metrical version is inserted by way of confirmation of each stage of the story. It all looks very much as if the speaker or writer were paraphrasing in prose a story which he knew in an earlier verse form, and here and there sought to refresh his memory and keep his narrative straight by quoting the verse, which is often introduced with some such formula as tatredamiti ucyate, “here this is said.” The explanatory note on this expression given on page 15 of the first volume is quoted by E. Waldschmidt on page 6 of his edition of the Mahāvastu,1 with reference to the similar view expressed by E. Windisch in his Buddha’s Geburt.2 After pointing out that this theory does not hold true of the Mahāvadāna, where, he says, the verses give the impression of being secondary or derivative, he adds, in a footnote on the same page, “beim Mahāvastu liegt der Fall komplizierter. Hier gibt es in der Tat Verse, die sich als sehr altertümlicher erweisen. Daneben stehen in dieser Zusammenwürfelung von Überlieferungsgut sehr verschiedenen Alters viele ausge­sprochenen junge Verspartien.”

The case is different, of course, when more than one metrical version follows the prose, just as it is when various prose sūtras on the same episodes are given successively in whole or in part. These are but examples of what was described in the Foreword to the second volume1 as the proclivity of the compilers of the Mahāvastu to include in this canonical work of their sect every possible piece of tradition which bore on their subject. A good example of this proclivity may be seen in the present volume where as many as four versions are given of the tradition relating the Buddha’s temptation by Mara.2 Each of the last three traditions is introduced by the formula etthametaṃ sṛṣyati, “this also is heard here or on this matter,” and if the use in them of the connective particles atha khalu3 be taken as a criterion, these traditions are all of them early rather than late. Similarly, three traditions of the temptation by Māra are given,4 each beginning in the conventional form with the description of the occasion, and ending with the words itthametaṃ sṛṣyati.

Repeated editing did, as is only to be expected, produce some changes in the text, and in introducing these changes the editors were sometimes guilty of anachronisms. For example, in the dialogue between Gotama and his father,5 the former is made to say that he does not miss the adulation of the court, for he is celebrated instead in Discourse and Exposition, Suttanta and Veyyākarana. Now these were two of the nine divisions of the completed corpus of Buddhist

1 P. ix.  
2 Pp. 302 ff. Page references, unless otherwise stated, are to the present volume of the translation, where the corresponding pages of the text will be found numbered.  
3 See p. xiii below.  
4 Pp. 417 ff.  
5 P. 120.
scriptures, which obviously was not in existence at the time. On the other hand, it may be interesting to note that the Mahāvastu nowhere explicitly mentions the Tripitaka.

The compilers of the Mahāvastu had, indeed, at one time and another a plethora of traditions to draw upon. When they thought, mistakenly or otherwise, that a narrative in the tradition they were following was not clear or full enough, they would have recourse to another tradition and insert an extract from it. Such an example of an interpolated passage can be seen in the bracketed part of the Gangapāla Jātaka, which, incidentally, is nearer the Pali version of the story. Another passage bracketed for the same reason is found on page 302. The interpolation here actually does not form a complete sentence, but is interesting in itself as being clearly derived from a version nearer that of the Pali Vinaya than the rest of the narrative.

Another instance of the intermingling of traditions is found in the story of the conversion of Śreniya Bimbisāra. The introduction to the story is peculiar to the Mahāvastu; subsequently there is close verbal parallelism with the version in the Mahāvagga. But long before the end there is interpolated an episode from some other tradition, which seems, however, to be cut short, and the story resumes, with some variations, a parallel course with that in the Pali text.

Examples could be multiplied. Here only one more can be given. After the account of the ordination of the Thirty Monks is finished, our text begins a story about another group of Thirty Monks. But it does no more than begin it, and passes straight on to the ordination at the end. Evidently there is here a summary of the story as handed down in another tradition. There can be little doubt also that the story which follows it, that of Pūrṇa and his twenty-nine companions, forms yet another tradition of the same theme.

The theory that there are two main strata, each distinguished by its own peculiar style, in the composition of the Mahāvastu, first propounded and developed by Hermann Oldenberg, has received a large measure of acceptance from other scholars. It is now too well known to need a detailed

1 Grammar, p. 165. It has been the translator's great misfortune that Prof. Franklin Edgerton's truly monumental work, Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit Grammar and Dictionary, was not available throughout. About two-thirds of the last volume had already been completed when Edgerton's work appeared. But before the translation was sent to the printer, the whole of it was revised, so that the linguistic and lexicographical difficulties could be examined anew with the aid of his Grammar and Dictionary. The help which the translator has derived from these two books can be judged by the frequency with which Edgerton's name, or sometimes, for brevity's sake, only the title of his Dictionary, appears in the footnotes.
form, though common in the Mahāvastu, is not found in other Buddhist Sanskrit texts, and he concludes accordingly that "it was discarded early in the history of our dialect."

Finally, this later style, called by Oldenberg style A, is taken to be marked by a fondness for elaboration, indulgence in detail, fantastic exaggeration of numbers and multiplication of marvels and miracles.

The results which have been reached by the method of criticism here sketchily outlined are, no doubt, suggestive and instructive, and, perhaps, should be accepted as established for the passages which have been put under examination. But it may be doubted whether, in the face of the variety and diversity of the traditions which are collected to form the Mahāvastu, one criterion alone is sufficient to distinguish the late from the early. Even in the passages which have actually been analysed a considerable intermingling of the two assumed styles has often to be dealt with, and attempts made to account for it. To the earlier style, which Oldenberg called style B, a subsidiary style, B', has had to be added. This subsidiary style is apparently to be regarded as style A affected by reminiscences of style B. In other words, the redactor or compiler of a certain episode may have known it or heard it in the language of style B, but, for some reason or other, wished to preserve it for his school or for posterity in the newer style A. But, according to the theory, he could not entirely shake himself free from the influence of the older style, so that now and again he unwittingly falls into its ways and adopts its phraseology. A very cursory examination of our text, however, would seem to indicate that the matter is not so simple as that. For, even if we limit our criterion to the use of atha khalu on the one hand and of dāmi on the other, we are still face to face with such a frequent and intricate intermingling of styles that it would seem impossible for a critic with even the highest degree of analytic acumen to distinguish them.

This diversity of styles in the Mahāvastu is matched by a dialectal diversity in its language. There have been many theories about the identity of the Middle Indic dialect on which Buddhist Sanskrit was based, just as there have been about the identity of the language in which the Buddha preached his doctrine. But if we are right in holding that the Mahāvastu is a compilation of traditions from various sources, need we look in it for a single homogeneous language or dialect? The retailers of these various traditions could pass them on in their own vernacular and still be understood by their listeners in any part of the India in which Buddhism grew up. If the northern Buddhists increasingly in course of time tended to replace dialectal variations with normal Sanskrit forms, that was not due to their failure to understand or recite the traditions in their original form, but simply to the prestige of the classical language. It is nowadays generally admitted that Buddhism from the very start was preached in a variety of dialects. For thus only could the new faith be disseminated. Proof of this is found in the Pali Canon. In the Cullavagga (5.33) we read of certain brāhmans complaining to the Buddha that the monks were using the vulgar language or dialects, whereas they themselves used, or wished to use, Vedic or Sanskrit. The Buddha's reply is thus translated by Edgerton: ¹ "You are not to put the Buddha's words into Vedic; who does so would commit sin. I authorize you, monks, to learn the Buddha's words each in his own language". Edgerton goes on to add, "Buddhaghosa and some moderns (notably Geiger) would take the last clause to mean, 'in the Buddha's own dialect.' But Chinese versions make it abundantly clear that the correct interpretation is 'each in his own dialect.' The net result seems to me to show, not only that the Buddha authorized and commanded the recitation of his teachings in local dialects everywhere, but also that from the very start there were clearly perceptible differences in the speech of different members of the Buddhist Order, which showed in their ways of reciting the sacred texts." And, it may be added, once given the Buddha legend, different communities, self-contained as they were, with their own vernaculars and with little inter-communication, would tend to develop the legend each in its own way, a way most likely in accord with, or influenced by, the forms of belief already prevailing among them. Hence, sooner or later, arose a crop of variant traditions.

¹ Grammar, p. 1.
Not all scholars interpret the *Cullavagga* passage just cited in the same way. E. J. Thomas,¹ for example, gives it a different interpretation. According to him, what the brāhmans wished the Buddha to do was to authorise a standard versification of the texts to facilitate the memorising of them. But the brāhmans' expressed complaint was that monks of various clans were corrupting the texts by repeating them in their own grammar (*niruddi*), that is to say, using the grammatical forms of their respective dialects.

But whatever be the correct interpretation of this passage, the very fact of the brāhmans' complaint undoubtedly shows that even in the Buddha's lifetime his doctrine and the legends about him were already current in dialects which were more or less different from the dialect in which they had been first proclaimed. This is the conclusion which Edgerton himself has reached.² He does not agree with H. Lüders and Hiān-lin Dschi, who would make Old Ardhā-Māgadhī the language of the original Buddhist Canon, or even the language of the Buddha himself. He is definitely in favour of the contrary opinion of S. Lévi and Lin Li-Kouang, who maintain that the Buddhist teaching and traditions were from the very beginning related in a variety of dialects. Edgerton goes further and says that Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit, as he calls the language of the *Mahāvastu* and other Buddhist Sanskrit texts, was never spoken as a vernacular dialect. But, with all due respect to a scholar of his eminence, it is difficult to see what grounds he has for maintaining that a language which was thus never spoken can "have existed for centuries as a religious language" and that it "seems to have become the prevalent language used by north-Indian Buddhists." This apparently implies that there was a set policy among these Buddhists to frame or concoct a purely conventional language in which to preserve their various canons. It is evident, of course, and only natural that the language of these various texts did, with the passage of time, come to approximate more and more to a certain degree of uniformity. But that uniformity should rather, apart, that is, from what was due to late Sanskritising, be understood as the result of several centuries of re-telling and re-writing the traditions, in the course of which there would be a progressive abandonment of dialectal differences. Besides, as has been already pointed out, even were all the dialects preserved in their pristine purity, they were never so distinct or disparate that they could not coalesce to form the language of a single work.

When we thus relate the diversity of the traditional sources from which the *Mahāvastu* was compiled to the diversity of dialects in its language, it is not suggested that the dialect of any one particular tradition can be distinguished and isolated, at least readily and certainly. In the first place there was evidently an admixture of dialects at the very beginning. The missionary might not know the language of his converts well enough to translate his message into it with perfection, though there never was more than a dialectal difference between the speech of the two. Secondly, it cannot be assumed that all the Prakrit or Middle Indic dialects of the Buddha's time have left records or traces behind them, and difficulties of vocabulary or grammatical forms may sometimes be due to our ignorance of a lost dialect to which they belonged. There are in the *Mahāvastu*, for example, many words and forms which are not found elsewhere, and so cannot be assigned to any particular dialect which is otherwise known. The number of such words and forms which are met with in the *Mahāvastu* is peculiarly and strikingly large. They cannot all belong to anyone dialect or language, for they are not uniformly distributed throughout the text, as should be expected were the work composed in a single homogeneous language. Too many of them are found isolated in one or another particular narrative. Instances of this are the names of some of the articles mentioned in the prose version of the story of Kusa as having been made by that skilled and versatile craftsman.¹ In the two long lists of trades and occupations given in the present volume,² not only are many of the names of them absolutely unknown, but also only a few of them are identical with those found in similar passages elsewhere, for example, in the *Milindapāṇha*.³ Corruption of the original form of

¹ *The Life of Buddha*, p. 254.
² *Grammar*, pp. 2 ff.
³ *Milindapāṇha*, p. 331.
² Pp. 111 ff., 443 f.
³ P. 331.
these words is not sufficient to account for the complete obscurity of their meaning. They must have had meaning somewhere and have been everyday words in the vernacular of the community which developed and preserved this particular form of the story. It may, of course, be argued that there was no other occasion in the Mahāvastu calling for the use of these words. But why are they not found elsewhere, except for the reason that we have no remains of the dialect to which they were native? It cannot be supposed that the articles and trades referred to were confined within the limits of a single community, any more than it can be supposed that the construction of a chariot varied essentially in different parts of India. And yet in the Mañjāri Jātaka we find two unidentified component parts of a chariot described by the entirely unknown and unparalleled terms manesi and kupsara. The same consideration applies to the names of musical instruments which are so frequently mentioned in our text, but several of which cannot be now identified. Here again the distribution of strange terms is not uniform. For example, in the incident where Dipamkara wakes up to find the women of his harem asleep and, some of them, clasping various musical instruments, the names of these are well-known and fairly easily identifiable. But in the corresponding incident in the life of Gotama is found a much longer list of instruments. Some of these are readily identifiable, others less so, while the few remaining ones are totally strange. This episode was part of the stereotyped tradition of the Buddha's home life, but it looks as though the form of the tradition relating to Gotama which was incorporated in the Mahāvastu was peculiar to a community with its own particular dialect.

Passing from the names of concrete things to abstract terms, we may notice the unique vyākhutsanā, "disgust", which is unknown outside the Mahāvastu, and even there is found only twice, namely in the story of Śreniya Bimbisāra and in what may be termed its corollary. The latter story, by the way, also contains occurrences of the very rare word pārī, "vessel", found only here in the Mahāvastu, and related by Edgerton to Ardha-Mağadhi pārī.

---

1 Vol. I, p. 183.  2 Pp. 441. 452.  3 B.H.S.D.

---

These examples are taken at random from among the more obvious. A minute search could no doubt multiply them indefinitely. The conclusion which, it is here suggested, may be drawn from these lexicographical peculiarities, would seem to be reinforced by a consideration of grammatical forms which are unknown outside the Mahāvastu. Like the strange words which we have found isolated in particular narratives, these grammatical forms, too, are often found similarly isolated. It cannot, for example, be mere accident, nor due to the compilers' whim, that most of the examples of the anomalous ending matha for the first person plural of the verb should be found grouped together in the metrical version of the Kuśa Jātaka. It may reasonably be suggested that the metrical version, also, came from a community with its own proper dialect, whether the same community whence came the prose version, or not, may possibly be a question to which close linguistic study might provide an answer.

In phonology, again, we seem to have the same interesting and suggestive phenomena. For instance in the third volume of our text are found several examples of the use of the consonant "d" as a hiatus-bridger, all, with one exception, grouped together on page 54. It looks very much as if the tradition of the ordination of Mahā-Kāśyapa, which is here related, was either composed in a dialect using this mode of linking words, or at least was at some time or other subjected to the influence of such a dialect.

Finally, there is ground for suggesting that the distinction presented by dāni passages on the one hand and atha khalu passages on the other, is not necessarily a distinction between later and earlier styles. We cannot know for certain that these two contrasting styles, in so far as they can be isolated, were not a matter of dialectical differences. It seems to be established that the use of finite verbs which normally went with the use of atha khalu as a connective particle, was not maintained to the same extent in all the dialects of which we have record. For all that can be known some dialects may have abandoned the use of finite verbs entirely at the same time that others were still using them. It may be
indeed, that the use of the nominal construction and the connective particle *dānī* was a mark of less culturally advanced communities. Such a construction would certainly come much more naturally to an untutored narrator than a construction requiring acquaintance with a complete system of verbal conjugation.

In the same way, it need not be supposed that the fondness for the fantastic, the miraculous and the supernatural, which is taken to be characteristic of the style using *dānī* and the nominal construction, is necessarily a sign of a late tradition. The area in which Buddhism arose does not seem at the time to have felt much of the influence of Brahmanism. In any case, the first converts to the new faith, even though they were brāhmans, would be well-acquainted with, even believers in, a rich and luxuriant mythology based upon an extensive polytheism or polydemonism. The world around them was peopled with all kinds of supernatural beings capable of working all kinds of marvels and magic. The Buddha himself never seems to have gone out of his way to deny the existence of these beings, but rather adopted them into his scheme of things. Supernatural or magical events were therefore a matter of everyday belief and experience to those who heard the Buddha and his disciples, and who later went about retelling his doctrine and cultivating the traditions about him. The development of doctrine itself, of course, was controlled and stabilised by the Sangha or Order. But no authority could limit the growth of apocryphal stories whether among the monks or among the laity. And it has to be remembered that the *Mahāvastu* is primarily a collection of stories. Although it is said to be the Vinaya of its school or sect, the doctrinal part could be assumed to be well known enough to be taken for granted and left out, except in so far as the stories themselves might illustrate it. Besides, not all the converts would be chiefly interested in the finer points of Buddhist philosophy and ethics. A large proportion of them, as is the way of uneducated religious converts everywhere, would be more interested in edifying tales and fables, and in correlating what they could of the Buddha legend with the mythology already known to them. For they must already have had their own legends or folk-tales which they could adapt more or less fully to the new faith. Much of the poetry in the *Mahāvastu* has all the air of being traditional ballads originally quite independent of Buddhism. The verses of good-luck—we may even describe them as protective spells—which the Buddha is made to recite to the merchants Trapuṣa and Bhallika have little or nothing in them that is peculiarly Buddhistic. The metrical *Sarabhanga Jātaka*, again, has much in it which leads one to think that it was of non-Buddhist origin; it is so full of commendation of the gentler and more tender feelings which make for social comfort and the pleasure of living. It is also old-fashioned enough to prefer the once popular name of Indra to that of Śakra, his Buddhist supplanter. The story of Elapatra is another good example of the intrusion of an old fairy-tale into the legend of the Buddha. Finally, how many of the hundreds of Buddhas who are enumerated in the *Mahāvastu* may not have been originally minor local deities? These Buddhas are not necessarily the product of a dogma developed late in the history of Buddhism. At least, much of the language in which they are enumerated and eulogised looks to be as old as that of any part of our text. The belief in other or former Buddhas must have existed long before it was officially recognised by certain edicts of King Aśoka, some three centuries after the death of Gotama.

It is but natural, of course, that the Buddha legend would be embellished and elaborated in the course of time. But the fact remains that even the earliest recorders of the tradition had the same wealth of legendary or mythological parallels to draw upon as the later. Once the knowledge of the Buddha passed beyond the circle of his intimate friends and acquaintances, such was the force of his personality and the grandeur of his moral character, that ordinary men and women could conceive of him only in terms of the divine. And as soon as that happened there would be no bounds to the play of the mythopoeic fancy of those who had heard of him. If extravagant legends are not so frequent and elaborate in the earliest body of canonical texts that have come down

---

1 Pp. 293 ff.
3 Pp. 381 ff.
to us, as in the Mahāvastu, that may well be due to editing and pruning by the Theravādin editors. Even so the difference between the Pali texts and the Mahāvastu in this respect is of degree only, not of kind.

As the very great importance of Edgerton’s work for the study of Buddhist Sanskrit has been referred to, it may not be impertinent, in conclusion, to touch on the question whether the new light thrown by him on so many difficulties, affects in any way the correctness of the translation presented in the first two volumes of this work. The translator is glad to say, that as far as he has been able to discover, no part of his translation calls for any serious correction. Although, before Edgerton’s Grammar became available, the grammatical rationale of many forms may have been obscure, the context in the large majority of cases made the construction of the sentences as a whole self-evident. When this was not the case, comparison with parallel versions in other texts helped out, even if it were only by suggesting emendation of an inexplicable form with a more explicable one. All these doubtful forms should, perhaps, have been discussed in the footnotes. But, as was pointed out in the Foreword to the first volume, Senart, the editor of the text, had himself contributed long notes on most of these anomalous forms, and there was at the time of translating the first two volumes no reliable work to hand which could be used to test the validity of Senart’s explanations. No useful purpose would be served by merely repeating what he had said. If criticism of Senart’s explanations and emendations could be made, as it was on occasion, it was only on the score of the requirements of the context, and often with the support of parallel passages from other texts. Later on, the translator hopes, as part of a critical work on the Mahāvastu, to study his translation in detail, and, where necessary, to revise it, with the help of Edgerton’s dictionary and grammar.

Meanwhile, it is gratifying to record one or two instances where an emendation proposed by the translator has been found subsequently to be confirmed by Edgerton. On page 86 of the second volume a footnote calls attention to the need of emending Senart’s text, suvayam na me pravāreyā into tvayā ca me pravāreyā, an emendation which was not only called

for by the context, but also brought the text of the Mahāvastu into accord with the parallel Pali passage, Jātaka, 3. 284. This emendation is exactly that proposed by Edgerton in his Grammar, as is also that of the difficult pratīlam in the same line into yam ca. Again, on page 89 of the same volume there is a footnote on the word anantaśānti, which Senart in his notes renders “des êtres vivants sans nombre.” The note in the translation, however, suggests that a sense more appropriate to the context would be obtained by reading for pāti, “beings”, the word pāña, “drink” or “water”. In his Dictionary (s.v.) Edgerton makes what is practically the same suggestion, although he is able to improve on it by adding, instead of the Sanskrit pāṇīya, the Ardha-Māgadhī pāni, likewise meaning “water”.

The translator was also glad to see that the explanation which he offered in the second volume of the strange word hastokta, which is unknown outside the Mahāvastu, is practically the same as that which Edgerton gives in his Dictionary.

After so much has been said to show the translator’s appreciation of the value and helpfulness of Edgerton’s work, it may appear as rash presumption to dare criticise his interpretation of one or two passages. It may well be that a scholar mining a text like the Mahāvastu for linguistic examples is in danger at times of overlooking the demands of the context and of concentrating overmuch on particular forms and philological principles. It would certainly appear that in one case, at least, Edgerton has been misled by his philological ardour and acumen. In the metrical version of the Campaka Jātaka the Nāga king’s daughter, in reply to a question about her identity, answers Nāgakanyāham bhadrante avici iha āgatā. In the translation this has been rendered, “Sir, I am a Nāga maiden come hither on a quest.” But avici is a difficult word, and a footnote attempts to explain it as being compounded of avī, a participal form,
though otherwise unknown, from _av_, “to desire”, and _cf_ “something” or “anything”. Alternatively, the suggestion is made, on the basis of one MS. reading _acinti_, that the correct reading might be _arthisi_, “seeking”, and a comparison is made with the corresponding Pali passage which reads _atthen(a) anhi idhāgatā_. “I am come hither with a purpose.” The context certainly requires some such sense to the expression. Edgerton, however, translates, “I am a Nāga girl, bless you, come hither from the nether world.” That is, he takes _avici(d)_ as an ablative case of _avici_, the name of one of the hells. This would make the Nāga king, Campaka, and his daughter, dwell in Avīcī, a hell of torment and terror for the wicked. This is not only improbable in itself, but against what we are expressly told, both in the prose and metrical versions of the story, namely, that they dwelt in Kāśī, where their home had all the wealth and splendour of an abode of the devas.

Another instance where, perhaps, we may suspect that Edgerton has not paid due attention to the text is referred to in a footnote on page 15 of the present volume. In a paragraph of his _Grammar_, in which he gives examples of gerunds based on present passive stems, he quotes from our text, _Yavād . . . antarpurikāhi anahpuraṇa praveṣiya kriḍāpanako bhaviṣyati_. We are not concerned here with the grammatical point which is the subject of the paragraph, but with Edgerton’s translation of the passage. He translates, “until he (i.e. Kuśa) having been brought into the harem by the harem woman, became (lit. should become) their playfellow.” But _yavād_ here is better explained as an adverb meaning “as far as”. The four words, _rājīho priyo ti kriṣṭvā_, which immediately follow _yavād_ are omitted in Edgerton’s quotation. _Kriṣṭvā_ with the preceding _ti_ means “quoting”, so that _yavād_ can be easily explained, as usually in such contexts, as meaning “as far as”. The point is that the story of Kuśa’s various occupations as related in the previous volume is here abridged to give only the first, that of garland-maker, and the last, that of cook in the royal kitchen. Then the events following are assumed to be known as far as the denouement of Kuśa’s becoming dear to the king. The future _bhaviṣyati_ fits in better with the interpretation here suggested. Edgerton, as is seen, has to render it by the past, “became”, adding in parenthesis, “lit. should become.”

One other instance may be given where Edgerton’s pre-occupation with philological problems may have led him a little astray. When the Buddha is contemplating the question as to how former Buddhas took their food, he asks himself _bhājanapratiṇāhakā utāho pāṇipratīṇāhakā_. Edgerton3 takes _pāṇi_ here to be the Ardha-Māgadhī word for “water”, which has already been referred to, and he renders “did they take a bowl (of food) or water?” But, apart from the need of a parenthesis in such a rendering, the context would be much better fitted by our taking _pāṇi_ in its Sanskrit sense of “hand”. For then we have the two natural alternatives of eating food from a bowl or directly with the hands without the use of any receptacle. The story is here concerned with how the Four Great Kings came to provide the Buddha with a bowl. There is no allusion as to what it was to contain.

These instances of agreement and of disagreement with Edgerton are few enough, and may appear trivial in themselves. But the translator hopes that they may be taken as an indication that he was throughout aware of the linguistic difficulties of the _Mahāvastu_, and that he took every care to be faithful to the text. To his knowledge, no difficulty, whether of vocabulary or of grammar has been ignored or slurred over. Nothing has been put in his translation which was not warranted by the text, and nothing has been left out on the score of difficulty and obscurity.

A word or two about the Index is necessary. It was thought advisable to group several classes of topics under general headings, as “animals”, “entertainers”, “musical instruments”, “trades and occupations”, and so on. The reason for this is obvious. The _Mahāvastu_ only mentions these topics in passing; there is no discussion of them. But

---

1 _I._ 4.459.
2 _Grammar_, §10, 67.
3 _§35.17_.
4 P. 16.
arranged under group-headings they may provide some guidance to the researcher into the natural and economic history of India. It is presumed, of course, that the researcher will not stop short with the translation. He must go back to the text himself. For the interpretation of many of the several terms in the various group-headings is very doubtful, even where they are found translated, and, as has been seen, many others are so obscure as to defy any attempt to render them into English. The exact definition of these awaits further research.

It is pleasant to realise that the translation of the Mahāvastu has, after many years of arduous toil, been at last completed. Some there have been who doubted that the text as a whole was worthy of a full-scale translation, possibly implying thereby that it was mainly material for a study of language, history, folk-tales and other accessory subjects. But however useful it may be for students of such subjects, the Mahāvastu must be regarded primarily as a religious work. It is true that it is not a religious classic, though we do well to remember that it is a very near relation of the great religious books of India. It is fully worthy to rank among the other sacred books which have been made accessible to English readers in the Sacred Books of the East and in the Series in which it now appears complete.

Once again, it is a pleasure, and a duty, to put on record the translator's gratitude to Miss I. B. Homer for her never-failing help. What the work owes to her is to a large extent evident to anyone who looks at the footnotes. When it is added that she revised the whole manuscript, made most valuable corrections and improvements in it, read all the proofs, and was throughout always ready to give generously of her great learning whenever the translator wrote to pose his difficulties to her, the degree of his indebtedness will be still more fully realised.

Another helper, alas, has not lived to see the completion of the work. In the Foreword to the first volume the translator paid tribute to the patience of his wife. Some years have passed since then, but throughout them all, to see her husband devote his leisure hours to this work, to encourage and inspire him to complete it, and to rejoice in its progress

had become a real part of her life. It is some consolation to remember that she was spared long enough to see the first proofs of this final volume. Whatever has been achieved in this work, she has a large share in it.

Aberystwyth,
July, 1956.

J. J. Jones.
(1) In Benares there was a king named Ikṣvāku. He was mighty, glorious and triumphant. But no son had been born to him.

Then the happy thought occurred to him: "What if I were to let out the women of my harem three times a fortnight?"

And so the king, in order to have a descendant, let out the women of his harem on the fourteenth, fifteenth and eighth days of the fortnight.

The women in great excitement and decked out in all their finery, but timid as fawns, went about from door to door. Some chattered as they sought to allure, others laughed, and others ran about chasing all kinds of men.

All were excited, all were bewildered. And King Ikṣvāku's city, too, was bewildered by these mistresses of the king.

... "Let the brāhman come to me early and late. Let me know at once whether he is a mendicant, whether he is a mendicant a gift to whom will bring great reward."

Thereupon Śakra, lord of Trāyastriṃśa reflected that the deed the king wished done had been suggested by the household priest.

He made himself into an old man, bent double and leaning on his staff. With shaking limbs he came to the king's door.

To the servitor who carried messages the brāhman said, "Announce me at once. I wish to see the king."

The servitor reported this to the king, saying, "A brāhman who wishes to see the king has come to your majesty."
THE MAHAVASTU

"Hail to you, great Brähman," (said the king.)¹ "You are welcome. What do you want, what do you seek, what do you need, what can I give to you?"

The brähman replied:

"O Ikṣvāku, I have heard the people here say that the king, lord of men, is letting out the women of his harem thrice a fortnight. "On the fourteenth, fifteenth and eighth days, for that the chief of men is desiring of a son. So have I heard it said. "And now, having heard this rumour, with my senses thrilled and exhilarated, I have come² hither seeking a woman. So do you honour me."

The king said:

"Here, chamberlain, go at once and quickly³ show him the women. Oblige⁴ him to-day with whatever woman is to his liking." He was led by the chamberlain into the women’s quarters, where the chief queen at the time was named Alindā.

(3) The brähman said:

"Let her be mine, she who stands yonder so proudly and with faultless limbs, but wets her cheeks with tears."

A hunchbacked woman⁵ said:

"Old man, do you wish to amuse yourself with young damsels? No young damsel would touch you even with her hand. "Old man, do you wish to amuse yourself with young damsels? No young damsel would touch you even with her foot.

¹ There would seem to be a lacuna here also, covering the king’s instructions to the servant and the leading in of the brähman.
² Gaccheyam, pot. in aor. sense. Perhaps, however, the pot. is rather to be explained here with reference to the arising of the intention or wish to go, at the moment he heard the rumour. The force of the pot. could then be rendered in English by the insertion of "I thought that " (I would go). At the same time iha, " here", transforms the intended or potential going into an accomplished " coming", which brings us back again to the pot. = aor. equation.
³ Lahum, BSk. and Pali; a p.t. is laghum.
⁴ Anugraha, imper. according to the first conjugation.
⁵ A personal attendant of the queen’s. See Vol. 2.

THE KUSA JĀTAKA

"You are foul and wrinkled, pale of face; your house is evil-smelling like the jujube flower. You stink like a goat. Begone, I have naught to do with you."

The king said:

"I shall give you sustenance, wealth and riches or a fair village. Be content with this.¹ What will you do² with Alindā?"

The brähman replied:

"I am faint from coughing; repeatedly I swoon, and I wet my bed. But she will help me on to my feet. "Do you, hunchbacked dame, hold your tongue, and go on grinding face-powder.³ I’ll make myself dear to Alindā, never you mind. "(4) Do you, hunchbacked dame, hold your tongue, and go on twining⁴ your garlands.⁵ I’ll make myself dear to Alindā, never you mind."

The king said:

"If, O brähman, you wish to eat bread in the king’s palace, you can enjoy this now. What will you do with Alindā?"

The brähman replied:

"Lord, let not King Ikṣvāku repent of his proffered gift. If, after offering⁶ a boon, you then regret it, I’ll go and tell men that you do not give what you have offered."

The king said:

"No, brähman, I do not repent. So be satisfied again. All these women, with Alindā, shall wait on you. "But I give you this low-caste hunchbacked woman for

¹ Tameva bhujjahi. It would seem better to read tame— "her", and make the allusion to be to another hunchbacked woman whom the king, in the other version, had offered the brähman, and part of whose reply is given in the verses immediately preceding, tacked on to the words of another hunchbacked woman.
² Kāhi, fut. of kri.
³ The hunchback first mentioned, whose duty this was.
⁵ Another attendant of the queen’s, who had this as her task.
⁶ Pravārayati, BSk., Pali pavāreti.
you to make love to. Or let her be your servant. Take her wherever you wish."

The hunchbacked woman said:

"I'll kill myself by eating poison if my lord gives me to him. Or I'll secretly kill this bent and aged man."

The brahman said:

"I'll be at enmity with all hunchbacked women that cumber the earth, just because this low-caste hunchback wishes to kill me."

The brahman said:

"It is not fitting, O Ikṣvāku, that I do not get this boon, for, after offering me the choice of a woman you repented of your offer.

"I'll go and tell people that you are a king who makes offers and then repents of them, a king who offered me the choice of a woman and then broke his promise."

The king said:

"No, brahman, I do not go back on my promise. So, pray, be a young man again. All these women, with Alinda, shall wait upon you."

---

"Take your joy with her, good brahman, as much as you wish. Spread your couch and lie on it, she will be at your service."

The brahman took by the hand the weeping and sobbing lady with the fine hips and slender waist, and went away from the king's doors. And when they had left the royal precincts he built a hut in an enclosure.

(6) Sakra said:

"Clothe yourself in fine array, lady, come, let us take our joy. Turn your face to me and gratify me; do not turn your face away. Gratify me with passion. For if I am gratified it will mean a boon for you.

"Gratify me smilingly; for if I am gratified it will mean a boon for you. Come, lady, gratify me; for if I am gratified it will mean a boon for you.

"Bestir yourself and be not weary, Alindā; thus shall I be honoured. And when you go to the king you can bid him to be glad that I had my way."

Then Sakra doffed his disguise as a brahman and stood up in his own form, illuminating all quarters with his radiance. When Alindā looked the change had taken place. She was offered a boon by Sakra. She chose the boon of a son, saying, "Give me the boon of a son."

Sakra said:

"I am Sakra, lord of the devas, sovereign of Trāyastriṃśa. Fair lady, choose a boon, whatever your heart is set on.

The queen replied:

"May Sakra, the sovereign of Trāyastriṃśa, grant me a boon. I beg the boon of a son. Grant me this boon, O Sakra."

Sakra said:

"If you, Alindā, had been well-disposed to me and had gratified me, the son you ask for would prove to be well-born, a joy to the realm."

---

1 Asāṃpratāma. This compound of sāṃpratā does not seem to be met with elsewhere, but the sense of the simple form is suitable here. "It is not fitting that we (I) do not get the boon." asāṃpratāma ... yan sayam na labhāmatha. Possibly, however, we should read asāṃpratā na, 'we have not obtained our hope in that' (yan). The verb labhāmatha has the anomalous ending tha added to the 1st pl. ending -ma. It is noteworthy that so many of the Mhav. examples of this anomaly should be found bunched together in this metrical version of the Kuśa story, the others being ramāmatha (p. 6), labhāmatha and asāmatha (p. 9), jīvāmatha and bhāsemathā (p. 11) and anupājyāmatha (p. 23). For a discussion of this form see Edgerton, Gram. I 283.8.10.

2 Mihyābarot i yācānām, see Vol. 2, p. 381 n. 2.

3 No, ethic dative.

4 There is, of course, no hint here that the king knew that the aged appearance of the brahman was a disguise. It is but an ironic comment on the disparity of ages between him and Alindā.
THE MAHĀVASTU

"A son would be born to you who would be strong as a lion, powerful, radiant with beauty, (7) a well-born son, a joy to the realm.

"But as it is,² he will be ugly, though worthy to sit on the throne.³ He will be wise and a vanquisher of other realms. His name will be Kuśa."²

Śakra gave the queen a medicinal pill.⁴ "Grind this pill," said he, "and taste it on the tip of your tongue. Then you will have a son." The queen tied up the medicinal pill in a corner of her robe and came to the palace. And when she arrived she told the king all about it, saying, "It was Śakra, lord of the devas, in the disguise of a brähman, who served him well, and he gave me this medicinal pill, telling me to grind it and taste it on the tip of my tongue, and then I should have a son."

The king said:

"You have a look of content and you regard me with a smile. Surely such a blissful mien betokens the greatest good fortune."²

The queen said:

"Sire, Indra⁵ has given me a son, who will be powerful, worthy to sit on the throne,² strong and a vanquisher of other realms."²
"A beautiful woman scorns a mate whom she sees to be ugly. It is better for you, my son, to have an ugly wife since you are ugly yourself."

The king replied:

"I have never heard nor seen that kings are unfortunate, or that a prince amuses himself with ugly women. "I am a king, noble, triumphant, mighty, wealthy, and powerful. I say this because women are fond of substantial things. "Beautifully arrayed women are brought from other kingdoms, who have been purchased with wealth and whose fathers' homes are far away.

(9) "So bring me as wife the daughter of the king of the Madrakas who is named Prajāpāti, and who is accomplished and perfect in all good conduct."

Her mother-in-law told the girl, "It is our rule in Iksvāku's court that a wife may not see her husband until after twelve years." And so no lights burned in their bed-chamber.

Sudarśanā said to King Kuśa:

"This royal palace is rich, an unfeeling mine of precious stones. And yet we get no light either by night or day. "Neither by night nor by day do we see each other, but we sit unseen by, and hidden from, each other. "Here we dwell in the thick and blinding darkness. Meseems this is a union of the blind."

The king said:

"I do not know the reason for it nor why it should be so. Go to my mother and ask her. She will explain it to you."

---

1 Reading paricāreti (Pali = BSk. paricārayati) for praviciireti.
2 Called Sudarśanā below, as also in the version in Vol. 2. In the Pali J. she is named Pabhavatī.
3 The story of how Prajāpāti was brought to Benares, and how she and Kuśa did not see each other by day because of the latter's ugliness, is left out here. See the version in Vol. 2. Literally here "the girl was spoken to by her mother-in-law," hanyā śvaśrūya utā, where śvaśrūya is oblique (instr.) case of śvastrā.

---

And she, when the night was passing into day, bowed at her mother-in-law's feet and said to her:

"This royal palace is rich, an unfeeling mine of precious stones. And yet we get no light by night or by day. "Neither by night nor by day do we see each other. We sit here unseen by, and hidden from, each other.

(10) "Here we dwell in the thick, blinding darkness. Meseems this is a union of the blind."

Her mother-in-law said to her:

"When I shall see a twelve-year old son of yours, Prajāpāti, then shall you see each other. Such was my prayer to the devas."

Sudarśanā replied:

"Evil was the prayer you made to the devas, madam, that we should not see our union for such a long time."

A vehement desire to see her husband came over the queen, and she appealed to her mother-in-law. Her mother-in-law answered her, saying, "My daughter, to-morrow the king is showing himself to the people. Look on him then."

Alindā dressed up Kuśadrūma like the king and made him sit on the throne. Kuśa himself held the sunshade, while the princes, counsellors, townspeople and countrymen took their respective seats. When Sudarśanā saw the king and the whole assembly, she rejoiced. But when she saw the sunshade-bearer, the sight repelled her. Sudarśanā said to her mother-in-law, "The king is splendid, the princes are splendid, the whole assembly is splendid, but the sunshade-bearer is a repulsive sight. The glory of this royal assembly is marred by him. If this sunshade-bearer were not in view, this royal
assembly would be splendid." Her mother-in-law replied, "My daughter, do not speak so, for you do not know the high-mindedness of this sunshade-bearer. He is high-minded, strong, virtuous and wealthy, and it is through his might that we all enjoy prosperity."

Then Sudarśanā as she lay in bed said to the king:

"Could you not now, my lord, find in all the world some other man to be your sunshade-bearer? So shameless and insolent is this one that you have."

The king said:

"Fair lady, what matters his outward form? He is powerful, and he pleases me because I have regard to his power."

"Fair lady, what matters his outward form? He is wealthy, and he pleases me because I have regard to his wealth.

"Fair lady, what matters his outward form? He is courageous, and he pleases me because I have regard to his courage.

"Fair lady, what matters his outward form? He is virtuous, and he pleases me because I have regard to his virtue.

"Fair lady, what matters his outward form? His voice is loud. It is through his power that we all live.

"He is my good friend, an esteemed comrade, and as dear as life to me. If I lost him, neither you nor I could live."

Now it happened that the queen and all the women of the court went out to see the lotus pool. The king in simple garb

1 \textit{Aṇorosa}. See Vol. 1, p. 87, n. 1.
2 Literally, "because I consider that he is powerful," \textit{mahābalo ti kṛitvāna}.
3 \textit{Mahākriṣṇa}, unless we should read \textit{mahābhara}, "a great lord". The latter would fit in better with the next sentence.
4 \textit{Prākritiyāvina}, see Vol. 2, p. 448, ff., where he had been advised by his mother so to dress and disguise himself and sit down in the pool. Edgerton (\textit{B.H.S.D.} s.v. \textit{prākritiyāvina}) would read \textit{prākritiyāvina} in advance", in all these passages. As he points out this is actually the reading of the MSS. at 2. 448, 449, and 3. 11, 12. If he is right, allusion to a disguise is made only at 2. 449 and 451, in the words \textit{prākritihaka vēṣeṇa} "in simple garb". In the other passages Kūsa is merely hidden to be at the various places "in advance" of Sudarśanā. This, however, seems to detract from the drama of the story.

\section*{THE KUṢA JĀTAKA}

had gone down into the pool and was sitting there. When the queen went down into the pool, he seized her, and she thought (12) that she had been seized by a water-demon.\footnote{Udākārīkṣasa.} The women released her by throwing showers of blossoms\footnote{Literally "by means of showers of blossoms", reading \textit{puspavīṣṭhi} for \textit{puspavīṣṭi} \textit{pi} of the text. Cf. the episode in Vol. 2, p. 482 (text) where the women stripped the king with "handfuls of flowers," \textit{puspamūṣṭhi}. Perhaps, \textit{muṣṭhi} is the right reading here too.} at the king.

The king said:

"You went, O queen, to the park to look at the lotus-pool. But you have brought me no lotuses, and so, my dear, you do not love me."

The queen replied:

"Yes, my lord, I did go to the park to bathe in the lotus pool. But I saw a demon there and I collapsed in a sudden swoon.

"Now he who holds your sunshade and he who was there in the lotus grove were, I should think, born of the same\footnote{reading \textit{puspavīṣṭhi} for \textit{puspavīṣṭi} \textit{pi}. See n 2.} woman. For their features were alike."

On another occasion the queen, with the women of the court, went out to see the mango grove. Now the king, in simple garb, had also gone to the mango grove and was standing there. As the queen was strolling about she was seized by him. The queen thought that she had been seized by a demon of the forest.\footnote{I.e., that night, after Alindā had come home.} The women released her by throwing showers of blossoms\footnote{Reading \textit{puspavīṣṭhi} for \textit{puspavīṣṭi} \textit{pi}. See n 2.} at the king.

In the bed-chamber (that night) the king said to the queen:

"You went, O queen, to see the flourishing mango grove. But you have brought me no mangoes, and so, my dear, you do not love me."

The queen replied:

"Yes, my lord, I did go to see the flourishing mango
THE MAHAVASTU

grove. But I saw a demon there and I collapsed in a sudden swoon.

(13) "Now he who holds your sunshade, he who was in the lotus grove and he who was in the mango grove, were, I should think, born of the same woman."

Once the elephant stable was on fire. The king girded up his loins and rescued the elephants. With a knife he cut their halters and then threw the roof down.5

The king, having the power of Nārāyaṇa, in his strength seized the burning elephants and threw them out and rescued them from the blaze.6

The women of the court sang the praises of the king.
"Behold," said they, "the prowess of the king." A certain hunchbacked woman also sang the praises of the king, saying:

"He who sits on the throne is strong, splendid, resourceful and great. Like the moon in the sky he illumines all around him.

"With the red eyes of a partridge he is resplendent like Kāmadeva. The valiant, strength-endued king has rescued the elephants."

The king said:

"This hunchback who praises the king is a good dame. I will give you four garments of Benares cloth."

The daughter of the king of the Madrakas was pained when she saw the king, and grieved that such a man as this should be her husband.

(14) The daughter of the king of the Madrakas said:

"Will no one cut off with a sharp knife the tongue of this chattering hunchbacked woman who praises the king?"

The hunchbacked woman said:

"Kings can hold out the threat of prison or of death. So I tell his praises to safeguard my life."

The queen1 said:

"I do not see, nor shall I see, what good there is for me in life. I shall go away this very day ere the breath of life deserts me."

And the angry queen, daughter of the king of the Madrakas, accompanied by a hunchbacked woman, rode away in a carriage to the home of her kinsfolk.

Kuśa's mother, in sorrow for her son, collapsed to the ground like the broken stalk of a palm-tree.

Like a stalk of the sal tree cut off by an axe, she fell to the ground overcome by sorrow for her son.

The king, unhappy and grieving after his wife, decided to go in search of her. His unhappy mother spoke to King Kuśa in verse:

"Behold the harm I have done through my ill-luck. For it was I who sought after her;5 she is a king's daughter, and she came here from five hundred yojanas away."

1 I.e., Sudarśanā.
2 See Vol. 1, p. 54, n. 2.
3 Senart's restoration of the text here cannot be right. As he gives it, it reads aho mama mandabhagyaye artho paryñjito hule, which could only mean, "behold the good of unlucky me which has been inflicted on the family." The corresponding passage in Vol. 2 (p. 460) has aho manda-bhagyaye anartho. Two MSS. here, too, have anartho (mas. or nom. for neut. or acc.). Paryñjito, though it is the reading of one MS, can only stand if it is given the very doubtful sense of "inflicted". It seems better to substitute paryñjita, the word which begins the sentence following the expression just quoted from Vol. 2. Kule is Senart's conjecture for kalt or kalim of the MSS. But the latter is for kalt, "ill-luck", and is clearly a gloss, explanatory of mandabhagyā, which has found its way into the text to the exclusion of another word, probably mayā. The restoration suggested, and followed in the translation, is, therefore, aho mama mandabhagyā (a)nartho paryñjita mayā (paryñjita fem. in agreement with sa implied), or, alternatively, paryñjita agreeing with anartho, "a profitless thing did I seek."
The king established his brother Kuśadrūma on the throne and said to his counsellors,

"After I have saluted my mother and respectfully taken leave of her I shall take my lute and set out for the north."

He came to a house in a certain village in the land of the Madrakas, where an old woman gave him lodging. On that day he was welcomed in the village because of his playing on the lute. He was given plenty of solid and soft food, a large milk-bowl of solid food, a large water-jug of soft food, together with a pot of curds and various condiments. The old woman thought to herself: "Here, and in the morning he will go away, so that there will be enough food for me for two months." But King Kuṣa, chatting the while with the old woman, ate the food in the milk-bowl in one or two mouthfuls. And the large jug-full of gruel which was enough for eight or nine rice-gruels was all eaten, as well as the condiments and the dish of curds.

The old woman lost all hope, and she cried out:

"Help! Help! Come in. A destructive demon in human form is within my house and is going to eat me up."

1. Pratīṣṭhā, which, as Senart says, is for pratīṣṭhāya. So also B.H.S.D. Gothic, see Vol. 2, p. 412, n. 1. "A receptacle for solid food."
3. Edgerton, Gram., § 35, 17, seems to have mistaken the force of yādūd here. He takes it as an adverbial conjunction, "until," introducing the main verb bhaviyati, "until he became (lit. should become) the playing." But the words rajīto priyo ti kriṇā cannot be fitted into this rendering, which, accordingly, is not consonant with the context.
4. Literally, "was not pleased by him carrying her," tena vāhityaṁmaṇena asū (Pali = Sk. asū).
6. Rākṣasa.
7. Anūjja, from āra, "food," "vigor," etc. The parallel passage in J. (5, 393) has anuṣṣa-bhāṣaṇa. Anuṣṣa there, however, is taken both by the ancient commentator and the modern translator as being for an-ujja, "not upright," "not fair," (i.e., with cita understood), a sense which is not appropriate to the Mh. text. But it would not be impossible, in spite of what the commentator says, to take the anuṣṣa (v.l. anuṣṣa) of J. as being from an-ūrī (not an-ujja = rūj), and so render the line anuṣṣa-bhāṣaṇa (for anuṣṣa) "harm mahāntam by the burden is too great for one who is without sustenance." It might be argued, indeed, that this gives better sense than "it is not right that you should bear this burden." (J. trans.)

---

The king replied:

"All can live in the village, even those who are ugly. Mother, I'll stay here one night, and to-morrow I'll go."

(16) After staying there one night he went on to Kanyakubja where he joined a master garland-maker. When he had become a skilled craftsman he went to the king's kitchen.

The king, too, was pleased and so on up to he was dear to the king. The women introduced him into the harem, saying, "he will become our plaything." The women of the harem and the other daughters of King Mahendra rode on his back. But Sūḍarśanā avoided him and refused to be carried by him.

[Sūḍarśanā said:]

"Now what am I to do, or why should I be blamed? He frightens me when he looks at me, as though he were a demon of the sea.

"What am I to do, or why should I be blamed? I fear him when he looks at me, as a straying deer fears the huntsman.

"Without sustenance as you are, return and hurry night and day along the way you came. Go, Kuṣa, to your own kingdom. I have no wish for an ugly man."
The king said:

"You love me well, O dark lady of the fine hips and slender waist, and because of my love for you I shall not yearn for my great kingdom.

"I will not go away, O deep-bosomed lady, though I know what land I came from. I roam the world like one distraught. I am mad with love, O lady of the fawn-like gentle eyes."

[The queen said:]

"You are out of your mind, since you desire one who does not desire you. O king, you are in love with one who loves you not. That is not the mark of a wise man."

(17) Kuša said:

"When a man wins the lady dear to him, whether she loves him or loves him not, men acclaim his success. He who fails is a sorry fellow."

The queen said:

"You can gratify even a thousand women in one night, but in loving one woman only you incur great misery."

The king said:

"I know none of that misery. O glorious, lovely lady, in chaste living accomplished, you will be my wife."

The queen said:

"Talk not of my chastity; let wicked suffering be yours. You will make love elsewhere to a lioness or a jackal."

Kuša said:

"Talk not so, O lady of the fine hips and slender waist. Even recluses, I see, win bright renown by their chaste living.

---

2 Cf. J. J. 296.
3 \( \text{Agham es bhotu pāpam.} \) For \( \text{agam} \), see Vol. 1, p. 35, n. 1. But the corresponding passage in Vol. 2, p. 432 (text) has \( \text{ayam es bhavatu} \) (for \( \text{bhavati} \) \( \text{pāpam} \). "this (chastity) is worth nothing to you."
4 \( \text{Mā avaca, where avaca is aor. 2 sg. of vacati.} \) For the form, which can also be used as 3 sg., see Edgerton, Gram. §32. 113. The use of the augmented aor. with \( \text{mā} \) is, of course, anomalous, though often found in our text.

---

"For, lady, they shine in this world by virtue of their well-spent lives, and are reborn in heaven, in Trīdaśa, where they enjoy the pleasures of sense."

"This I tell you, O lady of the fine hips and slender waist—no other man is your lord save Kuša of the lion-voice."

The queen said:

"If what the prophets say be true, you can cut me in seven pieces ere I become your wife."*

(18) The king said:

"I have no wish to cut you up, O lady of the fine hips and slender waist. Whole as you are will you become my wife. A great realm is mine, rich in horses and in men, where gifts are endless and clothing and food are abundant. Yet here am I now come having abandoned my throne and realm. Because of my love for you I care not for all that kingdom."

The queen said:

"You might as well dig a hole in the rock with the wood of the karṇikāra tree, or catch the wind in a net, as desire one who does not desire you. Why do you love unloved? . . . Go back to your kingdom, Kuša. Why do you weary yourself?"

The king said:

"This is no weariness for me, it is but loving a chaste life. Somewhere or other, fair lady, you will be my wife."

The queen said:

"Let this chaste life of yours be regarded as worthless. Somewhere else you will woo a lioness or a jackal, or even an ass."

---

1 See Vol. 1, p. 124, n. 2.
2 See Vol. 2, p. 429, n. 3.
3 Chornaytā. See Vol. 2, p. 429, n. 4. For the various BSk. senses of this verb see B.H.S.D.
5 Lacuna.
Then Kuśa, the son of a king, heroic, invincible in combat, this Kuśa who was noble and wise, spoke these words.

(19) "If I go away, O lady of the fine hips and slender waist, I will first bind you with fetters. What would your people do then?"

The queen said:

"You must not sin against the dharma which you once upheld. Bearing that dharma in mind will you wish to bind me?"

The king said:

"I have the power, sovereign lady, to bind you and make you go where I will. What can your father do?"

"I can if I like gratify a thousand women, though you are a mighty lord. I have no wish to see you."

"These high walls, these lofty towers and copings, and these warriors on elephants will stop you."

"These fight with swords, axes, arrows and well-sharpened knives, and they shall seize you, O king."

(20) Then King Mahendraka reproached his daughter,7

"I know, your majesty, that you are strong and valiant. But you are ugly and hideous too. You are repulsive, though you are a mighty lord.

"You are thick-lipped, thick-headed, fat and pot-bellied. I have no wish to see you. So do not weary yourself.

"These high walls, these lofty towers and copings, and these warriors on elephants will stop you.

"These fight with swords, axes, arrows and well-sharpened knives, and they shall seize you, O king."

2 Reading tam na dharmaḥ aparādhaham for tam eva, etc. Cf. Vol. 2, p. 430, n. 3.
3 Or, "O Prajāpatt!
4 The text introduces this stanza with the words desə āha, "the queen said," but they are omitted as unnecessary in translation; for the queen was already speaking.
5 Reading the pl. ye və vaṃhanti, as in Vol. 2, p. 484 (text) for the sg. yo yə vaṃhantih.
6 Reading labheyam, as in Vol. 2, p. 484 (text) for labhayam. Senart is not correct in assigning these words to Kuśa, and prajāpati here does not refer to Sudarśanā, but is an honorific title for the king.
7 A reference to Vol. 2 will show how much of the story has been omitted here.

1 Reading ṇorāyaśā (see Vol. 2, p. 429, n. 4.) for ṇoḍātiya. One MS. has ṇoḍātiyaḥ. 2 Reading ambe for amba, for these words are addressed to her mother, not to her father. Cf. the version in Vol. 2, p. 486 (text). And so, too, ambe is found in the next stanza but one.
3 Etāka. See Vol. 2, p. 432, n. 3. Now see B.H.S.D.
5 Literally, "he is to be acquainted," samādāpya, so interpreted by Senart, but the text of the whole passage is doubtful. Perhaps, the more usual sense, "he is to be incited," is better.
6 Reading aparādhahām ācaram for aparādhahye ācara va, and kadaścit for kocid. Senart admits that the text of the second line as printed is wholly unintelligible, not so much in itself but in view of the repetition immediately below. But the emendation proposed here would seem to give some semblance of coherence to the context, especially as it makes it fit in with the sense of the next stanza, where Kuśa takes up the words of Sudarśanā and applies them to his own case. It is just this repetition of the phraseology in Kuśa's reply that makes Senart so doubtful of the text of this line and of his rendering of it, "si quelqu'un lui faisait tort, le roi (son père) ne manquerait pas d'intervenir."

Then the king's daughter, frightened, sobbing and weeping, with the tears filling her eyes, spoke these words:

"If, mother, these nobles from afar slay me, then collect my bones and burn them.

"And when you have burnt them, erect a shrine. And when you have erected the shrine you will plant there a kārṇīkāra tree.

"Then when it breaks out into blossom in the spring, when winter is gone, you will remember me, my mother, and say 'such beauty was my daughter's.'"

Sudarśanā then stood up and said, "Kuśa is a king's son, skilled in battle, and noble and wise, and I must acquaint him with the situation.

"When he has given battle to these kings, bound them and cut them to pieces, then there will be peace."

(21) Then she, the noble and glorious lady, trembling in all her frame, thus spoke to the king's son:

"I truly admit it to you, O mighty prince and lord of men, if I at any time did give you offence."

Kuśa said:

"I, too, admit it to you, O sovereign lady with the gleaming
Then Prajāpati's mother, sobbing and weeping, with her eyes full of tears spoke these words:

"Is he a musician, or trader, or a pukkas? In what royal court was he born? What is his especial skill?"

Sudarśanā replied to her mother:

"He is no musician, nor a cândâla, nor yet a pukkas. He is the son of King Ikṣvāku, and you think that he is a slave.

"Rich is this nobleman's court, full of the cries of peacock and curlew accompanied by the strains of music, and you think that he is a slave.

"Rich is this nobleman's court, gleaming white as a shell, the resort of throngs of women, and you think that he is a slave.

"Rich is this nobleman's court, furnished with vessels of gold and teeming with women, and you think that he is a slave.

"Rich is this nobleman's court, and you think that he is a slave.

"He has sixty thousand elephants arrayed in trappings and housings of gold. With their long tusks, these mighty beasts issue forth,

"Ridden by village chiefs who are armed with swords and lances. Rich is this nobleman's court, and you think that he is a slave.

"He has sixty thousand chariots, moving with a merry sound, decorated, with well-fastened fellies of iron, and covered with leopard's skin;

"They are ridden by village chiefs armed with bows and clothed in armour. Rich is this nobleman's court, and you think that he is a slave.

Then the king heard from the queen that their son-in-law had come, and that he was in the women's apartment. He was alarmed, since the kings were a menace without, and now there was this menace within. For he wondered what Kuśa would do.

(23) [To the queen he said:]

"Why do you talk so, like one mad and demented? What is Kuśa like? Why should I not have a look at him?"

The queen said:

"My lord, he who is within the house is a king's son. He has left his own home and come hither."

When the king heard these words he was alarmed and disturbed in mind. Then quite pleasantly and agreeably he respectfully saluted Kuśa, and said to him:

"Forgive us, your majesty, forgive us, valiant man. We did not know, O lion-voiced one, that you had come hither.

"Forgive us, your majesty, forgive us, valiant man. We did not know, O lion-voiced one, that you had come hither.

"Forgive us, your majesty, forgive us, great warrior. We did not know, O sweet-voiced one, that you had come hither."

1 Supplying aparâdhyam, of which there is a reminiscence in some of the MSS., with âcârya.
2 "Epithet of a degraded mixed caste . . . the offspring of a Ni-shâda by a Śûdra female." (M.W.)
3 Kim (a)yâ kurvanto mukham. Cf. kriyamukka, "skilled".
4 "The generic name for a man of the lowest and most despised of the mixed tribes, born from a Śûdra father and Brâhman mother." (M.W.)

1 i.e., were legitimate.
2 The text has kasmâdanupasyamathâ. The need to insert na, "not," is obvious, unless we read for kasmâd, "why," tasmâd, "therefore," and render "therefore let us have a look." For the suffix -tha, see p. 4, n. 1.
Then the king again reproached his daughter, saying, "My son-in-law has been here a long time, but you did not tell me."

Kusa was immediately anointed with oil worth a hundred pieces and with oil worth a thousand pieces. He was bathed, rubbed with royal ointments, clothed in royal raiment, crowned with a diadem of pearls, and entertained with music on the five musical instruments.

Kusa said to his father-in-law:

"Let the ears of all the elephants and horses you have be stopped, lest your own heart also be stopped," said his father-in-law. And those kings said, "What do we do?" Kusa replied, "Go to my father-in-law, fall at his feet and hail him."

"What do I do?" Kusa replied, "You will do as I bid you." His father-in-law said, "I will do so."

[Kusa said] "You have (seven) daughters, dower them with a thousand pieces of gold and give a daughter to each king. Let these be your sons-in-law. Then you will live in comfort and without fear." And King Mahendra dowered his daughters with a thousand pieces of gold and gave them to the kings. By this alliance made with gold he secured both instances one and the other. This can hardly be taken with the reading suvarflasahasramaśam kritvii. 1

Then the king again reproached his daughter, saying, "My son-in-law has been here a long time, but you did not tell me."

Kusa was immediately anointed with oil worth a hundred pieces and with oil worth a thousand pieces. He was bathed, rubbed with royal ointments, clothed in royal raiment, crowned with a diadem of pearls, and entertained with music on the five musical instruments.

Kusa said to his father-in-law:

"Let the ears of all the elephants and horses you have be stopped, when it hears my lion-roar."

"Quickly yoke the horses, with golden pennons flying."

(24) And, followed by King Mahendra, he went out of the palace.

The hero, the lord of battle, roared his lion-roar, and when he had done so, the nobles were captured.

He took these seven nobles prisoner and brought them to his father-in-law. And those kings said, "What do we do?" Kusa replied, "Go to my father-in-law, fall at his feet and hail him." They therefore fell at the feet of King Mahendra and hailed him as victor. The king of the Madrakas said, "What do I do?" Kusa replied, "You will do as I bid you." His father-in-law said, "I will do so."

[The Sanskrit is curiously succinct, svarnasandhita putrapautā, "thus sons and grandsons were (the result of) the golden alliance." Cf. Vol. 2, p. 436, n. 2]

5. Bhajjīyati, fut-pass. of bhāti. Vol. 2, p. 289 has bhajjīyati, and in both instances one MS. reads bhajjīyati.
6. Text has padehi only (instr. for loc., as often in BSk.), "at (his) feet." This can hardly be taken with the verb allīyaka "resort with your feet." For in the next sentence we have padehi... rājya abhigata, "when they were come (and fallen) at the king's feet."
7. Vriddhima karotā. In the next line we have the form vuddhi.
9. The king of the devas, Sakra, lord of the heavens, was meaning to do this jewel on you. Then there will not be your equal for beauty all Jamudvāpa. Whenever you wish to recover your former appearance, then hide this jewel with your hand."

1. The Sanskrit is curiously succinct, svarnasandhita putrapautā, "thus sons and grandsons were (the result of) the golden alliance." Cf. Vol. 2, p. 436, n. 2
2. Jāmdūṭa, Sk. jāmdūṭa, Pali jāmdūṭa.
4. Yathecchitā janaḍapade for yathecchitā (sic) j. of the text.
7. The text has jyotirasasamvalikād (so reading for "valikād") maṇipratnam. In the version in Vol. 2 (p. 492 text), when the jyotirasasamvalikād maṇipratnam, where the two terms are in opposition, "a single rope of pearls (with the jyotirasasamvalikād maṇipratnam)."
10. Literally, "you are to cover it," pīdhīyāyasi, caus. to Sk. (a)pīdā, Pali pr. pass. pīdhīyati. It is now seen that Edgerton, Gram. §§29, 37 prefers with one MS. the reading pīdhīyāyasi, opt. 2 sg., a causative from a pass. stem, "you are to cause to be covered." ibid. §88. 12.
Then wearing this jewel Kuśa, divinely beautiful, came to the entrance to the royal quarters, but he was stopped by the door-keeper from going in. He said, “I am Kuśa.” The door-keeper said, “It would be a good thing were Kuśa like you.” King Kuśa then hid the jewel with his hand, and his complexion and form became again as they had been before. When the door-keeper saw this he fell on his face.

Kuśa then went in into the queen’s presence. The queen said to him, “Do not trample on the palace floor. Why have you come in?” He said, “I am Kuśa.” The queen said, “Would that King Kuśa had such beauty.” The king then hid the jewel with his hand, and he appeared as he used to be. The queen said, “Take your hand away from the jewel.” The king did so, and his appearance became celestial once more.

Kuśa explained, “I was intending to destroy myself, when Śakra gave me the jewel named Jyotirasa.”

When the four hundred and ninety-nine princes, the counsellors and the officers of the army heard that King Kuśa had come, they all rose up to meet him. They beheld King Kuśa mounted on a beautiful elephant, shining like the sun and coming with a large host of the four arms. But they did not recognise him. (26) When, however, the king hid the jewel with his hand, he appeared as he was before, and then they all fell down before him. And so in great pomp King Kuśa with Queen Sudarśanā entered the inner apartment.

Thus do the affairs of the virtuous man turn out well, as in the case of King Kuśa who was reunited with his wife and his kinsfolk.

The Exalted One, the Master, calling to mind a former abode and a former life, related this jātaka to his monks.

Telling them what the skandhas, the dhātuṣ, the āyatanaś, and the meaning of the ātman were, the Exalted One explained the matter thus:

---

1 Reading vārī for vāri of the text.
2 Literally, “These are the skandhas, etc.” i.e., respectively, “sensory elements,” “bodily or physical elements,” “elements of sense perception,” and “self” or “soul.” The formula as here given differs slightly from its expression, elsewhere, e.g., Vol. 2, p. 93 (text), where, in the second line instead of ātman ṛiham ca, “and the meaning of the ātman,” we have ātmanam adhihīrya, “with reference to the ātman.”
gifts. To-day is the first time he has been in this house, and I gave him alms because of his charm.

Then the Pratyekabuddha, understanding the wicked thought that had occurred to the man, in the kindness of his heart flew out of the house and through the air like a king of swans. And when the man saw the Pratyekabuddha you will belong to none but a vow, saying, “In another life you will be in the power of no other man; you will be a seer of great parts. He asked pardon of his wife, and made a vow, saying, “You may think that at that time and on that occasion that man in the city of Kampilla who, because of jealousy of his wife and through his evil-mindedness, calumniated the Pratyekabuddha, was somebody else. But she the maturing of that karma, monks, that King Mahendra. It was as the maturing of that karma, monks, that King Kuśa came to be ugly.

Here ends the Kuśa Jātaka.

THE JĀTAKA OF THE BULL

(28) The monks said to the Exalted One, “How, Lord, was it that wicked Māra followed closely on the heels of the Exalted One when he was living his austere life, desiring and seeking a chance to tempt him, but had to retile unsuccessful 4 without finding one?” The Exalted One said, “There was another occasion, also, when he followed closely on my heels, desiring and seeking a chance to tempt me, but had to retire unsuccessful, without finding one.” The monks asked the Exalted One, “Was there another occasion, Lord?” The Exalted One replied, “Yes, monks.”

Once upon a time, monks, long ago, there was a bull, a lord of cattle, following a herd of cows. Now the organs of that bull were drooping and inert. With his organs thus drooping he was closely pursuing the herd of cows.

In a woodland tract in that place there dwelt a jackal, named Girika, and this jackal espied the bull as he followed the herd of cows with his organs drooping and inert. So he pursued him closely for many years.

Now there was another jackal of the same age as he, and when he saw Girika closely pursuing the bull, he addressed him in verses:

“For how many years, Girika, have you been pursuing the lord of the herd? Time and again you have slunk off, and you are full of fear at the sight of him.

“Those organs, though they droop, are strong, and though inert are well-set. They will not fall off, so without a prey will you remain.

“1, too, have pursued him for fifteen years. Inert though his organs are they are well-set. There is no fear of their falling off.”

(29) The Exalted One said, “It may be again, monks, that you will think that at that time and on that occasion that bull was somebody else. But I was that bull. The jackal named Girika was Māra. Then, also, desiring and seeking a chance to tempt me, he had to retire unsuccessful, without finding one.”

Here ends the Jātaka of the Bull.

1 Anye jāti, where anye is for anyasmim, and jāti a stem form used as loc. So Senart. Edgerton, Gram. §10. 68, 69 adduces other examples of such a BSk. loc., but at §10. 189 he explains jāti as acc. pl. in an adverbial sense. The former explanation seems to be decidedly simpler.

2 Abhyāśāsya. Pali abbhāśāhātthi. Cf. ākāśati, Vol. 1, p. 44 (text), where Senart says that the form is to be referred directly to the weakened stem cikha, Pali cikha, Magadhi cikka, and not to the Sk. caṅkha. The Pali stem cikha, Pali cikka, Magadhi cikka, and not to the Sk. caṅkha.


The monks said to the Exalted One, "How was it, Lord, that wicked Māra was unable to get a chance to tempt the Exalted One?" The Exalted One replied, "That was not the first time that wicked Māra was unable to get a chance to tempt me. There was another occasion also." The monks asked, "Was there another occasion, Lord?" The Exalted One replied, "Yes, monks."

Once upon a time, monks, long ago, in a high region of the Himalayas a monkey had charge of a large troop of monkeys. Now in that part of the Himalayas there was a large pool of water, where the herd frequently went down to drink water. But in that lake there dwelt a water demon. Whatever deer, bird, monkey or man went down to the lake to drink was pulled into the water by the demon.

It happened that that herd of monkeys went down to the lake to drink. The demon being in the water observed the monkeys, but they did not see him, and he pulled in one of them. And in the same way each time that the herd of monkeys went down to the lake to drink water the demon unobserved saw them and pulled in one of them. Then the lord of the herd missed the monkeys who had been pulled in, and he said to himself, "Where are those monkeys? I am afraid they have strayed somewhere." He looked all around, but did not see them. And the sagacious lord of the herd observed the tracks made by the monkeys at the place where they went down to the lake to drink water, both as they went and as they came. He saw that the tracks of those going down were more numerous than the tracks of those coming up. Understanding came to him, and he said, "They have been pulled in by the water demon. That is why I do not see them. There must be no more drinking water direct by the mouth."

Since, therefore, he saw that they were being pulled into the lake by the water demon, he gave orders to the monkeys, saying, "Go and gather the tops of reeds from the reed-thicket, and drink water by means of them." So they went, and each plucked from the thicket a very long reed-top, so that they could drink water from a distance, and the water demon could not pull them in. And when they did go to the lake to drink, they went down taking their reeds with them, and, staying at a distance from it, they drank water through the reeds. The water demon was no longer able to pull in a single monkey.

The tracks of one going down are seen, but not those of his coming up. Water must be drunk through a reed. The watchful has no cause for alarm.

The Exalted One said, "It may be again, monks, that you will think that he who was the lord of the monkeys at that time and on that occasion, was somebody else. I was he. And he who was the water demon was Māra. Then, too, was he unable to get a chance to tempt me.

Here ends the Jātaka of the Monkey."
Once upon a time, monks, long ago, in the Himalayas there was a monkey in charge of a large herd of monkeys. Now in the last month of summer the monkey, being thirsty after eating fruits of various kinds, came with the herd to a lake to drink water. This lake had precipitous banks and there was no means of going down to it nor of coming up from it. The chief of the herd in his thirst for water walked all around the lake searching for a way in. While doing this he broke through a fence of stones and fell into the water.

Now in that lake there was a serpent's hole, where a large serpent lived. Living where it did, it got its supply of food with little difficulty. For it would devour whatever beast or bird or monkey came down to the lake to drink. The serpent saw the chief of the monkeys falling into the water, and stretched out its neck from the den ready to seize him.

The serpent addressed the monkey in verse:

"Here comes a prey again, a forest-roaming monkey, who comes wishing to drink water at the entrance to my den in the bank."

The lord of the monkeys failed to get any support on which to rest his feet and thus get out of the water and reach dry land. He said to himself, "If the serpent turns its neck away, I'll put my feet on its head, and so gain dry ground."

Then he addressed the serpent in a verse:

"I am not your prey. Do you not see the crowd that you should threaten me particularly in the verse which you have just recited?"

The serpent turned its neck in the direction in which the lord of the monkeys had pointed out the other monkeys, so that it might see them. And no sooner had the serpent turned its neck away than the lord of the monkeys set his feet on its head, and thus safely stepped out of the water on to dry land. And on this other occasion did I, by my unique intelligence, escape from the domination of Māra.

Here ends the Jātaka of the Monkey.

THE PUṆYAVANTA JĀTAKA

The monks said to the Exalted One, "Behold, Lord, how thou speakest in praise of merits." The Exalted One replied, "This is not the first time that I have spoken in praise of merits. I did so on another occasion also." The monks asked, "Lord, was there another occasion?" The Exalted One replied, "Yes, monks."

1 Natthītum (sic), obviously an error for na-uttītum or -uttātum.
3 Prīkā, "the numerous or many (others)." Cf. Pāli puṭkā.

1 Naiudāsika, BSk., Pali nevaśīka. See B.H.S.D. for BSk. examples.
2 Fausbøll. no. 57.
Once upon a time, monks, long ago, in the city of Benares, in the province of Kāśi, a king named Aiśyanaka was ruling. He was meritorious and mighty; he treated his people well, had the virtue of charity and generosity, was powerful and wealthy, and had a large army. His kingdom was prosperous, rich, well-supplied with food and well-peopled with happy subjects.

Now that king had a son, a young prince named Punyavanta, who at all times spoke in praise of merits. Of the same age as this young prince were four sons of counsellors. One counsellor's son was named Viryavanta, who always spoke in praise of energy, holding that it was the supreme thing in the world. The second was named Silpavanta, who always spoke in praise of the arts, holding that they were the supreme things in the world. The third was named Rūpavanta, who always spoke in praise of beauty, holding that it was the supreme thing in the world. The fourth was named Prajña-vanta, who always spoke in praise of wisdom, holding that it was the supreme thing in the world.

The young prince Punyavanta spoke to them, saying, "There is nothing equal to merits. Merit is the supreme thing in the world. If you cannot understand this, let us go to another kingdom, and there find out who of us excels, the meritorious one, the energetic one, the artistic one, the beautiful one, or the wise one."

They thus left Benares and went to the city of Kampilla, so that, as they said, they should find out who of them excelled. Now it happened that they went out of Kampilla to bathe in the Ganges. And in the stream of the river Ganges they saw a large trunk of a tree being carried down. Then Viryavanta, the counsellor's son, said to the counsellor's son Viryavanta, "Now, here, O Viryavanta, you must exercise your energy on the trunk of a tree, and see if you can pull out that tree-trunk which is being carried down by the river Ganges." Then Viryavanta, exerting his great strength and power, pulled out the huge tree-trunk to dry land. The others looked at it and saw it was the precious sandal-wood tree. Viryavanta, the counsellor's son, sold it to perfume-makers for one hundred thousand purāṇas,1 and he brought the hundred thousand purāṇas and gave them to his companions. He addressed them in a verse:

"Men praise energy in the world; there is nothing superior to it in the world. See how by means of my energy I have gathered this store of wealth."

They said then, "We have seen the fruit of energy. Let us now see the fruit of Silpavanta's art."

Silpavanta took his lute and left his companions. He played the lute along with other counsellors' sons and merchants' sons skilled in the lute. A great crowd of people gathered. All those in the city of Kampilla who were conversant with the music of the lute (35) gathered together when they heard the music. They vied with one another in playing the lute in competition with the counsellor's son. But none could beat that counsellor's son; Silpavanta excelled them all in playing the lute.

Now it happened that while Silpavanta was playing his lute, one of the strings was broken. But it continued to produce the same music as before. A second string was broken, but the same music was forthcoming. A third string was broken, but the same music was forthcoming. And so one by one six strings were broken, and one alone was left. But even from this one string the same music was forthcoming. All the bystanders were astonished at the lute-playing of Silpavanta, the counsellor's son. He won as a reward a large quantity of gold. He brought the gold and gave it to his companions, saying, "Here is the fruit of my art." Then he addressed his companions in a verse:

1 See Vol. I, p. 188, n. 9.
2 This lute, then, had seven strings.
3 Prabhātām hiranyavasāraṃ ācchādo ca labdhā, where hiranyavasāraṃ and ācchāda must be in opposition. For ācchāda in the sense of "reward" see p. 36, n. 2.
"Men praise art in the world; there is nothing superior to it in the world. By skill with the lute I have gathered a store of wealth."

They replied, "We have seen the fruit of the art of Śilpavanta, the counsellor's son. Let us now see the fruit of Rūpavanta's beauty."

Then Rūpavanta, the counsellor's son, left his companions and went down to a stall in the market. As he was going round the stall a leading courtesan caught sight of him and saw that he was charming, comely, stately, with the most perfect beauty of complexion. (86) As soon as she saw him she fell deeply in love with him. She sent her servant to him, saying, "Approach that man and speak to him in my name." So the servant called to him and said, "Sir, a lady wishes to see you."

And he went with the servant to the leading courtesan's house. She greeted the counsellor's son, saying, "Welcome, sir, here is a home for you, an incomparable, fine dwelling-place. Indulge with me in the five sensual pleasures, and divert, enjoy and amuse yourself."

The leading courtesan made him sit down on her couch, and what with one thing and another he began to covet her wealth. He was taken to the bathroom, was given an unguent with perfumed oil, bathed with exquisite bathing powders, anointed with exquisite ointments, and arrayed in fine garments of silk. When he came again with the leading courtesan, costly food was laid before him. Then he summoned his companions. And they came to the leading courtesan's house, where they saw Rūpavanta, the counsellor's son, sitting in the arms of a great lady, a leading courtesan. When Rūpavanta saw his companions, he addressed them in a verse:

"Men praise beauty in the world; there is nothing superior to it in the world. I have won a store of wealth in a courtesan's arms."

"Take these pieces," said he, "and spend them." They took them and went to their own lodging. 1

(87) The companions said, "Now have we seen the fruit of the beauty of Rūpavanta, the counsellor's son. We must now see the fruit of Prajnāvanta's wisdom."

Prajñāvanta then left his lodging and went down to a stall in the market-place. There he saw a merchant's son wrangling with a leading courtesan in the midst of a large crowd. The merchant's son was saying to her, "Come and entertain me to-night, and I will give you a hundred thousand pieces." The leading courtesan replied, "Sir, I have no time to-night, I have been hired by another. To-night I shall entertain him, and to-morrow 2 I will come to you, sir." So she went and entertained the other man that night.

The merchant's son for his part had an impure dream of the leading courtesan as he lay in bed. In his dream he diverted, enjoyed and amused himself with the courtesan the whole night long to his heart's content. And she, after diverting, enjoying and amusing herself with the other man all night long, in the morning went to the merchant's son, saying, "Here I am come to entertain you, sir." The merchant's son

---

2. Agaccha mama... upaśṭhāpanāhārā. According to Senart hārī is a sort of infinitive denoting " purpose " with a verb of motion, giving to the preceding substantive the force of the infinitive or future participle. Immediately below occurs the form upaśṭhāpanāhārāḥ, where the suffix-ā or kā still further enforces the idea of purpose. Edgerton (B.H.S.D.) rightly prefers the form upaśṭhāna, which is a v.l. of the Ms. The causal stem is out of place here.
4. Literally, "lay being impure with the leading courtesan," agrapānikiṁ saṁkhyānta āyaśo. Saṁkhyānto is pr. part. of saṁkhyātī Pali and BSk., pass. of saṁkhyātī. The use of the pass. pr. part. with theacc. here is noteworthy. Edgerton (B.H.S.D.) does not agree with this. He translates, "went to bed thinking about that courtesan." And he goes on to say, "If our form is right, I can only understand it as a MIndic passive to Skt. caus. saṁkhyātī, " makes concerned "; it would then mean, "being made concerned with."

There is a v.l. saṁkhyānto: read saṁbhrīdānto "amusing himself (in thoughts)"
 replied, "I diverted, enjoyed and amused myself with you in my dream to my heart's content the whole night long. Go away, I do not want you." She said, "If, sir, you diverted, enjoyed and amused yourself with me in your dream to your heart's content the whole night long, you should give me a hundred thousand pieces." The merchant's son said, "Seeing that you lay with another man the whole night, why should I give you one hundred thousand pieces?" She replied, "Sir, you said yourself that you diverted, enjoyed and amused yourself with me in your dream to your heart's content the whole night long, you should therefore pay me the fee of a hundred thousand pieces." And hence rose the dispute between them, and though a great crowd (38) had gathered, none of them was able to settle the dispute.

Standing there was Prajñāvantaka, the counsellor's son. The townspeople of Kampilla appealed to him, saying, "Young man, what seems to you the proper thing? Should this leading courtesan be given the hundred thousand pieces by the merchant's son, or should she not?" Prajñāvantaka replied, "The fee should be paid by the merchant's son to the leading courtesan in just the same fashion as he consorted with her." They said to him, "Explain then, young man, how it should be paid." Prajñāvantaka ordered that a large mirror and a hundred thousand pieces should be brought. He told the merchant's son, "Take the box containing the hundred thousand pieces and set it in front of the mirror." He then said, "Come, lady, take this reflection of the box containing the hundred thousand pieces which is in the mirror. That is your fee."

The crowd roared their approval of the solution found by Prajñāvantaka the counsellor's son, and they presented him with a large amount of gold. He gave the gold to his companions, and addressed them in a verse:

"Men praise wisdom in the world; there is nothing superior to it in the world. By my thoughtful wisdom I have gathered a store of wealth."

The counsellors' sons then said, "We have now seen the power of the energy of Viryavanta the counsellor's son, the power of the art of Silpavanta, the power of the beauty of Ripavanta, and the power of the wisdom of Prajñāvantaka. Now we shall see the power of the merit of Prince Puyavanta."

Puyavanta, the king's son, left his companions (39) and made his way to a royal palace. And he settled near that royal palace. He was seen by a certain counsellor's son. As soon as this counsellor's son saw Puyavanta the king's son, he conceived an affection for him. He invited him to eat with him, took him to his home and led him to his gymnasium. After he had taken exercise he was bathed and anointed and taken in to eat. And there, along with the counsellor's son, the king's son was that day served with exquisite and regal food and drink. The counsellor's son took him up to the royal coach-house and made him lie down. He was seen by the daughter of King Brahmadatta, and she thought to herself, "This is the counsellor's son who has come." Then in the late evening she hurried out of the palace, entered the coach-house, and climbed into the carriage where Puyavanta the king's son was lying. She was certain that in a little while he would wake up. "Then," said she, "he will take his pleasure with me." But the prince having eaten and drunk well slept peacefully, while the king's daughter being distracted by thoughts of love kept on saying, "Presently he will wake up, in a moment he will wake up." But overcome by the excessive influence of the night she fell asleep. At daybreak she came down from the carriage, entered the palace and was seen by some counsellors. These thought to themselves, "Here is the king's daughter coming down from

---

2 Ačchādayanti. This must be the sense of this verb here. Senart compares the use of ācchāda in the sense of "retribution," "recompense," see p. 33, n. 3. The same use of the verb is found elsewhere in BSs, e.g., ācchādayati jīvītena "to keep alive." Av. Ś. 1. 300, Divy. 138. This meaning may be compared with the figurative use of acchādāti in Pall, namely, "to envelope," "to fill." See B.H.S.D. s.v. ācchāda.

---

3 Vyāyāmaśāla.
4 The text is very succinct here, so much so as to be syntactically incoherent. It reads amātysātuo ... yānālabāmabhūtenāpayitvā layāyito. The object of the causal gerund is not expressed and grammatically layāyito, causal pass. part. of ēt = ēlayāyito, agrees with the subject, whence it might seem that it was the counsellor's son who was made to lie down. But the context demands that it refer to rājaśātuo, understood.
5 None of the historical kings of this name is alluded to here.
6 Reading, as Senart is inclined to suggest, khidyamānā for vidyamānā of the text.
the coach-house after a sleepless night and entering the palace.

Can it be that she has been sitting in a carriage with some

man?

Now while they were thinking thus, Prince Puñyavanta
came down from his carriage. The counsellors thought.

"Where is this man from? He has been sitting with King
Brahmadatta's daughter in the coach-house." They seized
him and led him before King Brahmadatta. "Your majesty,"
said they, "this man has lain with your daughter in the
coach-house." The king asked, "How was this?" The
prince replied, "Your majesty, a certain counsellor's son
invited me to his house and gave me to eat (40) and drink.
When it was late I was dismissed, and I left for my lodging.
But, because of the lateness of the hour, he made me go up
to the coach-house and lie down after my eating and drinking.

There was no other person there."

The king's daughter was then asked, "How was this?"
She told King Brahmadatta the true state of affairs, saying,
"It was just as this man says, and not otherwise."

King Brahmadatta was pleased with Prince Puñyavanta.
He saw that he was a gracious, handsome, intelligent and
upstanding young man. And he thought to himself, "This
can be no ordinary person; he must belong to a great family."
Then he asked him, "Young man, whence are you?" The
prince answered, "I am from Benares, and the son of Añjana,
knight of Kāśi."

Immediately on seeing Prince Puñyavanta, Brahmadatta,
knight of Kampilla, had conceived an affection for him as for
a son, for the king had no son of his own. So he dowered his
daughter with a thousand pieces of gold, and with great royal
pomp and magnificence and in the presence of all the people
he gave her to Prince Puñyavanta and established him on the
throne. To his counsellors and the people of town and
country he said, "He has become my son, so that he may be
king. For I am old."

Then when Prince Puñyavanta had gained a kingdom, he
summoned his companions and addressed them in a verse:

Men praise merit in the world; there is nothing superior
to it in the world. By my merits I have won a kingdom
and a king's daughter.

The Exalted One said, "It may be again, monks, that you
will think that at that time and on that occasion the counsellor's
son named Viryanta was somebody else. But you
must not think so. And why? Sronakotiṣṭhā here, monks,
at that time and on that occasion was Viryanta the
counsellor's son. You may think that at that time and on that
case Silpavanta the counsellor's son was somebody else.
(41) You must not think so. And why? Rāstrapañja here,
monks, at that time and on that occasion was Silpavanta the
counsellor's son. You may think that at that time and on that
case Rūpavanta the counsellor's son was somebody else.
You must not think so. And why? The elder Sundo-
rananda here, monks, at that time and on that occasion was
Rūpavanta the counsellor's son. You may think that
at that time and on that occasion Prajñāvanta the counsellor's
son was somebody else. You must not think so. And why?
The elder Sāriputra here, monks, at that time and on that
occasion was Prajñāvanta the counsellor's son. You
may think that at that time and on that occasion the son of Añjana,
knight of Kāśi, named Puñyavanta, was somebody else.
You must not think so. And why? I, monks, at that time and
on that occasion was the son of Añjana, knight of Kāśi, named
Puñyavanta. Then, too, did I speak in praise of merit,
just as I do now."

Here ends the Puñyavanta Jātaka.

And, monks, that was not the only time that I spoke in
praise of merits. I did so on another occasion also."
Once upon a time, monks, long ago, in Mithila there reigned a king named Vijitāvī. He was meritorious and majestic. He treated his subjects kindly and had the virtue of liberality and generosity. There was nothing which he would refuse to give to recluses, brahmans, the poor and the beggars. Whoever wanted an elephant, he gave him one. Whoever wanted a horse, he gave him one. Whoever wanted a chariot, he gave him one. Whoever wanted a conveyance of any kind, he gave him one. Whoever wanted male slaves, he gave him them. Whoever wanted oxen, he gave him them. Whoever wanted vessels, he gave him them. Whoever wanted cows, he gave him them. Whatever anyone wanted, he gave him it. There was nothing which he would not give. And he did not regret his gifts afterwards, but was full of joy and gladness.

Now as he went on giving excessive largesses his treasuries failed. The treasurers, chief ministers, princes, counsellors, townsmen, countrymen and the mass of the people came together, and he...
The king said, “Friends, this is not as you aver. There is no cause nor reason that a generous giver should be reborn in the hells for having given charity. But when generous givers of charity have made a gift, as a result of that gift they are reborn in heaven after they die. There they enjoy divers celestial joys. And having enjoyed celestial joys among the devas, when their time is up they pass away from the world of the devas, and are reborn in the world of men among wealthy families. And, O Kausika, when these mendicants leave me, rewarded and satisfied, I have a sublime feeling of joy and gladness. And they too are glad. Even if I shall be reborn in hell for it, I shall persist in giving charity.”

Sakra, lord of the devas, having thus tested the king of Videha, was pleased with the result. “Your majesty,” said he, “your intention is splendid and sublime. I came hither but to test you.”

When Sakra, lord of the devas, had so spoken, he disappeared from the forest grove and returned to his home in Trayastrimsa.

Now in the kingdom of Mithilā, from the time that the king had been banished, no rain had fallen. It became short of food, and it was oppressed by robbers and enemies. So the princes, counsellors, treasurers, ministers and the country folk went to the forest grove and craved pardon of the king of Videha. With great royal pomp and splendour he was restored to Mithilā. And from that time the kingdom had abundance of food once more.

The Exalted One said, “It may be, again, monks, that you will think that at that time and on that occasion the king of Videha in Mithilā, named Vijitavin, was somebody else. But you must not think so. And why? I, monks, at that time and on that occasion was the king of Videha in Mithilā, named Vijitavin. Then, too, did I speak in praise of merits, just as I now do.”

There was a king, Vijitavin, ruler of Mithilā in Videha.

---

1 Epithet of Śakra = Indra. See Vol. 2, p. 60, n. 10.
2 Yadupādya . . . tadyupādya.
3 The same story in verse.

---

1 Vipraṇāsyaḥ, opt. (3 sg.) used in aor. sense, as frequently in Mheu.
3 Nirmittī, aor. of nir-mā. See above p. 41, n. 2.
4 Pacamāhāni. See above, p. 41, n. 3.
5 Vedatha, either a strange Prakrit use of 2nd for 3rd pl., or this part of the sentence suddenly turns into oratio recta. Its use in the very next sentence, however, would seem to show that the former alternative is the true one.
"Fearfully they cry as they suffer their grievous woes. So ask them what wickedness they did in their former lives."

They replied,

"O king, when we were among men, we were generous givers. And now, having dispensed great charity we suffer this woe."

(46) The king said,

"That is not the reason. There is no reasonableness in the supposition that he who is generous should, when he passes away, go to an evil bourn."

"For generous people, when they pass away from the world of men, go to heaven. There they enjoy the heavenly bliss which they themselves have created."

"It is desire [that brings] suffering in the hells, immense like the ocean. . . . I cannot bear seeing a beggar."

"Let this be my delight, O thousand-eyed one, that I go on giving and impart counsel the while, and that he who comes to me will go away replenished, content, satisfied and glad."

"There shall be no gift that I will not give. Day by day I shall bestow abundance and satisfaction. I shall be a refuge, [like] the tree of heaven laden with leaves and fruit.

1 Akara, aor., 3rd sg. for pl.
2 sayam ādi. Cf sayam ādi in the prose version (p. 41, n. 6). The verbal forms in this story, and especially in the metrical version, are paralleled in Ardhambhadghā and Apiabhrasana. According to Prof. F. Edgerton the dialect on which Buddhist Sanskrit was based was closely related to these two dialects. (See his article in Bulletin of the School of Oriental Studies, Vol. 8, pp. 501 ff.) The use of ādi (ādi) just referred to is mentioned on p. 504 of this article. See also his Gram., §82.20.
3 Anubhuma = anubhavam. Cf. Pali, homa. This is not cited by Edgerton, Gram., p. 224.
4 Yatra for yat, a very unusual application of the former.
5 Lacuna in the text.
6 Text has analparopam ttriām followed by a lacuna. This lacuna has been tentatively filled by supplying samudrāya from the reading samudrāya of one MS. However, ttriām samudrāya is a form of expression which is rather unusual in our text.
7 Another lacuna.
8 This is Senart's interpretation of the obscure girām vijāhāranta.
9 Dadēha, for dade (opt. 1 sg.) 'a (= aha, BSk. for Aham). See Edgerton, Gram., §20. 7.
10 Aharaham.
11 Lacuna.
12 Kalpariksha, see Vol. 1, p. 118, n. 1.

ORDINATION OF MAHĀ-KĀŚYAPA

"My heart is not wroth with a beggar, and when I have given I do not grieve and repent. I do not promise what I cannot bestow, and whatever I promise I immediately provide."

(47) "In an instant the wish of my heart was fulfilled and he was truly vanquished by me, "For seven days I sat cross-legged and at ease. Then I stood up, a sage immovable as a rock."

"On the seventh day I went forth as a saviour and preached the word, a mighty seer instructing all the worlds."

"Blessed is the fruit of merits; the wish of the meritorious prosper. Speedily does he attain perfect peace, utter release."

Here ends the Jātaka of Vijitāvin, the king of Videha.

THE ORDINATION OF MAHĀ-KĀŚYAPA

Thus have I heard. On one occasion the Exalted One's pupil, the venerable Ānanda, was touring Magadhā, accompanied by a large crowd of five hundred monks. He made for Rājagriha in Magadhā, and when he had reached it he stayed there in the Bamboo Grove at Kalandakanivāpa.

Now just then thirty of those who had resided with the venerable Ānanda renounced his teaching, and having thus

1 There is an obvious lacuna here. Equally obvious is the fact that the next two stanzas are misplaced. They would be more apposite on page 33 of text.
2 Sc. Māra.
3 Literally "the thousands of the world elements," lokadāññusakāraññi.
4 With this account of the ordination of Mahā-Kāśyapa, cf. S. 2. 217 ff.
5 See vol. 1, p. 210, n. 3.
6 Sārāvamsikārī, "living with "Pali saddhivihāri, or—nihārin. The BSk. sārādham, cf. AV.S.2.139, seems to be a formation independent of the Pali sādham, which in form = Vedic sādhrīn, 'towards one aim', but in meaning = Vedic sadhryah, "together" (P.E.D.) Miss I. B. Horner calls the translator's attention to the difference between an antivāsin, a pupil of an ṅacariya, and a saddhivihārī, or pupil of an upajjāya, and refers to V.1.46ff. for an account of the latter's duties.
betrayed their frailty they reverted to low things in the pursuit of sensual pleasures. The venerable Mahā-Kāśyapa heard this. Then the venerable Mahā-Kāśyapa went to the venerable Ananda, and, having exchanged cordial greetings with him, sat down to one side. And as he thus sat down to one side the venerable Mahā-Kāśyapa said to Ananda. "I should like to question the venerable Ananda on a certain matter, if he give me leave to set forth the question."

When this had been said, the venerable Ananda replied to the venerable Mahā-Kāśyapa, saying, "O venerable Mahā-Kāśyapa, ask what you will, and when I have heard your question I shall answer it." Then the venerable Mahā-Kāśyapa said to the venerable Ananda, "What, think you, were the several advantages which the Tathāgata, Arhan and perfect Buddha saw in prohibiting disciples from eating in a crowd and prescribing that they should eat in groups of three? The venerable Ananda replied to the venerable Mahā-Kāśyapa and said, "I would come from far away, O venerable Mahā-Kāśyapa, to put a question to you on this very topic. Well would it be if the venerable Mahā-Kāśyapa made his interpretation clear."

The venerable Mahā-Kāśyapa replied to the venerable Ananda, and said, "The Tathāgata, Arhan and perfect Buddha saw two advantages when he prohibited his disciples from eating in a crowd and prescribed that they eat in groups of three. What two? It conduces to the protection, safeguarding and comfort of families, and to the breaking up of cliques of wicked men, stopping them from banding together out of greed and from causing dispute, wrangling, squabbling, quarrelling, contention and mischief in the Sangha. It was because he saw these two advantages, O venerable Ananda, that the Tathāgata, Arhan and perfect Buddha prohibited his disciples from eating in a crowd, and prescribed that they eat in groups of three. And here are you, O venerable Ananda, going the rounds of families, with this young, fresh and tender party, troops of fellow-students in the Brahma-life, newly ordained monks, theras, and those of middle status, who have no guard on the doors of their senses, who know no moderation in food, who are ever unused to the exercise of vigilance and are irresponsible. It seems to me that you are like one destroying the harvest. You are but a youngster; you do not know moderation."

Then the venerable Ananda said to the venerable Mahā-Kāśyapa, "Though, I would come from far away, O venerable Mahā-Kāśyapa, to put a question to you on this very topic. Well would it be if the venerable Mahā-Kāśyapa made his interpretation clear."

---

1 Phāsukāra, Pali id. The P.E.D. leaves the etymology of phāsukāra doubtful, but refers to Trencker's suggestion that it is connected with Vedic praśu, "enjoying", etc. The meaning is certain, as shown by the combination yathāphāsukhā yathāphāsa at Mahāv. 3.169. The suggestion in P.E.D., following Pischel, that the synonymous phāṣahka represents a Sk. *spārǟka (which is strengthened by the BSk. form spāråvāhārā at Mahāv. 1.323. But the latter form would seem to imply that the primary form is phāṣa simply and not phāsukā as the P.E.D. (and Pischel) suggest. Edgerton (B.H.S.D.) remarks that none of the proposed etymologies is really convincing. Miss I. B. Horner, in a letter to the translator, suggests that there is here, as also in the injunction against eating in large groups, an allusion to the vexatious practice of the schismatic Devadatta and his friends who imposed on people's charity.

2 Literally "among families", kuleya. The repetition has kulehi, instr. for loc. 3 Sabrahmacariya, in apposition to imeyya pariyoga. 4 For this division of monks see D.178 and S.220. V.1.178, 290; 2.16, 212, has only two divisions, navā or navāhā and thera. As the present passage shows, the division was not necessarily one of age. The navas were monks of less than five years standing, those of middle status monks of between five and ten years standing, and theras those of above ten. I. B. Horner, *Bk. of Disc.*, 4. p. 141 n. 2; Cf. V.1, 103 (Bk. of Disc. 4. p. 133). 5 Jāgarihā, BSk., Pali jāgariya. 6 Sasyagānam viśa manye karanto. Cf. S. 2.218. 7 Literally "this youngster does not know", nāyam kumāra...ājñāsi (an aor. form which according to Edgerton, Gram. §324.48 is a derivation from Sk. ajñāsi rather than originally Prakrit.)
are grey hairs growing on my head, you yet think that you should speak to me as to a youngster. 1 A second and a third time did the venerable Mahā-Kāśyapa say to the venerable Ananda, “And here are you, O venerable Ananda, going the rounds of families with this party who have no guard on the doors of their senses, who know no moderation in food, who are ever unused to vigilance and are irresponsible. It seems to me you are like one destroying the harvest. You are but a youngster; you do not know moderation.” 2 And a second and a third time did the venerable Ananda reply to the venerable Mahā-Kāśyapa, “Though there are grey hairs growing on my head, yet the venerable Mahā-Kāśyapa thinks that he should thrice speak to me as to a youngster.”

Now on that occasion the nun Shūlanandā 3 was standing not far from the venerable Ananda, and she said to the venerable Mahā-Kāśyapa, “Why does the venerable Mahā-Kāśyapa, who formerly belonged to another sect, think it fit thrice to speak as to a youngster to the venerable Ananda, the sage of Videha, 4 the Exalted One’s servitor, the Exalted One’s attendant, the recipient of the right rules 5 direct from the Exalted One’s mouth?” Then the venerable Mahā-Kāśyapa said to the venerable Ananda, “This sister here, O venerable Ananda, spoke out of thoughtlessness and conceit when she asked that question.” 6 The venerable Ananda said to the venerable Mahā-Kāśyapa, “Forgive me, O venerable Mahā-Kāśyapa, for I am foolish, womanish, 7 witless, and lacking in common-sense.” 8 A second and a third time did the venerable Mahā-Kāśyapa say to the venerable Ananda, “This sister here, O venerable Ananda, spoke out of thoughtlessness and conceit when she asked that question.” And a (second and a) third time did the venerable Ananda say to the venerable Mahā-Kāśyapa, “Forgive me, O venerable Mahā-Kāśyapa, for I am foolish, womanish, witless, and lacking in common-sense.”

Then the venerable Mahā-Kāśyapa said to the venerable Ananda, “I am not aware, O venerable Ananda, that, when I first embraced the religious life, I acknowledged any master outside of and other than this Exalted One, Tathāgata, Arhan, and perfect Buddha. When, O venerable Ananda, I first embraced the religious life, I thought to myself, ‘Home life is cramped, full of defilements.’ The life of religion is in the open air. 8 It is not possible while dwelling in the midst of home life to live the completely bright, blameless, pure, the entirely clean Brahma-life. Let me now then leave home and take up the homeless life of religion.’ So then, O venerable Ananda, I left my sumptuous home, renounced my eighty cartloads of gold, my five hundred bondsmen, my five hundred bondswomen, my five hundred head of cattle, my five hundred fields and villages, my nine hundred and ninety-nine ploughs, goodly and shiny ploughshares made at Kapila. 9 And, taking my one patched cotton cloak with me, I

---

1 Literally, “I am to be addressed with childish talk”, kumāravaśāda samudakarcitāya.
2 Na cāham kumārako... ayākā, corresponding to nāyam kumārako... ayākā on the previous page. Senart presumably reads akām here as the equivalent of ayam, though this particular example is not referred to in his remarks in Senart’s case for the alleged akām = ayam are unconvincing.
3 Pali Thūlanandā. See D.P.N. S.2.215. 219 mentions two nuns who followed by a repetition of her whole question.
4 Videha, the second Thullanandā, though both names are given as Fat Tissā in K.S. the second Thullanandā, though both names are given as Fat Tissā in K.S.
5 The second Thullanandā, though both names are given as Fat Tissā in K.S.
6 Senart presumably regards this nun was persistently guilty.
7 See vo1. n.6.
8 Literally, “not knowing one’s field.” Cf. Pali akhetānā. A. 3. 384; 4.418 (applied to a cow).
9 Literally, “pointed out to another apart”, uyunaditum.
10 Mākyam, gen. with pravrajitasa as genitive absolute.
11 Literally, “the abode of defilements”, rajāsāmādāsa, where rajās could equally well be taken in its literal sense of “dust” or “dirt”. For the expression cf. D.1.63, 250; S.2.219; 5.250; D.A.1.180 (where rajās is given its figurative sense).
12 Literally, “is the open air”, abhyavaḥkārām pravrajyā, Pali abhikāsa pabbajjā. See P.E.D. for references. Some, e.g. K.S. 2.145, render rather loosely, “free as air is life out of the world”. BSk. references in B.H.S.D.
13 Reading samahalkihita for samihittaka. See vol. 2. p. 114, n.3. According to B.H.S.D. this latter adj. or part. corresponding to the Pali subst. sallakha is not found in Sk. or Pali, though an AMg. equivalent form, samihīya, is thereby given, but without an example of its usage. In this stereotyped formula an adjective denoting “perfection” or “brightness” seems more in place than one stressing the “austerity” of the brahma-life.
14 Alūkha, see vol. 2. p. 63, n.1.
15 i.e. Kapilavastu. See vol. 1. p. 1. n.6.
16 Pilotika, BSk., elsewhere pilotikā, as in Pali. MIndic. for pilotika, see B.H.S.D.
nowhere in the world. 

"Now at that time, O venerable Ānanda, there was no other arhan anywhere in the world but this Exalted Buddha. And, O venerable Ānanda, when I had thus taken up the life of a wanderer, at the end of a full year's time I beheld the Exalted One in Rājagriha at the Bahuputra shrine. And when I saw him there came to me the unambiguous awareness that I was looking on the perfect Buddha, on the Exalted One, who was all-knowing, all-seeing, and possessed of absolute perfect knowledge.

(51) "Then, O venerable Ānanda, I approached the Exalted One, bowed my head at his feet and stood to one side. And as I thus stood to one side, I said to the Exalted One, 'Lord, thou art my Master; I am thy disciple, O Sugata.' When I had thus spoken, O venerable Ānanda, the Exalted One said to me, 'Even so, O Kāśyapa, I am your Master; you are my disciple. If a man should accept a disciple in complete possession of his mind, and then, though he was not perfectly enlightened, should claim to be so; though not all-knowing, should claim to be so; though not all-seeing, should claim to be so; though he was limited in knowledge and insight, should claim to have absolute knowledge and insight, his head would be split in seven. As for me, O Kāśyapa, I claim to be perfectly enlightened, because I am so; I claim to be all-knowing, because I am so; I claim to be all-seeing, because I am so; I claim to have absolute knowledge and insight, because I have them. Again, O Kāśyapa, I preach the dharma to my disciples out of my special knowledge, not out of ignorance. I preach to my disciples the dharma that is well-grounded, not the dharma that is groundless; who preaches to his disciples the dharma that is reasoned, not the dharma that is unreasoned, I say that you should be given exhortation and instruction. Therefore you must train yourself in this respect, O Kāśyapa. You will say (52) 'Shall I not then abide restrained by the restraint of the disciplinary rules, pasturing in the field of good conduct, discerning the peril of the minutest faults. Shall I not adopt and practise the moral precepts, and, pure in deed of conduct, without unseemliness, abiding in steadfastness, discerning danger, wise as to the way out, and pure in deed of speech, and speech and thought, live a life of complete purity?' "

So you must train yourself, O Kāśyapa. Therefore you must train yourself in this respect, O Kāśyapa. You will say, 'Shall I not then live with the doors of my six senses well-guarded, mindful of care, mindful of kindness, abiding in steadfastness, discerning danger, wise as to the way out,

1 Sapṛṭihārya. For this sense of the word see C.P.D, where its converse appāṭihārya, is given as meaning 'without argument', or better, perhaps, 'without reasoned argument.' Cf. appāṭihāryaka, 'witless', unreliable', at D.I. 193, 230.
2 Aprāṭihārya.
3 Ovāda, Pali; BSk., avavāda.
4 Kāmiṇi āham. The "direct speech " is further marked in some of the clauses by " ti ". Below, also, we have kāti āham.
5 Prātimokṣa, Pali pātimokha, a set of rules governing the external conduct of monks who assembled on the uposatha days to recite them. Later they seem to have done so on the 1st and 15th day only. These rules form the real subject-matter of the Sutta-pitaka in the Vinaya-Pitaka. For a discussion of the various theories as to the etymological meaning of the term pāti-moksha, see J. B. Horner : Bh. d.Disc., i, pp. xxi 1, where it is made plain that the usage shows a derivation either from pāti-mucati 'to bind,' (P.E.D.) or from pāti-muc, 'to fasten or bind on (as armour) '" (E. J. Thomas : History of Buddhist Thought, p. 15, n. 1). Both derivations yield the sense of "obligatory ". B.H.S.D. refers to the etymology in Winternitz, History of Indian Literature, 2, 22.
6 Ācāragocarasampāna, Pali ācāragocara, simply.
7 Anumātraśādavyāsa bhaya-dāti.
8 With the whole of this passage, cf. D. 1. 70; M. 1. 180, 268; Kau. 424-6, 465-4; Mīn. 367; AtL. 400. It does not, however, occur in the account of Kāśyapa's ordination in S.
9 Mākāpāna bSk., Pali mākāpāna.
10 Aśūvani bSk., and Pali.
11 Nīh labāṇa-praja, which should be taken as a compound word, cf. Pali nissaraṇa-paṭihāna ( = n. - dassin.).
and endued with an unsullied heart? When I see an object with my eye I shall not make it an object of thought nor give attention to its details. Inasmuch as when I live unrestrainedly as to the faculty of sight, covetousness, and several other sinful and wrong states overflow the heart, I will undertake to restrain myself from these and take care against them, and display restraint with regard to the faculty of sight. Thus must you train yourself, O Kāśyapa. You will say, ‘When I hear sounds with my ears, smell scents with my nose, taste flavour with my tongue, touch tangible things with my body, and cognise mental objects or occupying myself with their details. Inasmuch as when I abide unrestrainedly as to the faculty of mind, covetousness, discontent and several other sinful and wrong states overflow the heart, I will undertake to restrain myself from these and guard the faculty of mind and abide restrainedly as to the faculty of mind.’ Thus, O Kāśyapa, you must train yourself. Therefore, O Kāśyapa, you must train yourself in this respect: you will say, ‘Have I not then the comfort that the body which I shall give up is not one that is permanent? Thus, must you train yourself, O Kāśyapa. You will say, ‘Shall I not then abide with a discernment of the uprising and of the cessation of the five skandhas on which existence thrives? I shall discern that this is material form, this is the uprising of material form, this is the cessation of material form; this is feeling, this is the uprising of feeling, this is the cessation of feeling; this is perception, this is the uprising of perception, this is the cessation of perception; these are the saṃskāras, this is the uprising of the saṃskāras, this is the cessation of the saṃskāras; this is consciousness, this is the uprising of consciousness, this is the cessation of consciousness.’ Thus, O Kāśyapa, you must train yourself.’

‘So, O venerable Ānanda, when I had been given this exhortation by the Exalted One, for eight days I was a probationer student, and on the ninth day I attained perfect knowledge.

And when, O venerable Ānanda, he had given me this
exhortation, the Exalted One rose up from his seat and walked away. And I, O venerable Ananda, followed close on the heels of the Exalted One. And as I did so, this thought occurred to me: ‘Behold, the Exalted One will turn aside from the roadway and lean against the trunk of some tree. I shall spread out my patched cotton under-robe for the Exalted One.’ And, O venerable Ananda, the Exalted One, aware that I had such a thought, stepped aside from the roadway and stood leaning against the trunk of a tree. I then spread out\(^3\) my patched cotton under-robe for the Exalted One, and he sat down on the seat thus prepared for him. When he had sat down, O venerable Ananda, the Exalted One spoke and said, ‘Friendly (54) indeed,\(^4\) O Kāśyapa, is this patched cotton under-robe; it is soft, of good texture,\(^5\) exquisite,\(^6\) delicate, light, well-made, fine, splendid and comfortable.’ And I, O venerable Ananda, said to the Exalted One, ‘Well-won gain would it be for me, Lord, if the Exalted One were to accept this patched cotton under-robe of mine.’

Then the Exalted One said to me, ‘Do you wish, O Kāśyapa, in return\(^7\) to wear in the presence of the Tathāgata this under-robe of mine that is made of hempen rags\(^8\)?’ And I, O venerable Ananda, replied to the Exalted One, ‘Well-won gain would it be for me, Lord, if the Exalted One were to give me his under-robe that is made of hempen rags.’ The Exalted One, O venerable Ananda, gave me his under-robe made of hempen rags and I accepted it from him.

Now if, O venerable Ananda, men of right speech were to say that a disciple received from his Master, the Exalted One, an under-robe of hempen rags, those men of right speech would be saying what is a fact. And why? I, O venerable Ananda, am a disciple who received an under-robe of hempen rags from the Master. And when, O venerable Ananda, men of right speech should say that the Exalted One has a genuine\(^1\) son, (55) born of the dharma, created by the dharma, an heir as to the dharma, not an heir as to the flesh,\(^2\) these men of right speech would be saying what is a fact. And why? I, O venerable Ananda, am a genuine son of the Exalted One, born of the dharma, created by the dharma, an heir as to the dharma, not an heir as to the flesh.

‘He who could imagine that my three knowledges,\(^3\) my six superb knowledges\(^4\) and my mastery of the powers\(^5\) could be hidden away, could just as well imagine that a sixty years old elephant could be hidden by a palm-leaf.\(^6\) He who could imagine that my three knowledges, my six superb knowledges and my mastery of the powers could just as well imagine that the flow of the Ganges river could be checked by a handful of dust. He who could imagine that my three knowledges, my six superb knowledges and my mastery of the powers could be hidden away, could just as well imagine that the wind could be imprisoned in a net. He who could imagine that my three knowledges, my six superb knowledges and my mastery of the powers could be hidden away, could just as well imagine that the five-finger mark\(^7\) could be imprinted on the air.

---

\(^1\) Orasa mukhata jāta. Orasa = Sk. aurasa, “belonging to one’s own breast”. Cf. S. 2. 221.
\(^3\) Tāru vihīyā. Most likely the three knowledges referred to here are the three viśyās often mentioned together in Pali texts (e.g. M. 1. 22), namely, upbe-mūrthi-anussatiśa, cul-āpaṭallīśa, and āvānām-khaṇā-liṇā, that is, “knowledge of the memory of former lives, of passing away and coming to be, and of the decay of the āsavas.” These represented the last three stages in the achievement of the third and final samāpātā, prājñā-(paññā-) samāpātā. See also D. 3. 220, 275; A. 2. 165; Pāñj. 202. They are set antithetically to the brahmanic three knowledges, i.e., the three Vedas, at D. 1. 100, and A. 1. 165. See P.E.D. for further references. Cf. vol. I. p. 201, n. 1.
\(^4\) Abhiśālā. These are usually enumerated as five in the Mhū. See vol. I, p. 84, n. 3.
\(^5\) See vol. I, p. 43, n. 2.
\(^6\) Reading tālaṭṭāpatiśāye for balāśaktiśāye of the text, to correspond with Pali tālaṭṭāpatiśāye of the parallel passages at S. 2. 217 and 222. The text reading forces Senart to give chādāsīyam a sense other than its usual one, from chād, “to cover”, and to see in it “une orthographe prékriticante” of the Pali chādāti, “to vomit”, here “to throw”. But a much better sense is got here by retaining the primitive sense of chād and emending balāśaktiśāye as above.
\(^7\) See vol. I, p. 223, n. 5.
THE MAHAVASTU

"And now, O venerable Ananda, whosoever of these five hundred monks harbours doubt or mistrust of me, let him ask a question, and I, in answering the question, shall roar a veritable lion's roar."

Then those five hundred monks said to the venerable Mahâ-Kâśyapa, "Whosoever, O venerable Mahâ-Kâśyapa, harbours doubt or mistrust, let him ask a question. And we shall honour you, and henceforth our obedience will be greater and better than before." The venerable Mahâ-Kâśyapa then instructed, roused, gladdened and thrilled the monks with a discourse on dharma. He then rose from his seat and departed.

The venerable Mahâ-Kâśyapa had not been long gone when he kept his look turned all the time on the nun Sthûlanandâ, turning his whole body round to do so as an elephant does," hoping that he could reconcile her heart. Though in doing so he turned right round,2 (56) the nun Sthûlanandâ remained unreconciled. The depraved nun Sthûlanandâ uncovered herself before the venerable Mahâ-Kâśyapa, and immediately she died. And as she had hardened her heart against the venerable Mahâ-Kâśyapa, she was reborn in one of the great hells. Such is the tradition.

Here ends the sūtra of the ordination of Mahâ-Kâśyapa.

THE CONVERSION OF SÅRIPUTRA AND MAUDGALYÂYANA

Half a yojana from Râjâgriha there was a village named Nalanda-grâmâ, which was flourishing, rich and prosperous. In it there dwelt a brâhman, who was the owner of great halls and was opulent, rich and wealthy, possessing an abundance of varied property, money, treasuries, granaries, gold, silver, means of luxury, elephants, horses, bulls, cows and goats, female and male slaves, and servants. This brâhman had a brâhman wife, named Sârî,1 who was gracious and beautiful. The brâhmanî Sârî had seven sons, named Dharma, [Sudharma],2 Upadharma, Śatadhâma, Sahasradharma, Tiśya, and Upatiśya.3 Six of them were established. The seventh and youngest, Upatiśya, was as yet unestablished and was a student of the Vedic mantras at the house of a guru.

Half a yojana from Râjâgriha was a village named Kolita-grâmâ, which was flourishing, rich and prosperous. In it there dwelt a brâhman, who was the owner of great halls and was opulent, rich and wealthy, possessing an abundance of money, treasuries and granaries, gold, silver, means of luxury, elephants, horses, bulls, cows and goats, female and male slaves, and servants. He was of the clan of Maudgalyâyana. He had a son named Kolita,4 who was gracious, comely, clever, skilful and intelligent. He, too, was studying the Vedic mantras at the house of the guru where Upatiśya and some five hundred other brâhman youths were studying.

(57) Kolita and Upatiśya were ahead of all the others in mastering the Vedic mantras. They gave attention and obedience to their teacher, paid him his fees, and provided him with a sunshade, shoes, a staff, a water-pot5 and a hempen cloak. These two were friends, being fond of and devoted to each other. Upatiśya used to go from Nalanda to Kolitagrâmâ to visit Kolita, and Kolita would go from Kolita to Nalanda-grâmâ to visit Upatiśya.

Now at Râjâgriha there was annually held a festival called

---

1 In Dh. A. 2. 84, 188, we are told that Vanga was Sâriputra's father and Râpâsirî his mother.
2 Omitted from text. Senart supplies this name from Beal: Romantic Legend, p. 324.
3 Dh. A. 2. 188, gives Sâriputra three younger brothers, Cunda, Upasena, and Revata (afterwards called Khadîravanîya), and three sisters, Câla, Upacâla and Siśupacâla. See D.P.N.
4 Aniśīfaka. Sc. in brāhmanism.
5 I.e., after the village.
6 Kāmâdâlîkham, Bsk. (?) Pali and Sk. kamâdulâ.
7 Samasamam. Cf. Dh. A. 1. 89, where the festival is described as being hâlam, see D.P.N.
the Mountain-top Assembly, at which there were five hundred religious observances. For these five hundred religious observances there were five hundred parks, and all the five hundred parks were crowded with several thousands of people. There were hundreds of shows, hundreds of choruses, several hundreds of dancers, actors, athletes, wrestlers and minstrels, gimbars, valahyakas, and drummers.

Then the two rich brâhman's sons, Upâtiyâ and Kolita, in chariots drawn by four horses yoked together by the neck, and attended by thousands of servants went to see the Mountain-top Assembly. The two were men who had merit and the root of goodness; who had excellent safeguard in the service they had rendered to former perfect Buddhhas, to

---

1 Giriypagaramâja, Pall Giraggasamajja. At As, 2. 24, the Sanskrit form of the name is Giriauggusamâjana. For references to this festival see Dial. 1. 7; VT. 3. 71; I. B. Horner: Bk of Disc. 2. 333; D.P.N., and P.E.D. The Mâhu, is alone in defining the festival as consisting "of five hundred religious observances (pañcâkās tapolâlânâm). There does not seem to be much doubt about the reading, but the exact sense of this definition is obscure. Senart leaves it unexplained. The same phrase occurs in the next sentence in the instrumental case, pañcâkac tapolâlakâ, which can only be interpreted as an instrumental (for locative) absolute "during these 500 religious observances." Such an adverbial expression of time however, does not fit in well in a substantive sentence like "there were parks", so that this second occurrence of the phrase does not help at all in clearing up the obscurity. At the same time, it must be borne in mind that, however much the festival had been secularised at the time of our texts, and become practically a pleasure fair, there can be no doubt that its original nature was religious. While the orthodox Buddhist monks were prohibited from attending it (V. 2. 107, A. 267), recalcitrants like the Chabbaggiyas and the Sattarasavaggiyas were clearly active participants (D.P.N.). This, too, may explain why on p. 58 (text) Sâriputra dubs the participants munâri (see note there.) Edgerton (B.H.S.D. s.v. Tapoda) makes the very interesting suggestion that for tapo- we should read tapoda-, and understand the allusion to be to the hot-water lake called Tapoda (Pali Tapodâ) just outside Râjagriha below the Veabhâra mountain (B.H.S.D.). This would make pañcâkâ tapolâlakâ give what is perhaps a reasonable sense, "At these five hundred warm springs there were five hundred parks." But the genitive expression pañcâkâm tapolâlânâm remains as difficult of explanation as the original one in Senart's text. The only translation possible, "The festival called Mountain-top Gathering, of five hundred warm springs," (so Edgerton) is far from intelligible. Besides we nowhere hear of five hundred springs here, but only of one lake.

2 Some kind of entertainer (B.H.S.D.), and so, presumably is valahyaka, but this latter word, which seems to occur only here, is not given in any dictionary. Possibly the compound gimbars valahyakâ should be analysed differently.

3 Reading varaphârthakâra for parttagrâhâ. As Senart says, paritta is the equivalent of Pali pariîta (pari-trâ) "protection", "safeguard", "protective charm", etc. For the sentiment cf. J. 1. 396, paccakebuddhâhe pariîtaṃ harâpeti, "makes them find a safeguard through the Paccakebudhhas". See also B.H.S.D.

---

59 Pratyekabuddhas and to great disciples; who had scattered the seed of true service; who had broken the bonds that tied them to rebirth, and who, through their attainment of Aryan states, were for that cause and reason living in their last existence. While the two were looking on at the Mountain-top Assembly, the basic condition of things was revealed to them in virtue of their long-standing root of goodness. For when Sâriputra saw that great crowd of people there arose in him the awareness of the impermanence of things. "In a hundred years," thought he, "all this crowd will have ceased to exist because of their impermanence." In Maudgalyâana, too, when he saw that crowd laughing uproariously and throwing about their wreaths of ivory, (58) there arose the idea of the skeleton. 2

Then Maudgalyâana, seeing Sâriputra's downcast countenance said,

Entrancing strains of lyre and notes of song issue from the crystalline bathing pool. 4 Enchanting and sweet sounds are heard. So be in love with life; why be downcast of countenance?

This is a time for gladness, not for sorrow. It is a time for delight; so do not breed discontent. 5 Hark to the chorus that is like a chorus of the Apsaras, and be glad with this rejoicing throng of men.

But the young Sâriputra replied to the young Maudgalyâana, 1

1 See vol. I. p. 40, n. 3. In the Mâhu, the indirect object here is expressed by the locative.

2 Utpâsãyãñihikâ, uippa being from up, "to sow".

3 Asotisamkhâ, cf. Pali ñihikasahâ, Thag. 18, and ñihikasaññâ, S. 5. 129; A. 2. 17; Dks. 264 See B.H.S.D. for Bsk. references, which, however, do not include the present one.

4 Tripûkarañjihikasorâyamãna. Sphoṭika is difficult. It has been assumed here that it is for śphatika, "made of crystal", with reference either to the material of certain parts of the pool, e.g., the stairs, or to the the "crystal-clear" water. Edgerton (B.H.S.D.), however, s.v. tripûkarañ, gives the whole compound a different interpretation. He takes tripûkara in its meaning of drum (with triple drum-skin, cf. 2. 201, text), but leaves śphatika unexplained, only querying whether it means "rattle" or is the name of some instrument. The compound, however, is clearly an adjective qualifying tapastavañjayâh, "strains of lute and sounds of song" and it is hardly proper to speak of these as emanating from or being emitted by any kind of drum.

5 The text araññim jatâhãyã requires the insertion of a negative, or the omission of the negative prefix a in araññim.
These are the ways of passion and wantonness. In life and its affairs what satisfaction is there either for the foolish or the wise? Ever long these poor devotees who indulge in sensual pleasures will have to leave their bodies unsatisfied, and die. And their end will be ashes.

So it is, Maudgalyāyana, that the awareness of these things delights me not, and I have no joy therein. It is profound reflection exercised in my mind that gives me joy. It is time to live by dharma. For men and kinnaras, suras and asuras, will, though they live, if they have coveted the joys of the senses, go to destruction unsatisfied.

The devas envy him who joyfully resort to physical seclusion in the forest even at the time of his life when he could indulge in sensual excess. For the hard life he has taken up is that which is lived by the gods.

The man who is equable in joys and sorrows, in prosperity and adversity, the man whom soothsayers speak well of, such a man would I, the son of Śārī, become.

Then the young Sāriputra said to the young Maudgalyāyana, "The religious life appeals to me, and I shall embrace it." Maudgalyāyana replied, "What you desire that do I, too, desire. I also shall take to the religious life," and he added, "The way desired by you seems good to me also. It would be better to die with you than to live without you."

Now at that time in the city of Rājagriha, in the Wanderers' Retreat, there dwelt a Wanderer named Sañjāyin, with a company of fifty Wanderers. So the young Sāriputra and Maudgalyāyana went to the Wanderers' Retreat and embraced the religious life in the company of the Wanderer Sañjāyin Vairāṭiputra. Sāriputra mastered all the rules of the Wanderers after being a Wanderer for a week, and Maudgalyāyana did so in a fortnight. But then they said, "This is not the dharma of the way out which, for him who practises it, conduces to the cessation of ill. So let us go separate ways and let us seek the well-preached discipline of the dharma that conduces to the cessation of ill. That one of us who first (hears) the well-preached discipline of the dharma is to preach it to the other. Then we shall together take up the religious life in the discipline of the Āryan dharma." Then, having recited the rules of the Wanderers, they entered Rājagriha, Sāriputra by one road and Maudgalyāyana by another.

Now at that time the Exalted One having stayed as long as he wanted to in the park Yaśśīvāna, which was on the Antārāgiri hill, went to the Bamboo Grove and stayed there in the Squirrels' Feeding-place with a great company of thirteen and a half hundred monks. Then the venerable Upasena dressed himself betimes, and taking his bowl and robe went on his alms-round in the city of Rājagriha. And Sāriputra from a distance saw the venerable Upasena coming, courteous in his manner of approaching and taking his leave, of looking forward and around, of extending and withdrawing his hand, and of carrying his cloak, bowl and robe. He was like a...
Nāga. He had accomplished his task. His faculties were turned inwards; his mind was not turned outwards. He was unwavering as one who had achieved harmony with the dharma. He did not look before him farther than a plough's length. And Śāriputra, "seeing him", kept his mind exceeding calm. "Lovely," said he, "is the deportment of this religious man. What if I were now to approach him?"

Then the Wanderer Śāriputra went up to the venerable Upasena, and having exchanged cordial and courteous greetings with him stood to one side. And as the Wanderer Śāriputra thus stood to one side, he said to the venerable Upasena, "Sir, are you a Master or a disciple?" The venerable Upasena replied to the Wanderer Śāriputra, "Venerable sir, I am a disciple." The venerable Wanderer Śāriputra asked the venerable Upasena, "What, sir, is your master's doctrine? What does he preach? How does he generally employ among his disciples? What kind of exhortation and instruction does he generally employ among his disciples?" The venerable Upasena replied to the Wanderer Śāriputra, "I have but little learning, venerable sir. I can only formulate the general sense of his teaching." 1 But the Wanderer Śāriputra said to the venerable Upasena,

I am concerned with the sense, what matters the letter? For he who teaches the sense knows the sense, and seeks to do good thereby.

(61) We, too, for many a day have borne such a profitless burden of words and text, and ere this have been many a time deceived. 2

The venerable Upasena said to the Wanderer Śāriputra, "The Master enjoins renunciation by illustrating the arising of things from a cause." And thereupon as he stood on that spot of earth, the Wanderer Śāriputra attained the faultless, flawless, pure dharma-insight into things.

Then Śāriputra, the Wanderer, having attained the dharma, given up false belief, overcome doubt, rid himself of perplexity, upright, gentle and supple of heart, prone and inclined to nirvana, 1 asked the venerable Upasena, "Where is the Master staying?" The venerable Upasena answered the Wanderer Śāriputra and said, "The Master is in the Squirrels' Feeding-place in the Bamboo Grove." And when he had thus spoken the venerable Upasena went on his alms-round in the city of Rājagriha.

The Wanderer Śāriputra went to the Wanderer Maudgalyāyana. And Maudgalyāyana saw Śāriputra when he was still some way off, with a countenance like the lotus and his senses serene. And seeing him thus he said to the Wanderer Śāriputra, "Friend Śāriputra, your countenance is pure and clear, and your senses serene. Have you, O venerable Śāriputra, found the immortal and the Way that leads to the immortal? Your countenance is that of a religious man, clear like the blossoming lotus. Serene and calm are your senses. Where did you obtain the immortal whereby there has been shed over you this two-fold shining and bright blaze of radiance?"

(62) When this had been said, the Wanderer Śāriputra said to Maudgalyāyana, "Yes, O venerable Maudgalyāyana, I have found the immortal and the Way that leads to the immortal.

A Light of the World is arisen, one of the glorious Buddhas of whom we are taught that they appear as rarely as the flower of the glomerous fig-tree. 3

The Wanderer Maudgalyāyana asked the Wanderer Śāriputra, "O venerable Śāriputra, what does the Master teach and what does he preach?" The Wanderer Śāriputra answered and said,

The Tathāgata has proclaimed the cause and also the cessation of all the things that proceed from a cause. This is the Great Recluse's doctrine. 4

Thereupon the Wanderer Maudgalyāyana, as he stood on

---

1 Nirvāṇa-pravāha nirvāṇa-prābhābhāra.
2 Reading pravājaśīya, "of one who has gone forth", for the prājaśīya of the text, a reading which naturally forces Senart to wonder what the point is of mentioning that Śāriputra was "clothed". The emendation cannot, however, be regarded as certain. A MS. variant is prāṭhaśīya.
3 The construction here is difficult: Yo so . . . buddha utpadyanti . . . utpanno lokapaddhato, where singular and plural are in apposition. For this comparison of the rarity of Buddhas to the rarity of the blossoming of this fig-tree, see vol. 1, p. 190, n. 1.
4 Identical with couplet at V. 1. 40.
that spot of earth, attained the faultless, flawless, pure dharma-insight into things. Having attained the dharma, he gave up false beliefs, overcame doubt, became exultant in mind and heart, gentle and supple of heart, immersed in thoughts of nirvana, prone and inclined to nirvana.

Then the Wanderer Maudgalyāyana asked the Wanderer Śāriputra, "Where, O venerable Śāriputra, is the Master staying?" Śāriputra replied, "Venerable friend, the Master is staying in the Squirrels' Feeding-place in the Bamboo Grove, with a large company of thirteen and a half hundred monks. Let us go and tell our master Saññayin that we are going to live the religious life under the Exalted One in the Bamboo Grove." Then the Wanderer Maudgalyāyana (68) said to the Wanderer Śāriputra, "Do you go, venerable Śāriputra, to the Bamboo Grove. What have we to do with Saññayin and his corrupt belief?" But Śāriputra said, "Not so, O venerable Maudgalyāyana, Saññayin has done us a great service since it is through him that we gave up the life of householders."

So they went to the Wanderers' Retreat and said to Saññayin, "We are going to live the religious life under the exalted Great Recluse." The Wanderer Saññayin replied to the Wanderers Śāriputra and Maudgalyāyana, saying, "Do not, my friends, go and live the religious life under Gotama. Here I have five hundred monks, so do you share with me the superintendence of them." They replied, "No, for we are going to live the religious life under the exalted Great Recluse. The discipline of the dharma has been well preached by the Exalted One, revealed and stripped of its swathings."

---

1 Literally, "what is there to us (of us = mām gen. pl.) in the sight of (or in seeing) Saññayin," kīm mām Saññayinā dhīsena.
2 Yam āgama, Pali āgama. See Vol. i, p. 198, n. 2.
3 Literally, "be half the superintendents of," ardhaparihitā. Parihitā is the substantive corresponding to parihipati in the Pali and BSik. sense of "to take care of," etc. Cf. V. i, 42, sabbevatayo imām gāṇam parihipatissāma. See B.H.S.D. for BSik. references.
4 The text has virodiyadaya, that is, virodi-udaya, where udaya is inexplicable and probably a mistake, unless we are to understand that the dharma is said to be "arising revealed". The corresponding stock passage in Pali, however, has viṇīta only.
5 Reading chinna-piilotihā for chinna-piilotikā of the text. Cf. chinna-piilotikā dhammo, M. i. 141 and S. 2. 28. The translation of the expression is that given by Mrs. Rhys Davids at the latter place (= KS. 2. 24). For pilotika see p. 49 n. 10.

---

ŚĀRIPUTRA AND MAUDGALYĀYANA 65

We have had enough of disbelief in the Beneficent One."1 When they had thus informed Saññayin, they left the Wanderers' Retreat and made for the Bamboo Grove. And the five hundred Wanderers went along with the Wanderers Śāriputra and Maudgalyāyana. Saññayin said to Śāriputra, "Upatiśya leaves me, and takes with him not one only of these, nor two, nor three nor even four, but the whole five hundred."

At the Bamboo Grove the Exalted One gave instructions to his monks, saying, "Make seats ready. Here are the Wanderers Śāriputra and Maudgalyāyana coming, with a company of five hundred Wanderers, to live the religious life under the Tathāgata. They will be my chief pair of disciples, a goodly pair, the one eminent for his wisdom and the other for his magic power."

The Wanderer Śāriputra, when he was still some way off, saw the Exalted One (64) in the Bamboo Grove moving about, honoured and attended by a great crowd, teaching the dharma which is lovely at the beginning, in the middle, and at the end, good in sense and expression, absolutely perfect, pure, clean, holy and illuminating. He was endowed with the thirty-two marks of excellence and his person was radiant with the eighty minor characteristics. He was endowed with the eighteen special attributes of a Buddha, strong with the ten powers of a Tathāgata, and assured on the four grounds of assurance. His faculties and mind were controlled, and he had attained the perfection of supreme self-control and calm. He was like a Nāga. He had accomplished his task. His faculties were turned inwards; his mind was not turned outwards, being well-established, in conformity with the dharma, and upright. He looked before him no farther than a plough's length. He was like a Nāga with his faculties guarded and subdued. He was like a pool

---

1 Alamarthikasa aprasādane. Arthika is an epithet of the Buddha at Vol. 2 p. 284 text (see Vol. 2, p. 267, trans.) Edgerton (B.H.S.D.), after pointing out that this usage seems to be unknown in Pali, says that the word perhaps means "in possession of," "having attained his aim." But it may equally well mean "one who brings what is good or profitable," hence "beneficent."
2 I.e., Śāriputra, see p. 57.
3 Aveniikā buddhaharmā. See Vol. i, p. 33, n. 4.
of water, clear, pure and serene. He stood like a bejewelled sacrificial post; like the shining golden bimba; like a flame of fire, ablaze with glory; like another rising sun, unclouded and invincible. Released by insight, he was surrounded by those who were released; self-controlled, he was surrounded by those who were self-controlled; having crossed, he was surrounded by those who had crossed; having reached the shore beyond, he was surrounded by those who had reached the shore beyond; having gained firm ground, he was surrounded by those who had gained firm ground; having won peace, he was surrounded by those who had won peace; a recluse, he was surrounded by recluses; being beyond evil, he was surrounded by those who were beyond evil; a brahman, he was surrounded by brahmans; a learned man, he was surrounded by learned men; having bathed, he was surrounded by those who had bathed; being beyond the states of sin, he was surrounded by those who were beyond the states of sin.

Then the Wanderers Śāriputra and Maudgalyāyana, accompanied by the five hundred, approached the Exalted One, and having bowed their heads at his feet stood to one side. And as he thus stood to one side the Wanderer Śāriputra said to the Exalted One,

_These have dwelt in the water of the ocean, in mountain cave, in glade and wood. A long time have they surely dwelt among false sectarians, through lack of sight of thee, O Sage._

_But now have they turned from the wrong ways and have crossed over in faith to thy way, O great Caravan-leader. They have traversed the thicket of rebirth, and now, strong and wise and passionless, they are no longer moved by lust._

The Wanderers Śāriputra and Maudgalyāyana said to the Exalted One, "Let the Exalted One admit us as recluses." (65)

---

1 Literally "addressed them with the (formula of) "come, monks," ēkāhikhīyāye dhātā." 2 p. 234 (p. 221, n. 4 of trans., where the rendering "safeguard" is perhaps too vague). Gupta is the better reading. "Sign" is also offered as a better (though still very doubtful) rendering of ālāpa, instead of "usage" as in Vol. 2. 3. In this stereotyped passage sambhaka appears as an adjective qualifying pātana, and once (Vol. 3, p. 450) even as a substantive synonym with it. Though its etymology and exact meaning are unknown, the persistence with which it occurs in this formula shows that it cannot be regarded as a mistake for bimbaha, as was done in vol. 2 of this translation. Yet it is strange that it is not found outside the Mānu. See Edgerton's discussion in B.H.S.D. 4. Literally, "What making itself known is made known?" Kim ... prajñāpāram (so reading for-fa) prajñāpāti? The causal verb prajñāpāti (Pali pānāhāpeti) and its participle are here used in a neuter or middle sense. The "being manifested," of course, is only another aspect of "being known." Cf. the definition of pānāhāti at Cpd. 4, where it is said that it is "either (1) that which makes known (panāhāpeti) or (2) that which is made known." "Being manifested" further implies "being designated." See, e.g., S. 3, 102, where the four great elements are said to be the cause of the designation of the body-group in just the same way as they are in this passage said to be the cause of the "being manifested." (Ko no kho bhante hetu rūpakkhandhassa pānāhāpettya ... cañcāro kho bhākkhu mahābhūtā hetu cañcāro mahābhūtā paccayo rūpakkhandhassa pānāhāpettya.) Senart, however, prefers to see in pānāhāpetti here a figurative use of its application in the phrase āsanam pānāhāpeti, "to set out a seat," and he translates, "qu'est ce qui a de l'étendue?" But the Buddhists expressed the idea of extension by a totally different word, prītikīvā, prīthavi, see, e.g., Ct. p. 155. See B.H.S.D. for BSk references. 5 Literally, "what standing, stands?" kiṁ tiṣṇhamānaṁ tiṣṭhāti.
that which is broken up? When we say a thing is reconstituted, what is it that is reconstituted? "1

The Exalted One replied to the venerable Sariputra, "It is the four elements,2 Sariputra. When we say that things are manifested, we mean that the four elements are manifested.3 When we say that things endure,4 we mean that the four elements endure. When we say that things are broken up, we mean that the four elements are broken up. When we say that things are reconstituted, we mean that the four elements are reconstituted."5

Next the venerable Sariputra asked the Exalted One, "Lord, from what cause6 is a thing born?7 From what cause does a thing endure? From what cause is it broken up? From what cause is it reconstituted?" The Exalted One replied to the venerable Sariputra, "From what cause, Sariputra, is a thing born? It is because of ignorance, craving and karma; that is why, Sariputra, a thing is born. Why does it endure? It endures because of the karma of life and of the sustenance it gets.8 Why, Sariputra, is it broken up? It is broken up because of the decay of life, of karma and

---

1. Paññikkhe, causal in neutral or middle sense. Also prajñikkhe, Pali paññikkhe, "connects (with a new body)" B.H.S.D.
2. Cattāro dhatavas. Here dhatavas corresponds to the mahādhatuvā of the passage cited in n. p. 67. The latter seems to be the Pali term mostly used in this connection, but at M.1. 185 we have an interchange of the two expressions in the same passage. Cf. Dhs. trsl. p. 108, n.
3. The text is more concise here, cattāro Sariputta dhatavas prajñapanta prajñapanti, "the four elements, Sariputra, are made manifest when they are manifested." And so for the other replies.
4. Or "are" standing for "tějhamādevi. With apparently this sole exception Senart emends all the MSS. forms having nom.-acc. in -año into -año, a better authenticated BSk. inflexion, until he comes to p. 149 of this volume, when he expresses regret at having done so. For the form see Edgerton, Gram. §9. 93.
5. This exposition is referred to as the Dhātuhāmāṣṭikāna at DA. 1. 96.
7. Jayati. This question is omitted in the text, obviously by an oversight, for Senart comments on it in his notes, using this form of the verb. In the repetition, he prints jāyatī "is born", "is produced". It is to be noted that, if Senart's text is correct, a departure has been made from the run of the argument. The first of the questions at issue was as to the nature or cause of "manifestation" or "being known." There is much to be said, therefore, for reading jāyatī "is known" instead of jāyatī, and rendering "from what cause is a thing known," i.e. "manifested," with the implication that the "production" of a thing is synonymous with the "manifestation" of it.
8. Ayukarma.
9. Āhāra-pratyaṅga. Cl. S. 3. 59, āhārasamudayā āhāram prasamudayo "from the arising of food, is the arising of body."
satisfaction and gratify the faculties, being causally begotten, developed, perfected and experienced, and causally arisen, are not the self nor belonging to the self; they are void of self and of anything belonging to the self. And thus, somewhere or other, there arises karma, the maturing of karma, cause, and the states that are produced from a cause.”

Thus spoke the Exalted One. And while this exposition was being given, (67) the hearts of Sāriputra, Maudgalyāyana and the hundreds of monks with them were completely rid of the āsrama. Seven days after being ordained the venerable Mahā-Maudgalyāyana attained power and control over magic and realised the four branches of logical analysis,1 while a fortnight after he had been a monk and ordained the venerable Sāriputra attained control over the superknowledges2 and realised the four branches of logical analysis. And the venerable Mahā-Maudgalyāyana had not been a monk and ordained for long before he realised the three knowledges: the deva eye,3 recollection of former lives, and the decay of the āsrama. Such is the tradition.

Here is to be supplied6 the Sūtra6 of the Wanderer Dirghanakha.

THE FIVE HUNDRED MERCHANTS

The monks said to the Exalted One, “Behold, Lord, how the venerable Sāriputra and Maudgalyāyana and the five hundred monks with them were led by the Exalted One away from the pitiless heretical ways of the Wanderer Sārujyain, and saved from the ocean, the jungle, the wilderness of the round, without beginning or end, of birth, death and old age.” The Exalted One replied, “Monks,” said he, “this is not the first time that I did so.2 On another occasion they were saved by me from the terrible island of the Sirens3 at a time when they had fallen into their hands. I led them safely across the great ocean and set them down in Jambudvīpa.” The monks asked, “Was there another occasion, Lord?” The Exalted One replied, “Yes, monks.”

Once upon a time, monks, long ago, five hundred merchants left Jambudvīpa and set sail on the great sea in an ocean-going vessel to seek for wealth. When their vessel reached mid-ocean (68) it was wrecked by a monstrous fish. And when their vessel was broken up they prayed to various devas, each one to the deva he believed in. Some called on Śiva, others on Vaiśravāṇa, others on Skanda, others on Varuna, others on Yama, others on Kuvera, others on Śakra, others on Brahmā and others on Diśā,4 all crying, “May we escape alive from this great ocean.”

Now when their vessel broke up they leapt into the sea, taking with them floats of various kinds, some taking jars, others planks and others rafts made of the bottle-gourd. Others clung to the body of a comrade who had been drowned. For the sea does not harbour a dead body for long, but soon throws it up on the mainland or on an island, and they would thus reach that mainland or that island along with the corpse.

The merchants who thus floated on the sea were thrown by the wind on to the island of the Sirens. And on that island of the Sirens they saw thousands of trees of various kinds.

1 Anavavāga, Pali anamattagga. See P.E.D., C.P.D. and B.H.S.D.
2 The text repeats the whole statement.
3 Rākṣastā, i.e. female Rākṣasan, see Vol. 1, p. 73, n. 5. The “Siren” of Greek mythology is not an exact counterpart, but the use of the term here is perhaps justified by the mise en scène, and at the same time obviates the constant repetition of a Sanskrit word in italics.
4 Wife of Rudra. The other gods invoked are invoked by sailors in a like predicament at Vol. 1, p. 200.
5 Literally “a row (or series) of bottle-gourds”, alabuṣṭreṇi. Alabu (variously spelt alambu, alambu, alambu, in the MSS.) is the Lagenaria Siceraria. Sveci has here the acc. sg. form šrenyam (MS. šrenyam). For other examples of this form see Edgerton Gram. 10. 65. The text has the sg. for each of the three terms.
6 Literally “does not live with,” sādham svamvasat. For the idea, see V. 2. 237.
In whatever part of the island they were brought ashore by the wind, they saw hundreds of women strolling about, who were lovely and beautiful, dressed in gay attire, decked out with ornaments and wearing earrings of gems and jewels. Some were like young brides, others like women who had recently been delivered, and others like middle-aged women—but really they were so many hundreds of Sirens in human form. They seized every one of the merchants who had escaped from the sea. "Welcome," said they, "noble sons of nobles. You will be husbands to us who are without husbands, lords to us who are without lords and consorts to us who are without consorts. For our own masters fell into misfortune and destruction when their ship was wrecked on the great ocean. Surely the sea was gracious to us when it brought you to this island." They raised up the merchants by their shoulders, rescued them from the sea and set them on dry land. Then (69) they cheered them up, saying, "Noble friends, do not fret nor worry. You have come to a rich island, with an unending supply of precious stones, abounding in food and drink, flowers and fruits, perfumes, garlands and ointments, garments, rugs and cloaks. Here with us, noble friends, amuse, delight and enjoy yourselves, drinking mead and partaking of joys with no thought of trouble." The merchants replied, "Let us be for a while that we may shake off our sorrow."

Then all the five hundred merchants went away from the women, and when they had done so they wept, grieved and lamented, "O mother," cried they, "O father, O son, O brother, O sister, O bright Jambudvipa with its gardens!" When they had thus wept, grieved and lamented, they comforted one another and joined the women, each his own one. They went with the women along a magnificent road of fresh verdant grass, without reeds, thorns or litter, without potsherds or gravel, dustless, even and flat, and came to a forest glade filled with all sorts of flowers and fruits. At all seasons and times of the year there were in that forest glade flowers of divers kinds that were fragrant and sweet-scented. At all seasons and times of the year there were in that forest glade divers leaves for making powders which were of good smell and taste, like the honey of the bee. There were lovely lotus-pools of pleasant water, echoing with the cries of swans and ducks and covered with lotuses of all kinds. When they emerged from this grove they caught sight of the dwellings of the Sirens, which were lofty, imposing and gleaming white like frost. They had glittering turrets with casements and windows and star-shaped and crescent decorations. To their gaze the city of the Sirens was like the abode of Vaiśravāṇa.

Thus the Sirens took the merchants, one each, to their homes that were like mansions of devas. (70) In these dwellings the merchants saw well-appointed couches with woollen rugs of downy fleece, spreads of pure white cloth and red cushions at both ends. The couches were of gold, silver and ivory. They saw delightful nooks in a grove of Āsoka trees which were laden with flowers and fruits, pleasant gymnasia, and various kinds of exquisite food, drink and refreshments.

The merchants were made to sit on fine bejewelled seats, and had their hair and beards trimmed by barbers. Thus they were made ready to exercise in the gymnasia and bathe in the baths. When they had been washed, massaged and anointed they were smeared with the red ointment of the fragrant dark sandal-wood. They were then clothed in sumptuous garments, and decorated with fine garlands and bouquets. Costly and exquisite meals were set before them; solid and soft foods; various kinds of condiments of the
best flavours, whether sugary, salt, sweet, acid, pungent or astringent; various kinds of meat, namely, the flesh of boars, fishes, pheasants, quails, lābahakas, francolin partridges, and antelopes. The Sirens entertained the merchants with various dances, songs, and musical instruments. Some played on tabours and drums, on sindhavas, cymbals, flutes, while others sang sweetly.

When the Sirens saw that they had cheered up the merchants, they showed them their large stores of precious stones. They prepared for the gentlemen a choice, excellent and comfortable couch. Enjoy yourselves here, noble friends, in this island of precious stones; while others sang sweetly.

But, monks, he who was the leader of the five hundred merchants was clever and shrewd. And he asked himself, "I wonder why these women forbid us to go along the way to the south of the city. What now if I were to find out what is to the south of the city or how things are there?"

Then when the leader found the women were asleep or too drunk to be watchful, he took a sword, left the city and went along the road to the south. And on his way he came within sight of a habitation of a frightful aspect in a clear space, and heard the sound of the wailing of many men. Following the direction of this sound he saw a stronghold of iron encircled by walls of copper. Looking for the gate of this stronghold he went round it, keeping it to his right. He failed to find the gate, but he could still hear the sound of many men crying out, "O mother, O father, O son, O brother, O sister, O Jambudvipa and its fair gardens."

He went round the stronghold, and on the north side of it he saw a tall acacia tree growing close against the wall. He climbed the acacia tree and within the stronghold he saw hundreds of famished men. Their hair, nails and beards were long, their clothes filthy and ragged, and their skin and flesh shrivelled by the hot winds. They were dark and dirty, their hair was unkempt, and they were suffering the pangs of hunger and thirst. With their nails they were digging the ground for water. When they rose up from the ground they fell back again from weakness.

When they heard a noise among the branches and leaves of the acacia tree they all rose up and stretched out their joined hands. "O noble sir," cried they, "Whether you are a deva, a Nāga, a Kinnara, a Gandharva, a Yakṣa or a Kum-bhabhāṇḍa, we turn to you for refuge. Release us wretched ones from our bondage that we may once more (72) live in our land and be reunited with our friends and kinsfolk."

The leader of the merchants, perched in the acacia tree, wept and said to the merchants within, "I am no deva, nor Nāga, Kinnara, Gandharva, nor Śakra nor Brahmin, nor the great king Virūḍhaka. But my friends and I are from Jambudvipa. In pursuit of wealth we went down to the great sea in a ship, but we were wrecked. We hundreds of merchants were rescued by these women. Then they diverted, delighted and amused themselves with us. As long as we do not offend them they will wish us no harm."

The merchants within replied, "We too, sir, left Jambudvipa and went down to the great sea in a ship in pursuit of wealth. But when we were in mid-ocean our ship was wrecked. We five hundred merchants were rescued by..."
these women, who diverted, delighted and amused themselves with us, as they have now been doing with you. When your ship was wrecked and you were thrown by the wind on to the island, you were seen by the Sirens. Of our five hundred merchants two hundred and fifty, and those the younger ones among us, were devoured. And we, the remaining two hundred and fifty, were thrown into this gloomy stronghold. Friend, these women are not human, they are Sirens."

When the leader of the merchants, perched on the acacia tree, heard these words of the merchants imprisoned within the gloomy stronghold, he became frightened, terrified and agitated. Stretching out his joined hands he implored them, saying, "Tell me, what means is there where I may escape in safety from these Sirens?" They answered and said "When the moon is full in the month Karttika, the king of horses named Keśin, who feeds on fragrant grain of rice which grows on untilled and unsown ground and is dustless and huskless, comes hither from the land of Uttarakuru to the island of the Sirens. And when he arrives he cries out three times in a human voice, saying, 'Who is there here who wishes to cross the great ocean? I will take him across in safety.' Turn for refuge (73) to that king of horses. He will take you away from the island of the Sirens across the sea. One of the five hundred merchants should cling to the mane of the king of horses, others to his several limbs, others clinging to these one after the other, and others clinging to his broad back, and he will bring all, whether it be a hundred or a thousand, in due course to Jambudvīpa. This is the means of escaping from the island of the Sirens and of reaching Jambudvīpa in safety. There is no other."

The leader of the merchants said to the imprisoned merchants, "Do you also all come. Let us all go to Jambudvīpa. Leap over the walls of the stronghold, or else dig beneath them." But they answered and said, "You do not know what the stronghold of the Sirens is like. We cannot leap out of it. But do you escape if you want to. Thus there will be deliverance for you. But if you are thrown into this gloomy stronghold, there will be no deliverance. Go in peace to your own land. In a certain city there you will find our fathers' people. Greet them for us and bid them give charity and perform deeds of merit. Bid them live in Jambudvīpa, even if it be by going begging round the houses with a potsherd for an almsbowl, and not cross the sea again where such disasters as these may befall them. Or bid them seek a living by sending others to do the work, and not think of going down to the sea where such disasters as these may befall them."

He replied, "I myself will now go before the Siren, whom I left asleep, wakes up and finds that I have come here."

The leader of the merchants climbed down from the acacia tree, while the merchants within cried out, "Alas! alas! We shall be devoured by the Sirens. We have looked upon a fellow-man for the last time."

After the leader of the merchants had climbed down from the acacia tree, he returned by the way he had come and lay down on the bed provided by the Sirens. And as he lay there he reflected, "How (74) shall I let these merchants know of this matter as I myself saw and heard it, without the Sirens getting to know, and how can this plan of mine be urged upon them? For if I tell these five hundred

---

1 Aśmākham, gen. with śārdham, for the instr. 
2 Aṣṭha, skt. e. i.e. "the third hundred less half." Cf. Pali adghātya. Senart says that the MSS. here favours the form as he prints it. 
3 Khāyita, BS. and Pali, a twin form of khādita. 
4 Or "coppery," śānda. 
5 October-November. 
6 I.e., "the maned one." Cf. Keśin, the name of Indra's and Agni's horses. 
7 Śrīṣṭi, BS., Pali ṣrīṣṭi. 
9 Literally "you are to say to them." "lesām vaṁśāyaṁ."
10 Khaṇḍakāpāla. 
11 Literally, "making (= using) the service of another" parasya presyakarmanam kṛṣṇa. Cf. Pali pessa kamma. 
12 Me rākṣast sayītā, "my Siren lying down!", or, perhaps, it would be better to take me as an ethic dative. 
13 Avidha, avidha, see Vol. 1, p. 251, n. 2. 
14 Yathā me sasyayam driṣṭo ca bruto ca, where the two participle are masc. although referring to the neuter (etat) kṛṣṇa. 
15 Eko ca tujya kṛṣṇa, where kṛṣṇa is again masc. Ṭuṣya is the gerundive of tuṣya "to impel", etc. But it may be doubted whether the text here is quite correct. Edgerton (B.H.S.D.) doubtfully prefers here the v.l. caturya = ? Sk. caturya, "cleverness," "stratagem," "trick." But it is not necessary to assume, as he does s.v. tujya, that Senart regarded that form as a 2nd pers. pron. The context would hardly admit such an interpretation.
merchants about the king of horses before he arrives, then one or other of them, being drunk or careless, will tell the Sirens. Then we shall have cause to be sorry and shall fall into misfortune and disaster. Wise men are agreed that no matter to whom a secret is revealed it is hard to find one loyal enough to keep it. Let me then keep this secret to myself until the day of the full moon in the month of Kārttika. Then when the king of horses has actually come to the island of the Sirens, I shall tell them of the danger we are in."

So he kept the secret within his heart, and did not reveal it to anybody until the full moon of the month Kārttika. And when the full moon rose the king of horses arrived at the island of the Sirens. Then did their leader speak to the merchants, saying, "To-day do not indulge in drink and food, in song and music with the women. There is a certain matter about which you, my friends, must hear from me. Yonder is a hidden spot. Do you all gather there when the women have gone to bed."

And when the women had gone to bed all the hundreds of merchants gathered in that hidden place and questioned their leader. "Tell us, leader," said they, "what it is that you have seen or heard." The leader explained the whole situation to the merchants, saying, "It occurred to me to ask myself why the women should keep us away from the way south of the city. So when my woman was lying fast asleep, I with great eagerness took a sword and went out by the road south of the city. There I saw a stronghold as of copper which had no gate, for I saw none, but I heard the noise of waiting of a crowd of people. Then keeping the stronghold on my right I went round to the north side of it, and there saw a tall acacia tree. I climbed the tree and looked down into the stronghold. There I saw many hundreds of merchants. They were lean and emaciated, their skin and flesh shrivelled by the wind and heat. They were dark and their hair unkempt. They dug the ground with their nails to look for water, and they suffered pangs of hunger and thirst. Several hundred skeletons lay round about scattered in all directions. Merchants from this and that city were all gathered together there. I was told by those merchants that those who lived there were survivors of those who had been devoured by the Sirens. The others, two hundred and fifty of them, had been devoured. These women, therefore, are not human beings, but Sirens. If we do not make an effort to return to our own country, all of us, too, will fall into misfortune and destruction at the hands of these Sirens. If you wish for deliverance from the hands of this crowd of Sirens and to go in safety to Jambudvīpa, there is Keśīn, the king of horses, from the land of Uttarakuru, who feeds on fragrant grain of rice which grows on untilled and unploughed soil and is without powder and husk. He comes here to the island of the Sirens when the moon is full in the month of Kārttika. He stands on the seashore on the northern side of the island of the Sirens, and shouts 'Who is for the shore beyond the sea?" So let us draw near to the king of horses. He will take us in safety to our own land."

The five hundred merchants then went with their leader to the northern side of the city of the Sirens. There they saw Keśīn, the king of horses, standing on the sea-shore and stretching out his neck and shouting, 'Who is for the shore beyond the sea?' The five hundred merchants went up to Keśīn, the king of horses, and said to him, "O greatly compassionate one, we come to your refuge. Do you cross and take us with you."²

(76) The king of horses gave instructions to the merchants, saying, "When I go hence from the island of the Sirens, I shall take you³ with me, neigh³ times and fly through the air. Then the Sirens who have borne you boys or girls will come and bring them along. They will pitch many a

---

2. Sahasopinthe sāyidye. According to Senart sopina is an intermediate form between the Pali sopha and sopina.
3. Dhamanisantha. Cf. Pali dhamanisantha, "strewn with veins" (santharati = sāmystrī). The P.E.D. cites Weber, Bhagavati, p. 289 for Jain Sk. dhamanisandita, and compares Lat. Vist. 226. Kern, Toev. s.v. considers that the right reading in Pali also should be santita (sam-taw— "to stretch or cover over ").

---

1. Literally, "who is he that goes to the beyond"? ko pąrāgamti,
2. Literally, "make us cross" asmāhām lāgati, where asmāham is gen. for acc. See Edgerton, Gram. §20. 48.
4. Hāsita, for ḫesita. See B.H.S.D.
pitiful tale\(^1\) and say, "Noble friends, do not forsake us at the bidding of another. Do not leave this pleasant and rich isle with its plentiful supply of precious stones." But you must not then pay any heed to the words of the Sirens. For he who will heed their words and become full of yearning and say: 'There is my wife, there my son, there my daughter,' will again fall into the power of the Sirens and drop off my back to the ground. But he who will not heed the words of the Sirens nor say: 'There is my wife, there my son, there my daughter,' nor have any yearning, will go in safety to Jam-budvīpa clinging to my mane."

Thus, monks, Keśin, the king of horses, after giving these instructions to the merchants, neighed three times and flew through the air carrying them all with him. When the Sirens heard the neighing\(^2\) of Keśin, the king of horses, they came bringing their sons and daughters. They cried out, "Noble friends, do not forsake us at the bidding of another. Do not leave this pleasant and rich isle with its plentiful supply of precious stones." And, monks, those of the merchants who were filled with yearning at the sight of the Sirens, fell from the horse's back to the ground. Those who did not look back with yearning safely escaped from the island of the Sirens to Jambudvīpa.

It may be again, monks, that you will think that at that time and on that occasion was Keśin, the king of horses, was somebody else. But you must not think so. And why? I, monks, at that (77) time and on that occasion was Keśin, the king of horses. It may be again, monks, that you will think that at that time and on that occasion those five hundred merchants were some others. But you must not think so. And why? These monks here at that time and on that occasion were those five hundred merchants. Then did I rescue them from the pitiless land of the Sirens, carried them in safety across the ocean and set them down in Jambudvīpa. And now, too, have I turned them from the pitiless ways of wrong belief and led them across from the wilderness and jungle of the round, that is without beginning or end, of birth, old age and death.

\(^1\) Literally "They will talk many pitiful things," bahāṇi karuṇākaruṇāṇi pralabhiṣyanti.  
\(^2\) Htana. See B.H.S.D.

---

**THE FIVE HUNDRED MERCHANTS**

Arouse your emotion, stir up your hearts, and listen with rapt attention and with devotion in your hearts.\(^3\)

With glad hearts listen to the tale of a former life of the Exalted One, a tale that is bound up with the truth of dharma, and will thrill those who believe.

Now at that time I was the king of horses, and being possessed of pity, I led across in safety a company of merchants from the sea-girl isle of the Sirens.

At that time that company of merchants had gone down to the sea and reached an island\(^4\) which was rich in precious stones, surrounded by the tossing waves.\(^5\)

But their vessel was wrecked on the sea by a monster fish, which swiftly dashed against it with the speed of\(^6\) a Garuḍa\(^7\) with the wind in his wings.

There amid the waste of waters they cried out with anguished voices, calling upon the devas, each one upon the deva he believed in.

Some called on Śiva, others on Vaiśravaṇa, others on Skanda, others on Yama and others on Kuvera. Others again called on thousand-eyed Virūḍhaka, and yet others on Diśa.

(78) They seized the gear, which they had on board for other uses, and plunged into the stream of the salt sea.

Some seized rafts made of the bottle-gourd, others planks made of the silk-cotton tree,\(^8\) others wheels,\(^9\) and others bales of cotton.

Others killed their fellows, that, hanging on to their bodies, they might save their own lives. For the salt sea cannot long abide a dead body.

When they had for that night floated on the salt sea wave, they caught sight of lovely trees growing on a strand.

\(^3\) A metrical version of the same tale.  
\(^4\) Understanding datam with the adj. bahuṛataṁvantaṁ.  
\(^5\) Urmattarangamāla, where māla is taken as the compositional form of māla, "wreath." It would not be impossible, however, to equate it with Pali mala in the possible, though doubtful, sense of "foam" or "froth," "(amid) the foam of the tossing waves." See P.E.D.  
\(^6\) Literally "like", sa, so reading for ca.  
\(^7\) See Vol. 1, p. 165, n. 2.  
\(^8\) Simbali, Bombak heptaphyllum.  
\(^9\) Vṛtim, for the vṛtim of the text. Should it be ghaṭim, "jar", as in the prose version?
And as they neared the strand they could see hundreds of women, like unto consorts of the devas, wearing crimson garments.

Some looked like maidens, others were radiant like newly wedded brides. On their hair were fine garlands and bands. Their heads dazzled with earrings of Jambunada gold. With their golden-brown eyes, they made a fine array on the sea-shore.

They plunged into the sea, singing a plaintive sweet strain, "Noble friends," said they, "do ye at once become the lords of those who are without lords."

"For we dwell here in a wood without husbands or kinsmen. Surely the sea was gracious to us when it brought you to our shore." They seized the men by their shoulders, each woman her man, and rescued them from the sea. (79) By every means they sought to cheer the men, saying to each, "Good friend, you must not despond."

"Good friends, live with us women; do not despair as do men who have left their dear kinsmen, their friends, their fathers and sons.

"Enjoy yourselves with us, and though you are but men you will be like a crowd of devas in Nandana, drinking sweet wine of honey, and tasting the fair joys of this isle." But with their eyes full of tears the men, standing near the ocean wave, replied to the women and said, "Pray wait a short while that we may throw off our grief."

The merchants withdrew a short way and gathered together for comfort. They wept and cried like men suffering bereavement.

"O mother," they wailed, "O father, O sons, O my delightful land, O Jambudvīpa with its lovely and pleasant parks.

"Happy are they who can foregather with their kith and kin, though it be to dwell with them but for one night, and then die."

1 Saripattitva, where sari is for Sk. sari or for sara (Pali).
2 Literally "by whom you were brought," yena vo ānīdā, where vo is for yūyam. See Edgerton, Gram. §20. 44.
3 Aśmeki, intr., cl. Pali amākhi.
It was gay and delightful with mango trees, karṇīkāras,1 kuravakas,2 tilakas, and vakulas. And to crown all the Suyāmas3 graced the fair grove with their presence.

There were flowers and the iron-wood tree,4 the bhavya,5 the pālevata,6 the holy fig-tree,7 the elephant tree,8 the hognut tree,9 and fine thickets of the seven-leaved mucilinda.10

There were campaka trees crowned with leaves, and bushes of flowering fragrant mango,11 with various other flowering trees alive with the hum of honey-making bees.

There were the vilvāra12 tree, the coco-nut, the plantain,13 the bread-fruit, the palm, the date-tree, the lime, the citron; at no season were they not seen.

The walnut, the tamāla,14 the plantain, the kimśuka,15 the vine, the bhavya, and the pomegranate—at no season were they not seen.

Some bent under the weight of their crowns of flowers, others bore ripe fruit, and others were languishing. (81) And others were never seen otherwise than thickly branched.

These and other flowers were seen blossoming on the fair trees at all seasons; at no time were they not seen.

In the fair grove were lotus-pools with gently flowing water echoing to the songs of swans and cranes. Others were covered with blue and red and white louluses—a delight to the eye.

Then some Sirens, beautiful in their dark robes and lovely in their tight-fitting bodices, rose up1 from the water, and made the merchants forget2 their long-standing grief. And then among the rows of trees they graced the blossom-covered lotus-pools, and still more made the merchants forget their grief and the loss of their ship.

Emerging from the fair grove the merchants caught sight of the abodes of the Sirens, glistening like frost, like unto the abodes of the Suras thronged by Apsarases.

Polished3 and chased within, like Vāsava's4 abode in heaven, the abodes of the Sirens reared up to the sky. With its glittering turrets, its casements and windows, its star-shaped and crescent ornaments, the city of the Sirens looked like a superior fair stronghold.

When the merchants had entered they sat down on roomy couches, and after they had had their nails, hair and beards trimmed, they were provided with a bath.

After their bath they were dressed in splendid clothes, and served with food that was seasoned with flavours and condiments. (82) There was plentiful meat, the flesh of boars, fish, buffaloes, young goats and sheep, cock peacocks, pheasants, quails, lābakas,6 francolin partridges, and cranes.

Those Sirens who were skilled thereat played on tabours and drums,8 on instruments from Sūhinī9 and cymbals, the guitar, the lute, the vallakigunka and vallaktīlā,8 the nakula,9 the seven-stringed Indian lute,10 the horn11 and the flute. Others sweetly sung.
When the Sirens saw that the merchants were cheered up, they showed them their fair parks, their rich stores of precious stones, and their wealth of beds, couches and food.

" Here, then," said they, "you and we can take our joys like the hosts of devas in Nandana. But you must not be careless and go along the way to the south."

Now he who was the leader of the merchants was a wise, clever and shrewd man. And when he was seated apart by himself, he reflected and wondered why they forbade them to go along that road.

" What if I were to go," said he, "when this Siren is fast asleep, and take a sword and go along the road to the south of the city."

So when she was fast asleep, he took a sword and went out along the road to the south of the city.

And as he went along this road he heard a shouting afar off. Following in the direction of the noise he came within sight of a stronghold built as though of copper.

He came up to it and went all round it in search of a gate, but could see none. (88) Still he could hear the sound of many men coming from it.

" O mother," they were crying, " O father, O sons, O delightful native land, O Jambudvīpa with its parks.

" Happy are they who can foregather with their kith and kin, and live with them were it but for one night, and then die.

" Is it possible that because we followed our calling we shall come to perish in this forlorn island in the middle of the salt flood of ocean?"

As he listened to these lamentations the wise and shrewd merchant espied a tall acacia tree to the north of the stronghold.

He climbed the tree, and then he could see within the stronghold hundreds of men who had been without food for months, and whose nails, hair and beards were long.

Their bodies were emaciated, their skin and flesh shrivelled by the wind and heat. Their clothes were rotting rags; they were tortured by thirst and their hair was unkempt.

Some of them in search of water would scratch the earth with their nails. And when they would stand up, they fell down. When they fell they would wallow1 on the ground.

And as he sat safely perched in the tree he had climbed, he could see many skulls thrown about and scattered in all directions.

When the men within saw the leaves of the acacia tree suddenly bend down, they all stretched out their joined hands towards the fair tree.

" Who are you, noble sir," cried they, " are you a deva, a Nāga, a Garuḍa, a Guhyaka, a Suvarṇa2 or hundred-eyed Virūḍhaka, or a Yāka?

" Deliver us who are in sore distress, have pity on us, O valiant man. Let these men who are still alive be restored to their land and their fond relations."

The merchant in the acacia tree, with his eyes full of tears, replied, "Good friend, I am no deva, nor Nāga, nor Garuḍa, nor Guhyaka, nor Suvarṇa. Nor am I thousand-eyed Virūḍhaka, nor yet a Yāka.

" I and my friends, good sirs, went down to the sea in quest of wealth. But we were ship-wrecked, and here we are after being rescued by women.

" They treat us right well, as mothers treat their obedient sons. For the women are kind to us and wish us no harm."

Dismayed at the words they had heard the merchants

---

1 Reading vīcē̄ṣ̄aṇtī for vīcē̄ṣ̄aṇtī. So Edgerton (B.H.S.D.), who calls attention to Senart's remarks in his introduction to Vol. I, p. xii, on the confusion of c and v in the MSS.

2 For Suvaṇṇa, see Vol. I, p. 165, n. 2.

3 ? Pratīvrtaṇāti, here (?) " to take to," cf. B.R. " Jmd. (acc.) gu Theil werden." But Senart admits that his text is far from certain.

4 Samyarak.

5 Reading priyā for priyam.

6 Mo, gen. pl. But the text of the whole line is doubtful. As printed it reads Yām priyām mo māṇuyu na tā śiṣṣajā vipriyam. Senart assumed the lacuna of a whole verse immediately preceding, but was not so confident about this when he came to write his notes. The corresponding prose passage (p. 72, text) has sīnaṁ ca yām śrīvīryam na karōma tā cāmākāṃ vipriyam necchānti. Though one MS. begins the verse in much the same way as the prose it continues so differently as to make any restoration on the lines of the prose impossible.
within said, "We, too, are men who left Jambudvipa and went down to the sea.

"We, too, were wrecked, and here are we, too, after being rescued by the women. They treated us, too, right well, just as they did you, my friends.

"There were five hundred of us merchants who were rescued by them. Here are now but two hundred and fifty; the rest have been devoured.  

Those of us who were sons, young and soft-voiced, have been devoured by these voracious women, my friend.

"These, my friend, are not women, they are dread Sirens, heartless and armed with knives, Sirens in human guise."

Then still more distressed did the merchant become, and he bethought him to ask what way of escape there might be from the island of the Sirens:

"Come, friends," said he, "tell me how we can win deliverance, and how we can escape in safety from this fatal horror."

And they, out of their kindliness and pity, told him of how they had seen and heard that there was an escape from the island of the Sirens:

"In the month of Karthika, said they, "when the moon is full, there will come hither the horse Valaha, the swift and lovely-maned horse, the best of horses,

"With well-proportioned glossy limbs, clean and fragrant, full-grown, strong, speedy with the speed of the wind, coursing through the air.

"Raven-black his head, lotus-blue his eyes; he is sprung from the race of Valaha, his body is white like the full-grown, strong, speedy with the speed of the wind, coursing through the air.

"When he has fed on grain of rice that is without husk or dust and grows spontaneously, he stands on the sea-shore to the northern side of the island of the Sirens.

"Lifting up his head the king of horses speaks these words,

1. Yumahaka, genitive, object of pratitvartensu.
2. Khya. See p. 76 n. 3.
3. Nam, gen. pl., ye pi manj putrah.
4. One of the four horses of Visnu. The prose version calls the horse Keisin.

Who of you would go to the shore beyond the salt flood of ocean?"

"Whom shall I take away to safety? Who, I pray, will say to me "May your promise prosper"?"

Do you go to him for refuge and he will take you in safety to the shore beyond."

The leader of the merchants said, "Come, my friends, do you, too, repair to this horse of renown. Leap out of this iron stronghold, this gloomy fortress of the Sirens."

"Ah, friend," said they, "you do not know that this coppery fort of the Sirens is too high to leap over and too firmly founded to dig beneath it.

"Friend, there is no deliverance hence for us, who are tied to karma. It was by the karma of our own deeds that we were dragged away from Jambudvipa.

"Our own hearts were Yama's messengers to send us to Yama's realm. Do ye go, then, without any dallying to your homes.

"And there bid our kinsfolk do acts of charity, my friends. Bid them think no more of going down to the sea.

"So long as one lives with one's own people, begging round the houses with a potsherd for an almsbowl is better than this misery.

"As long as one lives with one's own people, having to obey the bidding, orders and commands of another is better than this misery."

"Well, my friends," said the merchant, "I will go before she who is asleep wakes up, and comes here and craftily learns what we men intend doing."

1 Literally, "whose [will be the words] let my word prosper." Aarya mama vidhyatu vacanam. "Tava" for "mama" would be simpler and less involved, as at page 88.
2 Vo = ydham. Cf. p. 82 n. 2.
3 Literally, "is large (or high) when one leaps"—langhayante pi vardhakati.
4 Aastyai, from d + 3f (= sf). Cf. Pali aastyai, and see P.E.D., which prefers this derivation to Trenchner's a + sya, and cites Maha 75, where it is said of the lotus uddhe aastyai, "is supported in the water." Edgerton (B.H.S.D.) explains it as 3rd sg. pass. impersonal of a, "to sit."
5 Literally "not objecting to," "not refusing," reading ghaffentesya for ghantesya, as Senart in his notes suggests, though he is doubtful if the verb can have this sense. But see P.E.D., where the figurative sense of ghaffet (Sk. ghaffayati) is given as "to offend, mock, object to."
And when he was coming down from the tree there were cries of "Alas! alas!" They beheld them of their native land and were pierced by the shaft of sorrow.

The leader of the merchants on alighting returned the way he had come. He went in and found the others lying fast asleep on their beds.

There he began to ponder as to how he could tell the merchants (87) the true position of affairs without the crafty women knowing.

"For wise men do not commend him who reveals a secret. Drunken and careless men will talk of it, and the telling will be regretted.

"Like a drop of oil a secret revealed is blazoned abroad."

"Hard to find are those men who will keep a secret whether it is good or bad. So let me then keep my secret until the moon is full.

"Then I will tell them after the famous horse has come, when the occasion has come and it is the month I know of."

To his fellow-merchants he said, "You must not be negligent. You must be moderate in your eating and drinking with the women."

At the close of that day when the women had fallen fast asleep, all the merchants went to that hidden spot.

And when they had gathered there the merchants questioned (their leader), saying, "Tell us, friend, of this thing that you have seen and heard."

Kindly and compassionately he told them of what he had seen and heard, and of the way of escape from the island of the Sirens.

Then the merchants declared that all the women were a gang of Sirens.

---

1 Avidha. See Vol. 1, p. 251, n. 2.
2 Se., when lit.
3 Reading, on the basis of two MSS, tailasya va bindu vihala vigyatham prakahiti for the text tailasya viyaa bindu ca vihala prakahiti. The second pada has too long a lacuna to admit of restoration.
4 The metrical version here and elsewhere assumes a knowledge of details which it has not itself given.
5 A lacuna covering most of the final pada of this verse and part of the next.

---

[The leader said], "The king of horses standing on the sea-shore speaks these words: (88) 'Who of you would go to the shore beyond the salt flood of ocean?

"Whom shall I take to safety? Who will say to me, "May your promise prosper?" We will go to that refuge. He will take us in safety to the shore beyond.'"

When they had heard their leader's words all the merchants gathered together on the northern shore.

Coming there they saw not far away the king of horses standing on the shore to the north of the island of the Sirens.

Lifting up his head the king of horses spoke these words: "Who of you will go to the shore beyond the salt flood of ocean? Whom shall I take to safety? Who will say to me, 'Let your promise prosper?'

When the merchants heard the words of the king of horses, they stretched forth their joined hands and replied,

"We all come to your refuge, O benefactor of the world. Take us to the shore beyond. May your promise prosper."

The king of horses then said, "Now take hold of my tail. I shall be flying away at great speed. But you must bear this in mind."

"If it occurs to any of you to say, 'This is my wife, this my son, or this my daughter,' you will again fall into the power of the Sirens."

"But if it occurs to you to say, 'This is not my wife, this is not my son, or this is not my daughter,' you will go in safety to the shore beyond."

(89) When the best of horses had thus instructed the merchants, in pity and compassion he said,

"Come, friends, well is it with you, merchants, good fortune be yours. I shall lead you across, away from this pitiless, fearful, horrible place."

1 Literally, "went," agamu (v.l. agamo), aor. 3 pl. See Edgerton, Gram. 32, 112.
2 Taav vacanam vihara. See p. 85 n. 1.
3 Reading raktivatam arnavatam for the text anuvatam abhakatam. Cf. prose version rakshitam anuvatam agata. Although there does not seem to be any MS. warrant for this emendation, some such change is necessary, for the text reading gives a very obscure sense, "you will go to what is beyond your power." Some uses of avasa, indeed, would give a quite inappropriate sense, e.g. avalanaga, "not submitting to another's will."
And carrying the merchants with him he speeded over the
earth in the ways of the birds, in the unsupporting air,
swiftly flying with heavenly wings in the path of the wind.

Hosts of devas, Dānavas, Bhujangas, Yakṣas and Rākṣasas in their domains waved their garments, and
shouted, “All hail, Great Being.”

“Without a doubt, thou wilt become ere long a Master,
a light of the world. Thou wilt lead all men across to the
shore beyond the ocean of old age and death.”

Those of the merchants who thought, “Here is my wife,
here my son or here my daughter,” were shaken off the
horse’s back and thrown to earth.

Those who did not think, “Here is my wife, here my son or
here my daughters,” were led across in safety to the shore
beyond.

... and so they arrived in Jambudvīpā.

They who will not believe the words of the king of dharma
will go to destruction, like the merchants who were destroyed
by the Sirens.

But they who will believe the words of the king of dharma
will go in safety, like the merchants who were saved by Vaṭāha.

The Exalted One, the Master, calling to mind a former life, a
former birth, related this Jātaka in the presence of his monks.

With an exposition of the skandhas, the dhatus, the
ayatanas and the atman, the Exalted One explained
the meaning of it.

“Then,” said he, “I lived of yore in one of my lives in
the round of rebirth that has no beginning nor end, then
was I Vaṭāha, the lovely horse, the best of steeds. And Sañjāyin
was then one of the five hundred merchants.”

Thus rid of old age, of fear, and griefless, he related to
the concourse of his monks this story of a former life of his,
his infinite sufferings, his faring up and down in the past.

---

1 See Vol. 1, p. 55, n. 3.
2 A generic name for snakes or serpents.
3 Anticipating the identification of Keśin (or Vaṭāha) as a former incarnation of the Buddha.
4 Jagad, “the world of life.”
5 Lacuna.
proper messenger to send to the Exalted One?" And they said to Suddhodana, "Your majesty, Chandaka here was the Exalted One's attendant when he was a young prince, and his comrade when he left home. Udāyin, too, the priest's son, was the young comrade of the Exalted One when he was a young prince, and played at making mud-pies with him. Let these two be sent."

These two were then summoned. "Go, Chandaka and Kālodāyin," they were told, "to Rājagriha, into the presence of the Exalted One. Greet him and say to him, 'The Exalted One has shown compassion to devas and men. Well would it be if the Exalted One showed compassion to his own people.' And whatever the Exalted One tell you, that do."

And they in obedience to King Suddhodana left the city of Kapilavastu and in due course reached the Squirrels' Feeding-place in the Bamboo Grove in Rājagriha. They approached the Exalted One, bowed their heads at his feet and stood to one side. The Exalted One said to them, "Chandaka and Kālodāyin, why have you come?" They replied and said, "We would conduct the Exalted One to Kapilavastu.

And the Exalted One in that circumstance, on that occasion, at that opportunity and at that moment uttered these verses on dharma. 4

Whose triumph does not wane, whose triumph Māra cannot overcome, the Buddha whose range is infinite, who knows no worldly way, along what way will you lead him?

1 Sahakāpāpumudrana "playing in the mud with." Pali saha+pamukhita and pamumudraka, a common expression for "youthful playmate."
2 This visit of Chandaka and Udāyin (or Kālodāyin) to the Exalted One has already been related in Vol. 2, p. 221 (trans.), where it was introduced to provide the nidāna or occasion of the Sirīpūkha Jātaka. Udāyin was called Kālodāyin (Pali Kālodāyī), because of his slightly dark colour.
3 Vo = yāyaṃ. See p. 82 n. 2.
4 The two stanzas following as given in the Pali Dhammapada (179-80). read,
   Yassa jītaṃ nāvajātīya jītamaṣa na yāti koci lohe taṃ Buddhāṃ anta-gocaraṃ apadāṃ kena padena nessatha?
   Yassa jātini visiṣṭātī laṅkā nāśthi hukhiṣṭi nasta eva taṃ Buddhāṃ anta-gocaram apadāṃ kena padena nessatha?
5 Reading either ājātī, Pali pass. of ji "to conquer" for ājātī of the text, or ājātī "to grow old," "decay". The Pali ājātī can represent either. See also Edgerton, B.H.S.D.
6 Here called by one of his epithets, Aṇṭaka, see Vol. 2, p. 269, n. 7.
7 Jīti, BSk. and Pali for jīyati. See Edgerton, Gram. p. 213.
8 Aṇḍa, see P.E.D. and B.H.S.D.

BUDDHA'S VISIT TO KAPILAVASTU

Who has destroyed the snare, craving, that it can no longer lead him anywhere, the Buddha of infinite range who knows no worldly way, along what way will you lead him?

The Exalted One then asked them, "Chandaka and Kālodāyin, will you take up the religious life?" And though they were not eager to do so, yet since they had been instructed by King Suddhodana to do whatever the Exalted One told them, and although they did not see there any yellow robes or a barber to cut their hair and shave off their beards, they reverently and against their will said to the Exalted One, "We will take up the religious life."

Then the Exalted One pronounced over them the formula of "Come, monks," saying, "Monks Chandaka and Kālodāyin come, and live the brahma-life under the Tathāgata." And when the formula of "Come, monks" had been pronounced over them every mark of a layman, every badge, every emblem and every sign disappeared from their persons. A suit of three robes appeared, and a sumbhaka1 bowl; their hair assumed its natural state, and their deportment was established, all just like those of monks who had been ordained a hundred years. Such was the admission of the venerable Chandaka and Kālodāyin into the religious life, their ordination and their becoming monks.

From the time that he had left home, from the time that he had attained the supreme perfect enlightenment, a period of seven years, the Exalted One had not known his native place, had not sat down with his face turned towards it even for as long as it takes a man to breathe in and out once. At the end of those seven years near relations of his among the Śākyans of Kapilavastu who had passed away from their human state and had, as a maturing of good karma, been reborn in the world of devas, implored the Exalted One, saying, "The Exalted One has taken compassion on devas and men. Well would it be if the Exalted One took compassion on his own people. It is time for the Exalted One to take compassion on his own people." The Exalted One silently intimated his assent to those devas. And they, understanding

1 See p. 67 n. 3.
2 Antamasato. Cf. Pali antamaso, BSk. antalāk, e.g. 1. 104 (text). See also 1. 7; 2. 15. See B.H.S.D. for BSk. examples.
the silent assent of the Exalted One, (93) in joy and elation bowed their heads at his feet, saluted him from the right and forthwith vanished.

The Exalted One then arranged his seat so that he faced his native place. And the venerable Udāyin, understanding the sign thus given by the Exalted One, thought, "Since the Exalted One has arranged his seat to face Kapilavastu, he is eager to take compassion on it." Then he appealed to the Exalted One. 1

*Do ye now listen with rapt attention how, with bent knees and bowed head Kālodayin implored the infinite One, the peerless Conqueror who needs no guide.

Now have the crimson trees, Lord, shed their mantle of old leaves to make ready for fruit. 2 They are radiant as though they were aflame. The season, great Hero, is rich with the promise of succulent fruit. 3

The delightful groves are all in bloom and breathe sweet odours all around. Shedding their flowers the trees clothe themselves with fruit. 4 It is time, O Master, to go hence. It is not too cold nor too hot; but it will be seasonably pleasant for thee on thy way. Let the Koliyans and the Sākyans behold thy face as stars behold Rohitlī. 5

(94) Then the Exalted One described to the venerable Śāriputra the journey of the exalted Śīkhin.

It was a sublime sight, Śāriputra, long ago ere this to see the world-leader Śīkhin going on his journey. 6

---

1 The prose ends abruptly here, to let the story be carried on by a verse passage which, after the opening stanza of exhortation to listen, is practically identical with Thag. 527-8. Cf. for some parts J. 1. 87. See Mrs. Rhys Davids, Psalms of the Brethren, and the notes there.

2 Literally "searching for fruit" phaleisinas. After this word the text has a lacuna, but the line is restored as chadanaṃ viprakāya, after Thag. 527.

3 Literally "partakes of sap or juice," bhagyā rasānām.

4 Phalam ādityanant. The Māru, here differs considerably from Thag., which has phalam āsāsāna, "yearning for fruit."

5 Rohitānāṃ ṭākahā. But Thag. 529 has a substantive, bhāvantite, here.

6 Rohitānāṃ ṭākahā. But Thag. 529 has Rohitānāṃ tarantam, "crossing the Rohini," where instead of the constellation of that name we have the river Rohini, which flowed through the land of the Sākyans and Koliyans, and is now the Rohi in Rohwaini. See D.F.N. The variation between the two texts here is a good example of the vagaries of oral tradition. As compared with Thag., Kālodayin's appeal is here cut short.

7 The twentieth of the twenty-four Buddhas.

8 Literally, "it was a sublime thing when, etc." vāraṃ ... cārīkāṃ pratipannasya Śīkhīsya lobhāyate, which is a strange amalgamation of loc. and gen. absolutes. The same anomaly is maintained throughout the many repetitions of this phrase in the sequel. See Edgerton, Gram. §7. 12.

---

1 Sopāntya, "perh. for saupāntya or supāntya, "plenty of good water." (Edgerton, B.H.S.D.). In view of the other natural phenomena which are related as attending Śīkhin's presence, this interpretation is decidedly superior to that of Senart, who suggests that sopāntya is a corruption of some form like poṣadhyena, and that the allusion is to a gathering of people to make their eight vows (aṣṭāngasammitam) on a fast day! For the use of aṣṭānga in the sense of "perfect," "excellent," etc., see Vol. 2, p. 380, n. 6, and, with especial reference to water, Vol. 2, p. 332, n. 1. See also B.H.S.D. The translation assumes that sammitam should be emended into sannattam. So MSS.

2 Śīkhīsya pratipannasāt, "blossoming on their branches and/or trunks." Senart, however, is inclined to emend into sthānasya "(the trees) of the place," on the analogy of p. 98, l. 7 (text). But the text reading is more in keeping with the tone of the verse. Miss I. B. Horner reminds the translator that parasite flowers, such as orchids, appear to blossom on the trunks of tropical trees.

3 Māṇiyasātaka.

4 Amāṇiyasātaka.

5 For the next page and a half the text consists of a repetition of the preceding stanza, with a different object of the verb in each case, and with the synonymous caramāṇasāya for pratipannasya in the later stanzas.

6 See Vol. 1, p. 221, n. 1.

7 See Vol. 1, p. 186, n. 3.
Then arranging his robe over one shoulder and holding out his joined hands, Śāriputra besought the Tathāgata to make his journey.

"It is time that the Exalted One, too, should now set out on his journey, a Master taking compassion on men."

"Those who have made the dharma grow and are in their last incarnation are supplicated to avail themselves of the opportunity to take compassion on men."

[The Buddha replied] "After fasting half a month (96) I shall set out on my journey to bestow compassion on men." And so, having completed his fortnight’s fast, the Master set out on his journey to bestow compassion on men.

To whatever village or town Gotama came, everywhere men completely sound in health came to meet him from all directions. To whatever village or town Gotama came, the trees of the place1 blossomed forth and breathed their fragrance in all directions.

Whatever tree Gotama stood beneath put forth its flowers and bent under their weight2, a tree beyond compare.

Whatever tree Gotama stood beneath put forth ripe fruit in all its parts.

Trees and flowers and fruits that are of this world were seen as the Leader of the world went on his journey.3

Trees and flowers and fruits that are not of this world were seen as the Leader of the world went on his journey.

Then did the earth with the sea and the mountains quake when the Leader of the world had set out and was going on his journey.4

---

1 Sīkānasya. See p. 97 n. 2.
2 Onāmitvī. But the parallel passage above, p. 94 (text) has obhāsīvī.
3 There is a slight variation here from the parallel passage, p. 94 (text), which reads cārikāyatanāni dhrityansu. Cārikāyatanāni has been taken to mean “the area or the ways covered by his journey”, its case being accusative, object of carante. The present passage has cārikān ṭāni dhrityansu, where the pronoun ṭāni merely resumes the substantive subjects of the verb, cārikān being accusative object of carante.
4 This temporal clause, which is repeated as the last line in each stanza for the rest of the passage, but is omitted in translation, has a peculiar construction: cārikān pratipannasya carante lokāntaye (with caramānaśya for pratipannasya in the later stanzas). The anomalous concord of pratipannasya with nāyahe has already been met with (see p. 96 n. 8). In the present passage, unless carante, too, is taken as being for gen. sing. we are left with a clause containing half of a “genitive absolute” and the whole of a “locative absolute”, both referable to the same subject.
Devas scattered flowers of the coral-tree, of the great coral-tree, of the karkārava, (99) of the great karkārava, of the rocāmāna, of the great rocāmāna, of the manjūṣaka, of the great manjūṣa, of the bhīṣma, of the great bhīṣma, of the samantagandha, of the great samantagandha, and of the pariṣṭha. They scattered flowers of gold, of silver, (100) and of precious stones. They scattered powder of sandal-wood, of aloes-wood, of keśara, of tamāla leaves, and of celestial gems. Thousands of kōṭis of musical instruments played in the sky, and unbeatèn drums roared in the air. Devas standing in the sky waved their garments. Nāga kings, Ṣupaññas and men approached; those numerous beautiful and glorious Yaksas and those numerous, beautiful and glorious devas followed (101) as the Leader of the world went on his journey, and three thousand powerful, beautiful and glorious devas, eighty-six thousand brāhmaṇas who had gathered, and eighty-six thousand laymen.

Neither hunger nor thirst nor want was spoken of when the Leader of the world was going on his journey, nor heat nor cold nor gadflies nor want was spoken of when he was going on his journey, nor heat nor cold nor gadflies nor gnats. And when he had completed his journey and converted many people, the Saviour of the world was going on his journey, and three thousand powerful, beautiful and glorious devas, eighty-six thousand brāhmaṇas who had gathered, and eighty-six thousand laymen.

And when he had completed his journey and converted many people, the Saviour of the world was going on his journey, nor heat nor cold nor gadflies nor gnats. And when he had completed his journey and converted many people, the Saviour of the world was going on his journey, nor heat nor cold nor gadflies nor gnats.

King Suddhodana, then, with all the women of his court, with Yaśodharā at their head, with the princes and counsellors, with his Śākyan attendants, his archers, charioteers and horsemen, and with the town councillors1 led by their president, in great royal pomp and magnificence set out from the city of Kapilavastu to see the Exalted One. Now as King Suddhodana was coming out of the city of Kapilavastu in a chariot drawn by four horses and attended by an escort of Śākyans on his way to the Banyan Grove to see the Exalted One, a company of monks entered to beg for alms. King Suddhodana saw them, and he asked his counsellors, “Ho, counsellors, what manner of Wanderers are these?” The counsellors answered and said, “Sire, these are the attendants of the prince.” And, on seeing the monks who had left home to become seers, Uruvilvakṣyapa, Nadikāśyapa, Gayākāśyapa, Śāriputra and Maudgalāyānya with their company, that they were lean of body, mortified by austerities, shaven, and holding bowls in their hands, he became troubled of countenance. He said, “If my son had not left home he would have been a universal king over the four continents, triumphant, righteous, a king of dharma, possessing the seven royal treasures, with an escort of a thousand kings, and having the whole earth as his domain. Send this company away. I have no wish to see it.”

The counsellors, therefore, said to the monks, “The king does not wish to see you. Turn back.” So they turned back

---

1 Reading naigēme “townsmen”, with one MS., for the nigamehi, “towns”, of the text. The translation follows a suggestion of Miss I. B. Horner’s. See her Bk. of Disc., 4, p. 379, and n. 6, where she cites VA. 1114 which defines nigama at V. i. 268, as hujumbikāgama, “a group of leading men.” It is at least obvious that some special class of townsmen is alluded to.

2 Three brothers known in the Pali texts as “Tobbatika Jātikas,” the three brothers “matted-hair ascetics.” Uruvilvakṣyapa lived at Uruvilvā (see vol. 2, p. 110) on the banks of the Nairijana with five hundred disciples.

3 Further down the river lived his two brothers, with three hundred and two hundred disciples respectively. The three were converted by the Buddha and attained Arahantship. See I. B. Horner, Bk. of Disc., 4, p. 32 ff.

---

1 Nyagrodhārāma. “A grove near Kapilavatthu where a residence was provided for the Buddha when he visited the city in the first year after his Enlightenment (M. A. 1, 286). It belonged to a Śākyan named Nigrodha, who gave it to the Order” (D.P.N.).

2 The inhabitants of Kosala, to the north-west of Magadha. In the 6th century B.C., the Śākyan territory of Kapilavastu was subject to Kosala. See D.P.N. for references. Though the Banyan Grove, therefore, was near Kapilavastu, the Mhu. speaks of it as being in Kosalan territory and near its capital Śrāvasti (Sāvatthi).
and came to the Banyan Grove. “Lord,” said they, “King Śuddhodana has no wish to see us. For when he caught sight of us he turned us back.”¹ The Exalted One replied, “There will then be enough food here for the whole company of monks.”

But Uruvilvakāśyapa said (103) to the Exalted One, “Lord, I will go and make King Śuddhodana change his mind.”² But the Exalted One would not consent. In the same way Nādikāśyapa, Gayākāśyapa, Upasena³ and all the powerful monks implored the Exalted One, saying, “Let us go, Lord, to placate King Śuddhodana so that he will come to the Exalted One.” But the Exalted One would not consent to their doing so.

Then the venerable Mahā-Maudgalyāyana considered within himself, “What monk is it that the Exalted One can be desirous should go and placate King Śuddhodana?” And by means of his deva-eye, which excelled the human eye in clearness, Mahā-Maudgalyāyana perceived that the Exalted One was thinking of the monk Kālodayin,⁴ and that it was he who should go and placate King Śuddhodana. Perceiving this he went to the venerable Kālodayin and said to him, “O Udāyin, good fortune is yours and well-gained, since it is you that the Exalted One desires should go and placate King Śuddhodana. There are other monks senior to you, who have asked to go, but without success. So do you go, venerable Udāyin, and placate King Śuddhodana.”

When this had been said, the venerable Udāyin replied to the venerable Mahā-Maudgalyāyana, “Difficult is it, O venerable Mahā-Maudgalyāyana, to approach kings, who are anointed nobles enjoying security in their empire. Just as, O venerable Mahā-Maudgalyāyana, it is difficult for a man to approach a great burning pile of fire, so is it difficult to approach kings who are anointed nobles enjoying security in their empire. Just as, O venerable Mahā-Maudgalyāyana, it is difficult for a man to approach a leopard, king of beasts, fanged, powerful and maned, a lord of animals (104), so is it difficult to approach kings who are anointed nobles enjoying security in their empire. Just as, O venerable Mahā-Maudgalyāyana, it is difficult for a man to approach a lion, king of beasts, fanged, powerful and maned, a lord of animals (104), so is it difficult to approach kings who are anointed nobles enjoying security in their empire and are leopards among men.”

Then the Exalted One addressed the venerable Kālodayin in verse:

Listen to me, good Udāyin, you who are supreme among those who repose in the perfection of merit. You will easily placate the noble king, the joy of the Śākyan clan.

For no other monk is there who can win over the king's heart. By no one else but you, Udāyin, who have shared the life of the Exalted One, can it be done.

Once upon a time, Udāyin, long ago, there was a lord of earth, named Satyavardhana, and renowned far and wide, a protector of the world.

He was righteous, a king of dharma, honoured by kotis of nayutas of men. He ruled this sea-girt earth in righteousness.

This king had a son named Matisīra, who paid heed to the Buddhas of old, sustained by and intent on a host of merits.

Perceiving the viciousness of sensual pleasures, caring for none of the joys of sense, and having planted the root of virtue, he found no delight at home, but in solitude.

(105) To him Satyavardhana said, “My son, enjoy the exquisite quality of sensual pleasures here in your home that is like the abode of Vaiśravaṇa, like the abode of the immortals.”

¹ Or "gathered to spring". Literally, "with body clinging together", olinakāśya.
² Or, "heavy, haughty of look", gurudarśana.
³ Paricārita, "served by", p. part. of BSk. parīcārayati, Pali paricāreti.
⁴ Or, "immortal", p. part. of BSk. janapadatthāvartya, Pali janapadatthāvāriya.
⁵ For no other monk is there who can win over the king's heart. By no one else but you, Udāyin, who have shared the life of the Exalted One, can it be done.
⁶ Mahaddhika for maharddhika; cf. Pali mahaddhika. One MS. has maharddhika.
⁷ See above p. 94.
⁸ See above p. 94.
⁹ See vol. i, p. 293, n. 5.
Matisāra holding out his joined hands replied, “O king, these are not the things that are good in the eyes of an intelligent man. “They are what a foolish man is capable of, for they are known to be under the control of passion. Why should a man who has eyes to see take the wrong path under the guidance of a blind man? Why should a man who has arrived to time envy him who is still abroad without a shelter? Why should a man who has been set free take the road back to prison? at the bidding of one who is still in bondage? Why should a wise man hanker after the company of one who is on the wrong road? You seem to me, O king, to be a blind man carried away and long since lost. You are being carried away by the flood of sensual desires, while I abhor them.”

And so Matisāra, with the full knowledge of his powerful father, went forth from his home, a prince renouncing without regret his kingdom and his pleasures.

As a snake sheds its withered slough, as a man spews a gathering of phlegm, so did he cast aside his kingdom, the whole sea-girt earth. For he had perceived the viciousness of sensual delights.

Surmounting the sphere of sensual pleasures, Prince Matisāra indulged in divine meditation that he might reach the state of Brahmā.

1. Lucana.
2. Literally, “is still riding.”
3. This is the translation of Senart’s restored text.
4. Or “Brahma states”, brahmavātihā, “exercises in meditation to produce the four concepts or spiritual attitudes of love, compassion, cheerful sympathy and equanimity” (maitra kareṇa mudatā upēkṣā). See P.E.D. for references. Kern, S.B.E. xxii, p. 140, n. 3, says of them, “Otherwise they are termed appamaññā in Pali; they are identical with the four bhāvanās or exercises to develop benevolence, compassion, cheerful sympathy and equanimity.” and he refers to Yogaśāstra 1. 33.
5. Brahmātvā.

When the prince had thus taken to the religious life, out of devotion to him the son of the household priest, named Somadatta, went forth from home after Matisāra.

(106) Now when the prince left home to take up the religious life, his father took it hard, but Somadatta’s going as well appeased the king.

Why should you think, Udāyin, that Matisāra at that time was somebody else? It was I who at that time cared nought for the pleasures of sense.

Why should you think, Udāyin, that Satyavardhana was somebody else? King Suddhodana here at that time was he.

Why should you think, Udāyin, that the devoted Somadatta was somebody else? You were he who then appeased him who was named Satyamaha.

Therefore do you now placate King Suddhodana. Great profit will there be when the lord of earth is placated.

There will be, young sir, an endless store of blessings for devas and men when the noble king is placated. So haste to reconcile him.

By this time the lord of the Sākyans is sorely stricken in mind and disturbed of thought. He stands dejected like an elephant which has fallen over a mountain cliff.

Like a strong man in the grip of a demon that sap’s his strength, he, supreme lord of the earth though he is, no longer knows either his own self nor his son.

Through thinking of loss of sovereignty and reflecting on sovereignty, he does that which displeases me. So quickly go and appease him.

King Suddhodana turned back from the gates of Kapilavastu with all (107) his Sākyan retinue and came and stood in his reception-hall. There King Suddhodana addressed the Sākyan men and women, saying, “The prince has deprived himself of the lordship of this great domain and taken up the religious life. If the prince had not taken up the religious

1. I.e. Satyavardhana.
2. Samudaya. Possibly, there is a play on the name Udāyin.
3. Rākṣasa.
5. Durīnasa or exercises to develop benevolence, compassion, cheerful sympathy and equanimity.”
life, he would be a universal king over the four continents, triumphant, righteous, a king of dharma, possessing the seven treasures. For those seven treasures would be his, namely, the treasure of the wheel, of the elephant, of the horse, of the jewel, of the woman, of the householder and of the counsellor. He would have a full thousand sons, brave, courageous, handsome, vanquishers of their foes. He would reign and exercise his sway over these four great sea-girt continents without turmoil or trouble, without rod or weapon, without violence, but with justice. He would be attended by thousands of kings. This universal rule would mean power¹ for us here. But now that the prince has taken up the religious life we have been deprived of the lordship of this mighty realm.”

Then the venerable Udāyin flew up in the air from the Banyan Grove and came and stood in the air at the height of a palm-tree in front of Suddhodana and his retinue of Śākyan escort. And King Suddhodana saw the venerable Udāyin standing in the air at the height of a palm-tree, and, seeing him, he was thrilled, gladdened and pleased. He rose up from his seat, arranged his robe over one shoulder, and stretching out his joined hands towards the venerable Udāyin he addressed him in verse:

“Whence do you come garbed in a robe of red? On what mission have you come hither? And what, Udāyin, do you desire here? Rare is the sight of those who have their vows fulfilled.”

[Udāyin replied:]

(108) “O monarch of this realm, good fortune and glory is yours, since your son is the Peerless One among men. With his splendour he irradiates the whole world as the rising thousand-rayed sun the earth.

Then the elder Udāyin, as he stood in the air at the height of a palm-tree, recounted the many noble qualities of the Buddha. And King Suddhodana on hearing was pleased, and he spoke to the Śākyan men and women saying, “Just as, O sons and daughters of Vasīṣṭha,² we have in the flush of dawn a foregoing sign of the rising sun, so we have in Udāyin, the dispeller of doubt, the disciple of the Sugata.”

[Udāyin said]

A new Buddha¹ with vision of the ultimate good has at last appeared in the clan of the Śākyans. As I placated Śātyamahā so (may I now placate Suddhodana.)² In hope is the field silled and the seed sown.³ In hope merchants sail the sea in quest of wealth.⁴ And now may that which I hope for as I stand here be realised.

Again and again men briskly sow the seed. Again and again the lord of devas sends the rain. Again and again the sown field ripens, and again and again the husbandmen reap their harvest.

(109) Again and again beggars approach; again and again true men give them charity. Again and again the true men who have given go to their place in heaven.

Rare is the Sterling Man⁵; he is not born everywhere. But wherever the Hero is born, his clan is happy and prosperous.

The Hero is clean⁶ back through seven generations⁷ in whatever family the vastly Wise One is born. A deva of devas he guides the Śākyans like a father; for from you is born the seer Satyanāma.⁸

Verily Suddhodana is the Conqueror’s father, and likewise is Māyā the Buddha’s mother. She who bore the Bodhisattva in her womb, now, after the dissolution of her body, rejoices in heaven.

She, the Buddha’s mother, rejoices in the five strands of

---

¹ Hastokta. See vol. 2, p. 66, n. 3. This is the explanation also given by Edgerton (B.H.S.D.).
² See vol. 1, p. 32, n. 2.
³ See Thag. v. 529 ft., where they are a continuation of a verse passage the first part of which has already been reproduced p. 96 above. The first three stanzas are also found at S. 1, 174.
⁴ Afānā. See p. 118, n. 6. Here, of course, an epithet of the Buddha.
⁵ Puneti. Thag. 533 has puneti, which P.E.D. explains as “caus. f. puna? or = punati?” “to experience (over and over) again”, but Kern Toew. n. 31 takes it as = punati, and Mrs. Rhys Davids translates “lifts to lustrous purity”. Thag. A.II. 225 gives puneti = sodheti. The only variant in the MSS. of the Mhku. seems to be pureti.
⁶ For the idea that traceable descent from a common ancestor through seven generations constitutes a family, cf. Thag. 533 and D. 1.113.
⁷ Or “who bears a true name.” Cf. Pall Saccanāmā as epithet of the Buddha at A. 3. 346; 4. 285, 289; Pāv. -231; Thag. 533.
sensual pleasures,¹ in desirable delights, exceeding eager and attended by hosts of Apsaras.

The father is pleased² with his son, the Buddha, the invincible, the mighty³ peerless scion of Angirasa,⁴ and he exults. O Śākyam Gośama, rightly art thou nobly born.⁵

The king said:

"Does he with whom you live as a recluse, O monk, live the brahma-life in faith? (110) Is he not afraid? Does he not know what fear is, but is content in his solitude at the foot of the tree?"

Udayin replied:

"O king, he with whom I live as a recluse lives the brahma-life in faith. He is not afraid nor knows what fear is, but is content in his solitude at the foot of the tree.

"How, O Śākyan, can you say that the Conqueror is afraid as he lives all alone, a diligent Seer, unmoved by censure or by praise, like a lion undisturbed by alarms, like the wind that can not be enmeshed in a net, a Leader himself not to be led by others?"

[The king said:]

"Since you know my son whose wisdom is unequalled, and whose father I say I am, and since you are a son to him, so are you a son to me. Eat then, O monk, and then take your alms-bowl.

"We, too, will go to see the Buddha, whose excellence is unsurpassed, who has passed beyond doubt. From what you say about my son, O monk, the Choicest of beings has appeared in the world."

Having eaten the food as it was proper to do, pure, exquisite and sweetly-flavoured food, (111) the monk took his alms-bowl, and set out and came to where the Conqueror who knows no leader, was.

¹ See vol. 2, p. 113, n. 2.
² There is considerable variation between the Mhru. and Thag. in the last stanza, the variation centering in the two words śrīta pīḍa of the former text as against pitu pitii of the latter.
⁴ Although the Commentaries propose various explanations of this term, the likelihood is that it is a mere patronymic, for the Gautamas belonged to the Angirasa tribe. See D.P.N. for references.
⁵ But contrast the text of Thag. 536, and see n.

And when he had reached that place he held out the alms-bowl to the Conqueror. Bowing at his feet he said to the Tathāgata, "Thy people are coming to see thee."

"When the king heard of all thy virtues, he thrice called out, 'Well won is my good fortune and infinite, since now that a Conqueror dwells in this universe of three-thousand worlds, I shall have intercourse with the Leader.

"The blossoming trees in their garb of flowers are the haunt of flocks of twittering birds. So, too, my heart is glad and blooming, since I have heard that my son is endowed with all good qualities.'"

Then King Suddhodana spoke to one of his royal counsellors.

"My counsellor," said he, "Prince Sarvārthaśīddha has awakened to the supreme perfect enlightenment. He has set rolling the noble wheel of dharma, and has reached the wood near Kapilavastu. So we will go out to meet my son, Prince Sarvārthaśīddha. Have a proclamation made, then, in the city of Kapilavastu, bidding all Śākyans, brāhmans and laymen, all musicians,⁶ all guildsmen and all craftsmen to come with me to meet Sarvārthaśīddha." "So be it, your majesty," said he.

And the royal counsellor in obedience to Śuddhodana at once caused a proclamation to be made at the cross-roads and market places in the city of Kapilavastu in these words (112) "Good people, Prince Sarvārthaśīddha has awakened to the supreme perfect enlightenment and has come to the wood near Kapilavastu. Therefore you all must go with King Śuddhodana to meet the Exalted One.

There has come to the clan of the Śākyans he who will be its protection. He has attained his desire; his heart is rid of craving;³ his āsrava⁴ are decayed, and his passion gone. He is all-seeing. After twelve years we shall behold him in his infinite wisdom.

When he has heard the joyous sound of drums in the kingdom of the Śākyans, and the music played by the host

¹ See vol. 2, p. 23.
² Gāndhārīkā, "followers or disciples of the Gandharvas", for whose musical abilities see D.P.N. Cf. vol. 2, p. 49, n.3.
³ Tīṣābhaṇa, "state of craving"; tīṣa is for tīṣā or tīṣā.
⁴ See vol. 1, p. 49, n. 2.
of devas in Lumbini, he who declared 'I will become a Buddha in the world,' will come, making true his word and dispelling the darkness.

He who took seven strides here in Lumbini, he by whom the seven jewels of the bodhyangas were understood, he who roared a lion's roar, 'I am foremost in the world,' will come and break those who speak against him.

He who has done away with all rebirth, in whom every source of becoming is dried up, in whom the creepers of craving and the font of ill are dried up, will come and give release from bondage in the world.'

When the Śākyan men and women of Kapilavastu heard this proclamation, they quickly gathered at the palace gate (113), including princes, counsellors, army officers, brāhmans with the household priest at their head, and the community of tradesmen with their president at their head. All the musicians were there, namely, jugglers, court bards, actors, dancers, athletes, wrestlers, tambourine-players, clown-players, tumblers, tam-tam players, buffoons, divinators, reciters, poets, singers, dancers, comedians, performers on the drum, trumpet, tabour, kettledrum, cymbal, flute, and the guitar and the lute—all gathered at the palace gate. All the guildsmen of Kapilavastu were there; namely, goldsmiths, bankers, cloak-sellers, workers in shell and ivory, jewelers, workers in stone, perfumers, kosāvikas, Pāṇisoṣṭhika, 'player on a pāṇisoṣṭha,' Pali pāṇisoṣṭha, literally 'hand-sound or music.' At Dial. 1, 8, n. 2, Buddhaghosa is quoted as explaining the term to be 'playing on cymbals.' Cf. pāṇisoṣṭha, vol. 2, p. 97, n. 3; but Edgerton (B.H.S.D.) says, 'probably palm-clapping or hand-sound.'

294. Sābhiga, Sa. sābhiga, 'a certain office or occupation at court connected with music.' See Mr. R. H. Pachter, Camb. Hist. India, vol. ii, p. 265f., and references there given.

3. Dandharika, see p. 109, n. 2.

4. Cakraka, cf. Sk. cakrak, 'a kind of juggler or tumbler who exhibits tricks with a discus or a wheel (?)' M.W. So, doubtfully, B.H.S.D.

5. Vaitallika, 'a bard whose duty it is to awaken a chief or prince at dawn with music and song.' M.W. The Pali form is vatalla (Miln. 331; J. 6. 277), 'a certain office or occupation at court connected with music or entertainment, a bard.' P.E.D. At J. 6. 277 it is explained as vatalla ukkhađake, where the P.E.D. suggests that for vatalla we may read vitalla, i.e., 'Those whose duty it is to vex or upset to make people rise.' This explanation seems to tally with Buddhaghosa's explanation of the name of the corresponding profession, vatalla, at D. 1, 6, as being ghanatalla, 'cymbal-beating' (DA. 1, 84), to which he adds mantena maha-suri satkaksana m i esa, 'some take it to mean raising the dead by magic charms.' According to the P.E.D. the word is of dialectical origin. Perhaps to be read setllāka (B.H.S.D.).


oil-dealers, hawkers of jars of ghee,1 sugar-factors,2 vendors of water,3 factors of cotton, curds, cakes,4 dried treacle,5 sweet-meats, kandu,6 wheat-flour and barley-meal, hawkers of fruits, roots, perfumed oil from ground powder, agrivativas,7 āviddhakas,8 makers of confectionery from sugar and dried treacle, vendors of dried ginger,9 distillers,10 and factors of candied sugar—these and many other business people all gathered at the palace gate.

And all the craftsmen of Kapilavastu were there; namely, brass-founders, copper-smiths, goldsmiths, makers of wooden bowls,11 pradhopahās,12 roṣitas,13 tin-smiths, makers of lead sheets,14 workers in grass,15 garland-makers,

---

1 Ghrītakūrīka. B.H.S.D.: "Seems to mean 'ghee-potter.' Does it mean 'maker of pots intended for holding ghee, a dealer in pots of ghee'? No similar word has been discovered elsewhere."

2 Gauśika = gauśika, " relating to sugar or molasses" (M.W.).


4 Pāpika. cf. pāvika (Mīl. 331), from pāva = pāpa. So B.H.S.D.

5 Ḫaṇḍakāraka, kandu. " Probably, which, on the analogy of the accompanying terms, must mean 'maker or dealer in some kind of eatable called kandu,' " Miss I. B. Horner has supplied the translator with the following extract from Sir George Watt, Commercial Products of India (1908), p. 902, under Pistacia: " Taddhukāraka, (Mīl. 331), a name which Edgerton, B.H.S.D., makes to correspond with Pali śika. The pistachio nut is exported in large quantities from Afghanistan to India, Persia and Turkestan. In India the nut is a common article of food among the well-to-do classes . . . and a frequent ingredient in confectionery. Our word kandu may not be unrelated to kandur. B.H.S.D., however, has 'hemp, hemp-seed' from Sk. hempa, 'iron-pan,' and so makes or sellers of iron pans. But the name of such an occupation is out of place among terms for dealers in various eatables.

6 Unknown. B.H.S.D. lists the word with a question mark.

7 Unknown. "Observe and probably corrupt" (B.H.S.D.).

8 Śūṣṭhi from śūṣṭhi or śūṣyati, " dry-ginger." One MS. adds pīcakā, " cookers of dried ginger," i.e., makers of such confectionery.

9 Taddhukāraka cf. maññijā, "dealers in strong drink." Mīl. 331.

10 Taddhukāraka is read by Senart who suggests that taddhū is a Prakritising form of taddā " a wooden ladle." Edgerton, B.H.S.D., would read sā/su-taddu (taddu) kāraka, " makers of flattish bowls.

11 Unknown; v. H. are pradhopahās and pradhopahās, both of which are as inexplicable as the text form. "Wholly obscure." (B.H.S.D.).

12 "Stūt ( = sīsa)-pīcakāhāra."

13 Jantūkhāra, jantrī in Pali, but not apparently in Sk., being the name of a grass. This sense fits in well with what follows. cf. also the term tisakāhāra, grass-gatherers'. Mīl. 331. But, perhaps, we should read jantrākara, " machine-workers." Cf. Jantrā = yātrā, Mīl. 475 (text), janta+kāra, ibid., and jantārākara, 476. In his index Senart gives the last form as being the one in the present passage.

---

14 Strassler, R. "Buddha's Visit to Kapilavastu." 1.3.2

15 Vegetable-growers,1 potters, tanners,2 weavers of wool, makers of mail armour,3 weavers of robes for idols,4 laundrymen,5 dyers, cleaners, spinners, painters,6 carpenters,7 carvers,8 basket-makers,9 modellers in clay,10 plasterers,11 barbers, hairdressers, wood-cutters,12 decorators,13 builders,14 barn-makers,15 miners,16 hawkers of fragrant earth,17 wood, grass, shrubs and twigs, sailors, boatmen,18 washers of gold,19 and tricksters.20

1 Reading pāṇīśaka for purimākāraka. Cf. Pali pāṇīśaka in the same sense. Mīl. 331; f. 1. 411; 2. 180; 3. 21. Purimsa is not known as the name of any article. Senart appears certain of the reading, but makes no comment on the word in his notes. B.H.S.D.: (very doubtfully) "professional cleaners (of clothes)."


3 Varūkhātantravāyaka, " weavers of thread or wire for defence," though Senart says he would have as much justification in conjecturing varākhātantravāyaka, "rope, thread, cloth," as a synonym to explain the verbal affix kāraka, " maker," rather than rāyaika, " weaver."

4 Devākhantravāyaka.

5 Calladakovaka, cf. coṣadakovaka, vol. 2. 415. n. 2.


7 Varūkhātantravāyaka, literally " makers of form by cutting." One MS. reads vaddakāra, which cf. Pali vaddakā ha. On this craft see Mrs. Rhys Davids: Cambridge History of India, 1. 206 and Fick: Sociale Giederung, 181, f.

8 Reading kāla (v.1 kāra)-paṭirika, which Edgerton, B.H.S.D., says makes "weaver's-merchant into hiṣapātika."


10 Literally, "maker of store-room for seed." Upakaṣṭūhāraka, which probably denotes the same occupation as koṭṭhakaṃsā, "a store of a workroom keeper," mentioned at V. 4. 6 as an example of "low" work. See I. B. Horner, Bk. of Disc. 2, p. 175.


12 Mṛīṣṭhākāhāra.

13 I. Ojumīṣka, cf. Pali ojumīṣka " belonging to a skiff," P.E.D., where the word is used "a skiff," is cited from Svet. Upaniṣad. Below p. 433 (text) the form ojumāṣa is used.

14 Swarnakovaka.

15 Mauṣūjika. Dishonest as well as honest occupations had their guilds or communities. There was, for example, a robber gāma in the hills near Uttara Pañcāla. See references in Mrs. Rhys Davids, op. cit., p. 207, and Edgerton, B.H.S.D.
These and other people, of various classes, lower, upper and middle, all gathered together at the palace gate.

And so, with this crowd of people, with the women of his court, with the princes and counsellors around him, accompanied by his archers, charioteers and mahouts, himself riding in a chariot drawn by four horses, attended and honoured by the town councillors with their president at their head, the community of tradesmen with the chief merchant at their head, the brāhmans with the household priest at their head, and the eighteen guilds, King Suddhodana in great royal pomp and magnificence, to the loud shouts of brave! from the people and the roar of drums, tabours and kettle-drums and the blaring of trumpets, left the city of Kapilavastu and set out for the Banyan Grove to see the Exalted One.

The Exalted One reflected: "The Śākyans are a proud people. If I welcome them sitting down on my seat, they will change their minds about me and say, 'How is it that the prince who has renounced his universal sovereignty, has taken up the life of a recluse, has awakened to the supreme perfect enlightenment and attained the dharma, who claims that he is the sovereign of dharma—how is it that he does not stand up to greet his father, who is old and venerable?'

And yet there is no being or group of beings whose heads would not be split into seven were the Tathāgata to stand up to greet them. Let me now then rise up into the air and a long walk without touching the ground allowed. Then he alighted, and with his women and his Śākyan escort proceeded on foot. He entered the Banyan Grove, approached the Exalted One, bowed his head at his feet and addressed him in verse:

Here for the third time, thou man of great wisdom, thou All-seeing One, I bow at thy feet. I did so when the soothsayers foretold of thee, and when the rose-apple tree's shade did not desert thee, and now again I do so.

Then the Exalted One standing in the air at the height of a palm-tree performed various and divers miracles of double appearance. The lower part of his body would be in flames, while from the upper part there streamed five-hundred jets of cold water. While the upper part of his body was in flames, five-hundred jets of cold water streamed from the lower part. Next, by his magic power, the Exalted One transformed himself into a bull with a quivering hump. The bull vanished in the east and appeared in the west. From the upper part there streamed five-hundred jets of cold water. Then he alighted, and with his women and his Śākyan escort proceeded on foot. He entered the Banyan Grove, approached the Exalted One, bowed his head at his feet and addressed him in verse:

For the grading of social status according to occupation see V. 4, 6, I. B. Horner, Bh. of Disc. 2, 173 and Dial. 1, 100, 102.

Śrēṣṭhipramukho naigamo (so read for naigamo of the text. See p. 101, n. 1). This and the succeeding substantives with their adjectives are inexplicably nominative instead of instrumental.

1 For the grading of social status according to occupation see V. 4, 6, I. B. Horner, Bh. of Disc. 2, 173 and Dial. 1, 100, 102.

2 Sravasti, ka, "and this (time)."

3 Literally " twin miracles " yamakāpratīkāryāni (Pali patihāriya). Such a miracle was said to have been first performed by the Buddha at Śravasti (Sāvatthi) to refute the heretical teachers. It was subsequently repeated many times. In the Mah., 17, 44; 30, 82; 31, 99, we hear of a like miracle being performed by the Buddha's relics. See P.E.D. for references, and cf. vol. 3, p. 410 (text).
south and appeared in the north. And in this way the great miracle is to be described in detail. Several thousand kosi of beings, seeing this great miracle of magic, became glad, joyful and pleased, and uttered thousands of bravos! at witnessing the marvel.

When the Exalted One left home, Mahāprajāpāti Gotami’s eyes, as a result of her tears and grief, had become covered as with scales, and she had become blind. So now, when the Exalted One was performing his various and divers miracles of double appearance, and there were thousands of shouts of bravo! Mahāprajāpāti Gotamī asked Yasodhāra, “What is the meaning of these thousands of shouts of bravo?” Yasodhāra replied, “Here is the Exalted One standing in the air and performing various and divers miracles of double appearance. But you cannot see them.” Yasodhāra then said, “Come, I shall contrive that you see them.” She cupped her two hands together and filled them from the water which flowed in five-hundred jets from the body of the Exalted One as he performed his miracle of double appearance. She bathed the eyes of Mahāprajāpāti Gotamī, and the scales were pierced through the virtue of the Buddha. Her sight became clear and faultless as before.

And after the Exalted One, standing in the air, had performed various and divers miracles of double appearance, he displayed magic wonders and established many thousands of beings in Aryan states. He then sat down as on an appointed seat.

Then King Sudhodana and the Śākyans (117) bowed their heads at the feet of the Exalted One, greeted him sincerely and cordially and sat down to one side. Mahāprajāpāti Gotamī and Yasodhāra also, with the women,

1 See vol. 2, p. 160, n. 4.
2 Literally, “because of her wet (fresh) grief,” utena skoha, utta being AMg. for Sk. śrorda, which is also used in the same connection. Senart emends the MS. uttena (utena evo) into runena, the instr. of the past part. of rud, “to weep” (see vol. 2, p. 207, n. 1), used here as a substantive (cf Pali). It is better, however, with Edgerton (B.H.S.D. s.v. wila), to restore the reading of the MS.
3 Uddhājito pariśeta.
4 Used in the English New Testament sense of the word. It is offered here as a better rendering of anukāda than the words “power” or “might” hitherto used in this translation.
morning and rubbed thee with reddish unguent of sandalwood, coloured like the moon, and pleasantly fragrant and cool.

"But now in the cold and bitter nights thou dost roam and wander from forest to forest. Who, prithee, does now bathe thee with clean and cool and refreshing water when thou art weary?"

The Exalted One replied:

"Pure, O Gautama, is the stream which has virtue for its bathing-strand. Untainted is it and ever commended by good men. (119) Bathed and immersed by the deva hosts in its water I cross over to the shore beyond.

"Dharma, O Gautama, is the pool which has virtue for its bathing-strand. Untainted is it, and ever commended by good men. He who has been bathed in this pool by deva hosts cleanses the whole world, making it fragrant with his own merit."

The king said:

"When thou wast garbed in Benares cloth and wast dressed in clean garments scented with lotus and champaka, thou wast radiant among the Sākyans as Sakra is radiant among the people of the universe.

"But now thou dost wear sackcloth and garments made of strips of red bark, and dost not abhor them. 'Tis passing strange that this should be so, Sir."

The Exalted One replied:

"Conquerors, O king, are not concerned about robe or bed or food. Discerning Conquerors care not whether what they get is agreeable or disagreeable."

The king said:

"Formerly noble, glittering chariots were thine, gleaming with gold and bronze, and costly. (120) Always did men carry for thee, when thou didst go abroad, the white sunshade, the jewel, the sword and the fan.

"Formerly Kāśikā, the best of steeds, was thine, fleet as the wind, spirited, swift and impetuous, a thoroughbred harnessed with trappings of gold. Always did he bear thee whithersoever thou didst wish.

"Though thou dost still own thy carriages, chariots, horses and elephants, yet dost thou tramp from kingdom to kingdom. Art thou not weary? This now tell me."

The Exalted One replied:

"Magic power is my chariot. It is my own heart that bears me on. Steadfastness, wisdom and mindfulness are my charioters. The four perfect strivings are my horses. On my own, well-made, even feet do I walk abroad."

The king said:

"Formerly thou didst eat from vessels of silver and bowls of gold. Men set before thee wholesome and exquisitely flavoured food as became thy kingly station.

(121) "But now thou dost eat without loathing, whether the food is salted or not, coarse or not, without or with flavour. 'Tis passing strange that thou shouldst do so, Sir."

The Exalted One replied:

"Like the Buddhas who lived in times past long ago, and those who will live in time to come, I, too, a Self-guiding One, do eat the fine and the coarse, the flavoured and the flavourless, seeking self-control for the sake of the world."

The king said:

"Formerly, among rugs of wool and cotton, thou didst..."
120

BUDDHA'S VISIT TO

THE MAHA V ASTU

Rujanti, intrans. use.
.
This class of devas seem to be mentioned only here. Edgerton (B.H.S.D.)
adds Mmk. 19.
B See p. IIS n. 4·
.
.. .
(
b ddh
' Suttanta and Veyyakarana, two of the mne ~lvISI~ns navanga!l. asasana) into which the completed corpus of Buddhl~t sC~lptures w,as dlvld!ld.
In a note Senart calls attention to the anachro!llSm. Involved In alluding
to this division at such an early stage of- BuddhISt history.
, Bhima.

121

apa1·tment that was like a mansion of the devas, men in
armour kept watch over thee, champions rank on ranll,
doughtv fighters with the sword.
" B~t now in a forest lodging all alone, amid the hooting
owls and baying jackals, through the long nights when many
beasts are prowling round, art thou not afraid? This now
tell me."
The Exalted One replied :
" Were all the hordes of Yak$as to come together, and the
wild elephants that roam the pathless hills, welt creatures
would not stir a hair of one like me. For I have abandoned fear and won through to fearlessness.
" Alone I fare along, a watchful sage tmmoved by blame
or praise, like a lion that is not frightened by noises, like
the wind that can not be trapped in a net. Hvw, 0 Siikyan,
can you say that the Conqueror, a leader himself and not
led by others, is afraid? "
(124) The king said:
" The whole earth should be thy domain; thou shouldst
have a full thousand sons. But now thou hast renounced
the seven treasures 1 and, 0 Valiant One, taken up a
Wanderer's life."
The Exalted One replied:
" The whole earth is still my domain, and still have I
a full thousand sons. And here I have eight2 treasures to
which no other treasure is like."

take thy joy on a high couch spread with antelope skin and
soft cushions of silk, fitted with feet of gold, and strewn
with garlands of flowers.
" But now thou dost make thy bed of grass and leaves
on rough and stony ground, and dost enjoy. it, thou,. t~~
Choicest of Beings. 0 Wise One, do ?tot thy hmbs ache?
The Exalted One replied:
.
.
" 0 Siikyan, men like me do not sleep badly .. All gr~ef
and feverish sorrow have I left behind. . Ever wtthout. gne!,
and fever I keep vigil out of compasswn for all be~ngs.
(122) The king said:
.
" Formerly, 0 Gotama, thou didst live at home. in an
apartment .that was like a mansion of the de.vas, ht as .by
a swarm of fire-flies, in an upper room wzth well-fitt~ng
casements,
" Where serving women decked in bright garlands and
jewels, adorned like the Apsarases, w~ited diligently ,~n
thee, watching thy mouth to see what the~r master spoke.
The Exalted One replied:
"To-day, 0 Siikyan, even here in this sojourning-plac.e
of men there are Brahma and Prabhiisvara 2 de~as. r.he~;,
hearts are all at my command, and I can go where er I w~sh.
The king said:
" Thou wert sung, to the sounds of drum and tabour, by
those skilled in music and tale. Thou didst shine among
the Siikyans like Sakra among the peoples of the universe."3
The Exalted One replied:
" I am now sung in Discourse and Exposition. 4 And
awake to that release which knowledge brings, (123) I shine
among the monks like Brahmii among the peoples of the
universe. "
The king said:
.
"Formerly, 0 Formidable One,5 when at home m thy
1
I

KAPILAVASTU

With joined hands upraised the father approached his son
whose passion was all gone, whose faculties were well composed, who had won perfect release, was flawless and rid
of the asravas. "Show me the Way," said he, "for the
sake of human kind."
•
The Master i-nspired 3 his father S1,f,ddhvdana with
knowledge, and said to him; "Always pay regard to the
I.e., of kingship, see, e.g., vol. I, p. 41:
.
'"
The allusion is probably to the four pairs of men, the eight mdlvlduals
(e.g., M. 1. 37, cattiiri purisayugiini a!!ha purisapuggalii) who are soliipannas,
etc., and have won the fruit of each of the four stages of the way. Cf.
vol. I, p. 94, n. 2.
3 Pharitva, from pharali.
Cf. PalL The form is equally referable to
the two Sk. stems sphul' and sphal'. See P.E.D. and B.H.S.D.
1

I


monks when you see them. Be not remiss. Then dharma will be yours."

Thus was the father of the Infinite One, the Mighty One, enjoined to regard the monks. And immediately after the True Man gave him insight into the transcendent dharma and made it clear to him.

Such was the thrilling encounter of father and son. (125) Who, calling to mind such a Sugata, will not experience spiritual gladness?

Here ends the Meeting of Father and Son.

THE JĀTAKA OF THE CROW

The monks said to the Exalted One, "Behold, Lord, how King Suddhodana was reconciled by the venerable Udāyin." The Exalted One replied, "This, monks, was not the first occasion on which King Suddhodana was reconciled by Udāyin here. There was another occasion also." The monks asked, "Was there another occasion, Lord?" The Exalted One replied, "There was, monks."

Once upon a time, monks, long ago, in the city of Benares, in the province of Kāsi, there ruled a king named Brahmadatta. He was virtuous and mighty, treated his subjects kindly, was liberal and generous, powerful and wealthy, and had a great army. His city of Benares and the province of Kāsi were flourishing, rich and peaceful, had plenty of food and were thickly peopled with happy subjects. Riots and tumults had been quelled, robbers were held in check, and trade thrived.

Here there dwelt a king of crows, named Supārśva, with a flock of eighty thousand crows. Now this king of crows had a wife, named Supārśvā. This female crow conceived a longing for the king's food, and she told Supātra, king of the crows, of this longing. He replied, "I will give orders, and you shall eat of the king's food." And the king of crows spoke to his minister, saying, "Supārśvā would like some of the king's food. So order the crows to bring some of the king's food from the kitchen of King Brahmadatta." The minister answered and said, "Sire, I'll have some of the king's food brought here." And he gave orders to the crows, saying, "Go, bring food (126) from the kitchen of King Brahmadatta, so that the wife of Supātra, king of the crows, may eat of it." But the crows answered, "The royal palace is guarded by men skilled with bow and arrow. A bird cannot get anywhere near the royal palace, and so we cannot bring any of the king's food from the kitchen of King Brahmadatta." Other crows were given the order, but they, too, would not dare. Among all the eighty-thousand crows there was not one that would dare to fetch some of the king's food from the kitchen of King Brahmadatta. "We are afraid," said they, "that if we go there we shall be killed by an arrow or a ball."

Then the minister of the king of crows said to himself, "Am I the minister of Supātra, king of eighty-thousand crows, if I cannot get this command of his executed? We have no courage. I'll go myself and speak to King Supātra about it." "Your majesty," said he, "I will go there myself and bring some of the king's food from his kitchen. If I am killed, well, let a life be sacrificed rather than that I should not bring food to the wife of Supātra, king of crows."

He was not spotted by the king's men who were skilled with bow and arrow, as their attention was distracted. And so he came away from the kitchen of King Brahmadatta bearing in his beak excellent royal food of various kinds.

---

1 Rājayā appetite, instr. For this BSk. use of the instr. see Edgerton Gram. § 7, 32.
3 Sūkhām = svayam, as also in the next sentence.
4 Yaśa for iśa. One MS. has the latter form, but Senart thinks that he is justified in retaining the "barbarous" form, as it is found elsewhere in the Mūsa. Edgerton, Gram. § 34. 13. gives examples from other BSk. texts, and compares AMg. jātīha.
THE MAHĀVASTU

good in colour and taste. Day after day he repeatedly stole some.

The cooks reported the matter to King Brahmadatta. "Your majesty," said they, "a crow trespasses in the kitchen, spoils the king's food, defiles it, and cuts it to pieces. And while we are occupied with our work we are interrupted by the repeated job of driving him off." The king gave orders to his counsellors, saying, "Spread a net over the kitchen so that the crow can not trespass in it."

The wishes of devas are fulfilled by their thoughts, those of kings by the word of command; those of rich men are speedily fulfilled, and those of the poor are fulfilled by their own labours. (127) In accordance with King Brahmadatta's order a net was spread over the kitchen, so that the crow could neither alight nor trespass there. The crow considered how he could go on stealing the king's food, and he said to himself, "What if I were to watch the road along which the food is brought from the kitchen to the king?" And so, whenever he saw gruel or condiment or meat dishes or solid food or sesamum confection or any other kind of food on its way to be brought to the king, he went and took some in his beak. But then the king bade all the servitors and eunuchs to put covers over the dishes of food. So the servitors brought the food from the kitchen to the king with covers placed over it. Thus the crow was no longer able to steal any. He then said to himself, "How can I still go on stealing the king's food for the wife of the king of crows?" So when King Brahmadatta sent morsels of food to his queens by the hands of the serving-maids the crow snatched them from their hands. And King Brahmadatta heard that as the morsels were being taken in to the queens the crow snatched them from their hands. The king then ordered that a covering should be put over all the serving-maids as they took in the morsels.

THE JĀTAKA OF THE CROW

By this time King Brahmadatta had become very impatient. "Pshaw," said he, "what sort of crow is this insolent, cawing, impudent and thieving crow that it cannot be kept off by the archers, but spies on what is going on in here and flies down?" And the king made an order, saying, "To him who can catch this crow and bring him alive to me I will give a rich reward." King Brahmadatta communicated this order to his whole court.

(128) Now a certain serving-maid on being sent by King Brahmadatta went and took a morsel to his queen, with her garments thrown over her. The crow saw her, and he said to himself, "How shall I steal the food from her hands? What if I were to hang on to the tip of the nose of this maid? Then in fright she will drop the food from her hands, and I shall take it and go away." So he alighted where the maid was and held on to her nose, scratching and cutting it. The frightened maid dropped the food and seized the crow in both her hands. Taking the crow with her the maid, her nose streaming with blood, went to King Brahmadatta and said to him, "Here is that mischievous crow caught." King Brahmadatta was pleased with the maid, and he said to her, "It was a smart piece of work for you to catch the crow." And he gave her a rich reward. He scolded the crow and said, "But it was not a smart piece of work when you trespassed in the royal palace." But the crow addressed King Brahmadatta in verse:

In Benares, sire, there dwells a king of crows, Supārśa, who has a following of eighty-thousand crows.

His wife Supārśvā yearns and wishes for meat, the exquisite cooked food in the king's kitchen.

And when I heard his behest, I did his behest. It was to honour the king, her husband, that I wounded the nose of your maid.

---

2 Literally "thrown off", uṭhīṭa.
3 Karma, loc. of a-decl. of karman. Cf. Pali. karme, literally "by the jobs." For form see n. 3.
4 This proverbial distich has already been met with. See vol. 1, p. 213, and 2, p. 92.
6 Literally "looking within," antandriṣṭvā of the text, which is inexplicable, although Senart does not remark on it nor include it in his index. Possibly the syllable ra is a printer's error.
7 Abhīchādana. The word abhīchāda is used in the next page in the same sense. See also vol. 2, p. 95, n. 1, vol. 3, p. 33 n. 3; p. 36 n. 2.
8 Lagnati for lagati, formed from the pp. base lagna; cf. Pali lāgatti from lagna. On p. 429, of vol. 2 (text) occurs the apparently passive form lāgati. See vol. 2, p. 382, n. 1, where lagnati should read lagati. See B.H.S.D.
Then, monks, King Brahmadatta was pleased with the minister of the king of crows, and he said, "This minister of the king of crows had no lands nor wealth nor any other means. But seeking subsistence with his beak, he did his duty to the king of crows at the risk of his own life." And, monks, King Brahmadatta, addressed his company of ministers in verse:

Such an one is worthy to eat the food of a king, who, like this crow, was faithful unto death to the king of crows.

King Brahmadatta directed that the crow should have some of the king's food every day. A dish was filled with excellent and varied royal food and set aside for the crow, who daily ate some of it himself and took some to the king of crows. Orders were given to the court that no one was to molest the crow as he came to and went from the royal palace.

The Exalted One said, "It may be again, monks, that you will think that at that time and on that occasion, Supatra, the king of crows, was somebody else. You must not think so. And why? She who was the wife of the king of crows, named Suparsva, was Yasodharā. He who was the minister over the eighty-thousand crows was Kruodayin. King Suddhodana was King Brahmadatta. Then, too, was he propitiated by Kalodayin, just as he has been on this other occasion."

Here ends the Jātaka of the Crow.

THE JĀTAKA OF THE FEMALE ELEPHANT

The monks said to the Exalted One, "Behold, Lord, how Mahāprajāpāti became blind through grief for the Exalted One, but had her sight restored through him." The Exalted One said, "Monks, that was not the only occasion that Mahāprajāpāti became blind through grief and sorrow for me, (130) but had her sight restored through me. There was another occasion, also, when she had her sight restored through me." The monks asked, "Was there another occasion, Lord?" The Exalted One replied, "There was, monks."

Once upon a time, monks, long ago, on the slopes of the Himalayas there was a hill, called Caṅgāgiri, on the side of which was a wood full of thousands of flowering and fruit-bearing trees. It had lotus-pools and retreats, and was the resort of a number of seers, being secluded and remote. Here there dwelt a large herd of the species of six-tusked elephants. A fine young elephant was born there, having six tusks, his head the colour of the cochineal, his body well set up and white like the lotus. When he grew up he looked after his mother with reverence and affection. He gave her food and drink before eating and drinking himself. He duly groomed and cleaned his mother's tall body with a creeper that grew in the forest. And so this young elephant carefully looked after his mother at all times with kindness, affection and reverence.

Now whenever he had groomed his mother and served her with food, and saw that she lay down, he went off roaming with the other elephants. And so it happened that he was seen by hunters who were following the chase, and these went and reported to the king of Kāśi. "Your majesty," said they, "there is such a young elephant living in the forest yonder, such a beautiful and handsome one as would be suitable for your majesty."

Then, monks, the king of Kāśi, after hearing the hunters, came with his troops to that forest. He caught the young elephant and took it away from the forest. Surrounded by some female elephants he was brought to Benares and lodged in the elephant-stable. The king said to himself, (131) "This will be a fine riding animal for me." He showered all kinds of favours on him, and himself gave him food and drink.

1 Named only here.
2 Priinta. See vol. II, p. 119, n. 3.
3 Ajaniya. See p. 118 n. 6.
4 Literally "his seven limbs," sapṭāṅga, a proper term, of course, for an ordinary elephant.
5 Reading uddhataśarirāyaṁ for -sarirāyaṁ of the text.
6 Thāvita for thāpita, Sk. thāpita, Pali thāpita. A variant in one MS. is dhāvita. Now, see Edgerton, Gram. § 38. 68 for causatives in-aveti.

1 Not in J.
But all this honour gave the elephant no satisfaction, for he kept sorrowfully remembering his mother. He sighed deeply, wept, languished and grew lean.

The king in affection for the elephant held out his joined hands and questioned him, saying, "I bestow all favours on you, best of elephants, yet you languish and grow lean and lose your beauty. I never see you happy and pleased and wearing a cheerful countenance. Speak to me, and tell me how I can provide you with what you want. You are an object of love and affection to me, best of elephants. Tell me why you waste away and take no food or drink."

Then the young elephant, in reply to the king's question, said in human speech, "Your majesty, what I need is nothing that can be supplied to me in service or food. For my mother dwells in the forest yonder, and she is old, advanced in years, past her prime, blind and infirm. Ever since I grew to years of discretion, I do not remember myself eating before I gave food and drink to my mother. Though it be the death of me here, it is my resolve that I will not myself take food or drink again without giving my mother some."

Now the king of Kāśī was just, compassionate and concerned with showing kindness to others. And he said to himself, "It is a wonderful thing that this young elephant should be so devoted to his mother, so just and noble, that during all these many days he has not taken food or drink because of his grief for her. There are not many men in whom it would be easy to find such qualities as these of the young elephant's. It is not well nor fitting for us to harm such fine creatures as this." Then he said to his chief ministers, "Let this young elephant go free. Let him go to the wood from which we took him. Let him be united with his mother of whom he is so thoughtful, so that he do not starve to death here and we become to no purpose guilty of wrongdoing." Thus by the king's command the elephant was led to the borders of his forest and set free.

When he had gone to the forest he took no food or drink whilst he was searching for his mother. And she was weeping in her grief because she missed her son and was blind. The young elephant, falling to find his mother, went up to the top of a hill and uttered an elephant's cry. When he had thus roared loudly, his mother recognised his voice, and she said, "That is the voice of my son." And she in her turn gave a loud roar. He recognised his mother's voice and went to her.

His mother was sitting by a pool of water, sightless, groping about, her body covered with mire, when she heard the sound of her son's voice. Then the young elephant cut off some tender creepers, and with them he groomed his mother and wiped off the mire from her body. Filling his trunk with water from the pool, gladly, joyfully and happily he washed his mother.

Thus she was washed, her eyes bathed, all mire wiped off her, and all dirt removed. She became spotless and clean, and her sight was restored. Then the elephant beholding her son in joy and gladness asked him, "My son, where did you go, leaving me in my helplessness and blindness?"

Then he told his mother in full all that had happened, how he had been caught and then set free. She said to her son, "So, my son, may the king of Kāśī and his people rejoice as I rejoice to-day at the sight of my son."

It may be again, monks, that you will think that at that time and on that occasion the king of Kāśī was somebody else. But you must not think so. And why? Nanda here (133), my brother on the father's side, was the king of Kāśī, and I was the young elephant. Mahāprajāpati Gautami was the young elephant's mother. Then, also, through grief for me she became blind, and through me she regained her sight. And on this other occasion, too, Mahāprajāpati Gautami became blind through grief for me, and through me she had her sight restored."

Here ends the Jātaka of the Female Elephant.

---

1 Vijñāpṛpta. See vol. 2, p. 201, n. 4.
2 Ajāneya. See p. 118 n. 6.
4 Mellitū. See vol. 1, p. 308, n. 1; 2, p. 405, n. 1. See also B.H.S.D.
5 See D.P.N.
6 But is followed by a metrical, and a more primitive version.
Put all distractions away, and all of you listen with undivided attention as I relate how arduous and thrilling the Bodhisattva's career was.

Even when he was an elephant in the world of beasts he was kind to his mother. How much more should I celebrate him as a man,\(^1\) venerable and wise?

Willingly I relate, as I have heard it said by my teachers, how Bodhisattvas the world over are affectionate, good-natured and devoted.

It was on the slope of the lower Himalayas, on pleasant Cāṇḍagiri, which was adorned all over with the retreats of austere men:

The haunt of many Kinnaras, elephants, apes, monkeys, boars, leopards and tigers, the resort of stags and buffaloes and deer, and where bulls, yaks and sambaras\(^2\) roamed.

All that fair wood was pleasant with the sweet songs of pairing birds, peacock, pheasant, partridge and cuckoo.

(134) Everywhere there gleamed lotus-pools swarming with swans, and on the farther bank were ducks dripping with water, and wallowing\(^3\) herds of elephants.

Here around a tree where bees made honey from pollen-laden flowers there flocked in play vari-coloured gazelles and birds.

There the fair wood was graced by venerable ascetics whose delight was in the joy of meditation and who had entered the stream,\(^4\) and by others whose delight was in their studies.

There the fair wood was graced by the sight of young men with long matted hair and dressed in antelope-hides and bark, carrying various fruits and roots.

And in that delightful wood was an elephant, the best of his breed, devotedly tending his mother who was blind and was aged and weak.

But once, whilst he was roaming with the elephant herd and had strayed far away, the king with his army happened to be out hunting for elephants.

---

\(^1\) Reading manuṣyabhūtām for -bhūtā.

\(^2\) A kind of deer, now called sambar.

\(^3\) Viṣṇuṭhita, BSk. and Pall. Sk. viśnūṭhita. See P.E.D. s.v. viśnūṭhīna.

Not in B.H.S.D.

\(^4\) Literally "gone to the cascade", nirṛṭaragata, a strange expression which seems to occur only here, and is assumed to be synonymous with nirṛṭapanna, "a stream-winner," or one who has entered on the first stage of the Way. See vol. 1, pp. 82, 94, 137, 138, 201, and notes.

---

The king's son saw this sterling elephant and excitedly he spoke, "O king, I have seen a noble elephant, the best in all the herd, with all fine qualities endowed."

And when the king of Kāśī had seen this noble elephant who was a lord among the herd, he caught him and took him captive from the wood to the city.

But the elephant would not take food or drink, but kept on continually sighing. And the king of earth with gentle voice thus spoke to this jewel of an elephant.

"Fair elephant," said he, "do not become lean, but accept this food and drink this water. I would have you to be happy in this fairest of all cities. So be not aggrieved."

(135) The best of elephants replied,

"O lord of men, I grieve not because of those fretting shackles, nor because of hunger and thirst. I have a greater sorrow than this, O king, and it is for this I grieve."

The king said,

"O fair elephant, what greater sorrow is yours that you care not for drink or food? This other greater sorrow tell me."

The young elephant replied,

"My mother is past her prime, old, advanced in years, and blind. Without my company, O king, she will die. That is why I grieve.

"To her who cannot see I used to give the lily's stalk and root, and then I would feed myself. To-day, she has no food, and that is why I grieve.

"And when her body was scorched by the summer's heat I would bring cool water from the shady forest and bathe her. But to-day there is none to ward her. And for this I grieve.

"Sightless she now roams the wood, her body covered with dust, crying, "Where is my son?" This is the greater sorrow I am this day afflicted with."

When the king heard this tender and pitiful tale of the elephant, with his face bathed in tears he spoke to the elephant, saying "One would search in vain among many men\(^1\) for such perfect goodness as this of yours, which causes such oppressing sorrow in your heart."

---

\(^1\) Literally, "among many men it would be hard to find," ekāteṣu manuṣyasya suddalabdhā.
[To his men he said:]

"Set the elephant free at once, let him roam the forest and tend the mother whom he reveres. (136) Let his mother be comforted and rejoice with her jewel of a son.

"The noble elephant’s mother, oppressed by pain and wounded by the shafts of grief, as she roams the wood makes it echo to her cries, as the thunder-cloud makes the sky re-echo.

"May mother and son be glad, and the beasts and the devas of the forest as well," said the king. "See to it, I bid you, that the sightless mother rejoice with her precious jewel."

The best of elephants, chased by hunters for his ivory and by tigers for his blood and flesh, was taken and brought to the capital of \"i\"isi.

The devas of the forest tell her that the best of elephants, endowed with the noblest qualities, had been caught by the king of Kāši and taken in fetters from the forest to the city.

"This," she said, "will surely mean my death, helpless and blind as I am. And that elephant, my good son, will also die through grief for me."

"For that elephant who wandered o’er the hills and through the leafy forest glades, will surely die through grief for me and his native glen."

[The king said:]

"And so, noble elephant, forasmuch as your mother had never cause to be angry with you nor was ever neglected by you, but was ever lovingly tended by you, so will release be yours.

"Forasmuch as, O valiant one, you did never eat your food of leaves and roots without first giving some to your mother, so will release be yours."

Then the noble elephant hurriedly went to his mother and affectionately spoke to her. He groomed her with tender creepers and cleaned her of dust.

---

1 Me, ethic dative.

2 Literally "entered" अविक्ष, aor. of अविष्ट, for अविक्षत. This and the next stanzas obviously break the continuity of the story, interrupting as they do the course of the king’s speech. As Senart remarks, इष्टम गाधोत्तामम, etc., are anomalously neuter. He also found it necessary to make many corrections before the text as given in the MSS. could assume the requiredmetrical form. It is more than likely that these verses are an ill-fitting interpolation from another version of the story.

(137) Said he, "I was bound in cruel fetters by the king of Kāši in his fairest city. But because of you, my blind mother, I was set free by the righteous king."

When she heard the noble elephant’s voice and felt his touch, she received her son with joy and gladness, her sight restored.

The female elephant said:

"May the king of Kāši and his people rejoice and be glad, as I to-day rejoice because of my son and my restored sight."

To-day she has her son and with her own eyes sees him, a noble elephant, as before among the crags and woods, the haunts of wild beasts.

The perfect Buddha, the prince of speakers, out of his knowledge of his former lives, related this jātaka to his monks.

"I was that noble elephant," said he, "and my mother was the female elephant. So to-day as well am I her son, and Gotami is dearly beloved of me."

"Thus do you who in the course of recurrent lives are brought to sorrow by love or hate, in order to give up love and hate live the life of dharma without thought of self.

Here ends the Jātaka of the Female Elephant.

---

THE CONVERSION OF THE ASURAS

Exalted Buddhas convert beings by means of three miracles, the miracle of magic power, the miracle of instruction, and the miracle of preaching the dharma. By means of these three miracles (138) many thousands of beings were converted to the Aryan dharma by the Exalted One in the Banyan Grove.

1 Anayana, voc. of the adj. for -e, or causal abl. of the substantive, for -āt(d).

2 I.e. Mahāprajñāpati.

3 Cf. vol. I, p. 238 (text) where for the third miracle dharmadesanā we have dharmadesanā, "mind-reading."
Then the Asura lords Rāhu,1 Vemacitrin2 and Mucilinda accompanied by sixty nayulas of Asuras carrying large and fragrant garlands, and many thousands of male and female Asuras decked out in full adornment and wearing jewelled ear-rings, came in the majesty and splendour of Asuras to the Banyan Grove at Kapilavastu. Standing in the air above the Banyan Park, they paid worship and honour to the Exalted One. With all kinds of perfumes, garlands, dances, songs, music and musicians skilled in playing all kinds of musical instruments, they honoured, venerated, esteemed, worshipped and revered the Exalted One. Then they turned their thought to the unsurpassed perfect enlightenment. "Ah," thought they, "may we become in some future time Tathāgatas, Arhans, perfect Buddhas, endowed with knowledge and conduct, Sugatas, incomparable knowers of the world, drivers of tameable men, and teachers of devas and men, as this Exalted One now is. May we become possessed of the thirty-two marks of excellence of a Great Man, the eighty lesser characteristics, radiant bodies, and the eighteen special attributes of a Buddha. May we become strong with the incomparable wheel of dharma as has now been done by the Exalted One. May we keep it for you, O Āśvakin, that you ask as to why the Benefactor of the world smiled. I will tell you the purport of it. Listen with undivided mind as I speak."

Exalted One rays of many different colours, blue, yellow, red, crimson, white, translucent, and golden, which lit up the whole Buddha-field, while hosts of devas from the lowest to the highest heaven came and saluted the Exalted One three times from the right, and then disappeared from before him.

Then the venerable Āśvakin3 came to the Exalted One, and raising his joined hands said to him, "It is not without cause, not without reason that Tathāgatas, Arhans, and perfect Buddhas smile. What, Lord, is the cause, what the reason of thy smiling?" And the Exalted One in reply to the venerable Āśvakin discoursed in verse on this aspiration of heart on the part of the Asuras.

Then the Lord of bipeds smiled, aware of the sublime thought of the Dānavas.4 Stretching forth his joined hands when he saw that smile on the Sugata's face, Āśvakin questioned him, saying,

"The Light of the world, the Sage supreme, does not smile without a cause. O Man supreme, tell the cause of the smile thou hast now given, O Benefactor of the world."

"To-day without a doubt the thought of the sublime enlightenment has been begotten by someone in this throng, and the Tathāgata aware of this one's mental disposition smiles his delightful smile."

(140) "Yet do I stand here perplexed at seeing the smile on the Sugata's face. O Man supreme, speak without delay and dispel the perplexity of those who are in doubt.

"That smile which the Light of the world did give when he saw the Dānavas worshipping him, declare the meaning of it, that, when they hear it, the host of the Asuras will be glad."

The Exalted One replied:

"Well is it for you, O Āśvakin, that you ask as to why the Benefactor of the world smiled. I will tell you the whole purport of it. Listen with undivided mind as I speak."

The Asuras here paid me honour, for they seek the

---

1 Rāhu was the Hindu demon of the eclipse of sun and moon, and appears as such in Buddhist legend. See D.P.N. for references.
2 The BSk. form (cf. Divy. 126, 148, LAL. VIST. 241) of the Pali Vepacitti, often mentioned with Rāhu and Mucilinda.
3 Āśvakin, that you ask as to why the Benefactor of the world smiled. I will tell you the purport of it. Listen with undivided mind as I speak.
4 Āśaya, BSk., Pali āsaya, for āsayaṃ, metri causa(?).
THE MAHA

supreme enlightenment. When they have left their lives as Asuras, they will pass to heaven and dwell there in joy a long time.

"And when they have dwelt in the devas' city for a long time, endowed with the five strands of sensual pleasures, they will come again to the world of men and will worship the Conquerors, the Lords of bipeds.

"For many a hundred-thousand kalpas they will again and again show honour to Conquerors; and then they will themselves all become Conquerors, triumphant over their foes, brilliantly arrayed in golden splendour."

When this proclamation about the Asuras was made, the world of devas and men became glad and exultant. And many a hundred-thousand beings then and there were established in the incomparable career.

Then Sambara, a lord of the Asuras, on that occasion spoke this verse:

"May I ever consort with friends like these. Observing this rule and because of it may we worship the Supreme of bipeds."

THE JĀTAKA OF NALINĪ

When the Exalted One had foretold of these sixty nayudas of Asuras that they would win the incomparable perfect enlightenment, and had established many thousands of beings in the Āryan ways, he dismissed King Sudhodana and his retinue. Then King Sudhodana and his retinue rose from their seats, bowed their heads at the feet of the Exalted One, and departed.

And when the night had passed, King Sudhodana had a plentiful supply of solid and soft food prepared. He had the

2 Anuttarayāna. But there is not necessarily any allusion here either to Hinayāna or Mahāyāna.
3 Literally, "observing which," yaṁ niśāmya.
4 Literally, "because of which," yaṁāgamya. For āgamya see vol. 1, P. 198, n. 2.
5 Fausbøll, No. 526.

THE JĀTAKA OF NALINĪ

city of Kapilavastu sprinkled and cleaned, cleared of dust, stones, gravel and pebbles, strewn with garlands of flowers, perfumed with pots of incense, gaily decorated, canopied, and festooned with streamers of silk. All the way from the Banyan Grove to Kapilavastu he stationed here and there actors,1 dancers, athletes, wrestlers, tambourine players, tam-tam players, clowns, dvīstvālas and buffoons. Thus, with great royal majesty and splendour he celebrated the entry of the Exalted One into the city.

Then with every manifestation of honour King Sudhodana led the Exalted One and his company of disciples into the royal palace. (142) And the Exalted One having entered the home of Sudhodana sat down on the seat appointed him, and so likewise did his company of disciples. King Sudhodana with his own hand regaled and served2 the Exalted One with exquisite and plentiful solid and soft food, as his friends and counsellors did the company of disciples. When the Exalted One had finished eating, washed his hands and put away his bowl, he instructed, roused and gladdened King Sudhodana with a discourse on dharma. He then rose from his seat and departed. Another day, Mahāprajāpatī Gautami entertained the Exalted One and his company of disciples; on another Yasodhara; on another, the women of the court, and on another the general body of the Sākyans.

Now when Yaśodhara had prepared the sweetmeats for the Exalted One and his company of disciples she invited the whole group of her relatives. The Exalted One with his awareness of the right time, opportunity, and occasion, and with his knowledge of the difference between individuals,3 dressed betimes, took his bowl and robe, and, escorted and honoured by his company of monks, entered the dwelling of Yaśodhara. He sat down on the appointed seat, as did also his company of monks. Then Yaśodhara, Rāhula's mother, and Mahāprajāpati Gautami and the group of their relatives regaled and served the Exalted One and his company of disciples with exquisite food, solid and soft. Yaśodhara put some excellent and exquisite sweetmeat, which was good in
mastered the five super-knowledges, achieved the four meditations, and had great power and influence.

Now it happened that in the last of the summer months he ate ripe fruits which were sweet as honey, and then being thirsty he drank too much water. Consequently he became troubled with wind and fever, and he passed water containing some semen into a stone pot. A certain doe, being thirsty, drank this urine under the impression that it was drinking water. The doe was ripe for conception, and while her mouth was smeared with the semen she licked the orifice of her uterus with her tongue. She became stupefied and conceived.

The seer was a man of kindly disposition, and the deer and birds (144) had no fear of him. Hundreds of them roamed about and dwelt in the neighbourhood of the hermitage. The doe also dwelt near the hermitage and roamed about there. In due time she gave birth to a human child. When the seer saw this he fell to thinking, “How is it that the doe, being a brute, has a human offspring?”

Now when seers concentrate their minds knowledge comes to them. So this seer concentrated his mind. “A while ago,” he reflected, “I ate too many sweet fruits and drank too much water. So my humours became excessive, and I passed water, which was mixed with my semen, into a stone pot. This doe, being thirsty, drank it under the impression that it was drinking water. Being ripe for conception she conceived. This child, therefore, is issue of my body.”

So carrying the infant in his cloak of antelope’s hide he took him to his hermitage, the doe following behind him. The seer cut the child’s umbilical cord with a knife, rubbed him with sesame oil, and washed off the impurities of the womb with sweet water. He put the child to the doe’s teat and she suckled him. He even put the doe’s teat in the child’s mouth.

1 Literally, “his wind and heat overflowed or became excessive,” abhiṣayaṇā vātānapā samayojitā. For abhiṣayaṇa from abhiṣyand, cf. vol. 2, p. 276 (text). See also B.H.S.D.
2 Literally, “he reflected,” driṣṭii pakṣa pakṣa on from pakṣa pakṣa.
3 Reading, with two MSS., driṣṭa for the text driṣṭa “when she was seen.”
4 Dānakūrīrtī from samanākarati, BSk., cf. Pali samanākarati.
6 Abhiṣayaṇa, see n. 1.

colour, smell and taste, in the hands of Rāhula, and said to him, “Go, give this sweetmeat to your father.” Rāhula went and put the sweetmeat in his father’s bowl. He then sat down in his shadow, and said to his mother, “Pleasant, mother, is the shadow of the recluse.” But Yaśodhārā said to the young Rāhula, “Ask for your father’s wealth.” So the young Rāhula said to the Exalted One, “Recluse, give me my father’s wealth.” The Exalted One replied, “Rāhula, leave home, then I will give you your father’s wealth.”

(143) The king, the women of his court and his Sakya retinue were thrilled, glad, and elated, and they said, “Rāhula is the Exalted One’s son. What fault can Yaśodhārā find in the discipline?” But Yaśodhārā decked herself out in all her finery, went to the Exalted One and asked him, “How can our noble son go out into the homeless life? Is it not possible for the Exalted One to make him change his mind?” The Exalted One, however, after he had finished his meal, washed his hands and put away his bowl, and instructed, roused, gladdened, and thrilled King Suddhodana, the women of his court, Mahāprajāpati Gautami, Yaśodhārā and all the court with a discourse on dharma, rose up from his seat and departed.

The monks said to the Exalted One, “Behold, Lord, how Yaśodhārā sought to entice the Exalted One with sweetmeats.” The Exalted One replied, “Monks, that is not the first time that Yaśodhārā sought to entice me with sweetmeats.” The monks asked, “Was there another occasion, Lord?” The Exalted One replied, “Yes, there was, monks.”

Once upon a time, monks, long ago, to the north of the city of Benares in the province of Kāśi, on the slopes of the Himalayas, there was a hermitage called Sāhanjani, which was peaceful, sequestered, remote, aloof from men. It was a fitting spot for seclusion, and abounded in roots, leaves, flowers and water. There a seer named Kāśyapa dwelt. He had

1 For the Rāhula episode cf. V. i. 82 and the references in I. B. Horner, Bk. of Disc. 4. p. 103.
2 Cf. vol. 2, p. 200, n. 2.
3 This, besides being the name of a Buddha, was also the name of several well-known seers or wise men, and is thus a fitting conventional name for a seer in story.
When the child happened to be lying down, the doe would roam about in the neighbourhood of the hermitage, and when she had drunk water she would come and suckle the child again, and lick him with her tongue. When the child could move about on its own feet he would grasp the doe’s teat for himself, and drink.

Remembering the saying "the one-horned beast wanders all alone," the seer gave the child the name of Ekaśringa. Now as his mother roamed about with the deer so did the seer’s son Ekaśringa, playing with the young deer. Wherever his mother wandered with the herd of deer there also wandered Ekaśringa, the seer’s son. (145) As he played with the young deer and wandered hither and thither, he came again with the deer and their young to the seer’s hermitage. There the seer gave him delicious fruits, good in colour, smell and taste. And when the seer’s son lay down in the hermitage they enjoyed themselves at the hermitage of the seer's son. When Ekasringa the seer’s son had reached many deer and their young lay down around him. When the seer's son lay down in the hermitage then his mother wandered with the herd of deer there also wandered Ekasringa, the seer's son. (146) As he played with the young deer, he served the sage with various dishes of roots, leaves, water and fuel. He massaged and bathed the seer and tended the sacred fire. He served the sage with various dishes of roots, leaves, flowers and fruits, and supplied him with water. He would first serve the seer and his mother, the doe, then he would take food himself. The seer showed his son the way to the meditations and the super-knowledges. So the seer’s son by constant application of vigilance, endeavour, effort and exertion realised the four meditations and achieved the five super-knowledges.

Thus the seer’s son, having realised the four meditations and achieved the five super-knowledges, grew up into a chaste youth, powerful and influential, and known among devas and men.

Ekaśringa, the seer’s son, lived in the hermitage of Sāhānjanī, on the banks of the river Ganges on the slopes of the Himalayas. Now in the city of Benares the king of Kāśi was without a son. In order to get a son he performed many elaborate sacrifices, saying, “It is in order that I may have a son.” But he did not succeed in having a son, although he had daughters in his large harem.

Then the king of Kāśi heard that on the banks of the Ganges there was a hermitage called Sāhānjanī and that a seer named Kāśyapa lived there. This royal seer who dwelt in that hermitage had a son, a seer named Ekaśringa, whose mother was a doe. The king said to himself, “What now if I were to give my daughter Nalini, a royal maid, to the young seer Ekaśringa? He would be a son to me, as well as a son-in-law.”

Then, monks, the king of Kāśi gave instructions to his brāhmaṇ priest and tutor, saying, “Go, priest, and give Nalini here, the royal maid, to Ekaśringa, the young seer. He will thus become my son-in-law.” Then, monks, the brāhmaṇ priest and royal tutor placed the royal maid Nalini and her attendants in a chariot drawn by horses, and taking with him a large quantity of food and drink, sweetmeats of various kinds, and solid and soft food, he set out for the hermitage of Sāhānjanī. When they arrived there they stopped in the neighbourhood not far from the hermitage. There Nalini

---
2 Anväita, past part. in middle sense of anväit = ripväit, but, as Senart remarks, the form is influenced by the analogy of amväit from amväit "to follow." Possibly, the sense meant to be conveyed here is "when the child could follow." See also B.H.S.D.
3 Or "quoting": = ti in ekacariśriyagaham jālantā (= jālam ti). The horned beast is here taken to denote the Indian one-horned rhinoceros (Rhinoceros unicornis), the lonely habits of which were proverbial and a type of the solitary lives of Pratyekabuddhas. See, e.g., the celebrated Khagavatsana-sūtra, vol. 1, p. 303 f. and n. p. 250, and the Pali version at Sk. 35 ff. The implied explanation of the name Ekaśringa thus rests on the child’s loneliness as a human among the brutes, and also on his destiny to live the life of a seer similar to that of a Pratyekabuddha. If this interpretation is correct, we need not, with Senart, doubt the correctness of the text. The Jātakas call the child Iisisinga, and in the same folk tale in the Rāmāyaṇa he appears as Rīṣyāśringa. J. trans., (5. 80), also refers to Bariam and Josaphat.
4 Anväya anväita. See n. 2.
5 Vijñākṛpā. See p. 128 n. 1.
6 Parivarisati, BSk. = Pali; Sk. pariśiṣ (viveś, uviśe, uṣṣa).

---
1 Iṣtī-prahriyā-sthānāni, lit. "sacrifice-ceremony conditions," (or positions), but the exact force of the last term in the compound is obscure, and it would serve no useful purpose to attempt to explain it, especially as the reading of two MSS. given in the footnotes shows that Senart has good reason to doubt the correctness of his restoration.
the royal maid played and laughed with her friends. But when the beasts and birds saw them play they were frightened and fled in all directions.

Then, monks, the young seer Ekaśringa asked himself, "Why are the beasts and birds frightened, and flee in all directions?" And, monks, Ekaśringa the young seer, came to where Nalini, the royal maid, was. He saw Nalini, the royal maid, adorned and attired in costly garments, and playing with her friends. (147) When he had seen her he again said to himself, "Beautiful are these seers, fine are their garments of antelope's hide, their braided hair, and girdles of antelope's hide." He considered the royal maidens, and he saw their girdles of antelope's hide shining with exceeding brilliance on their bodies.

Ekaśringa asked Nalini, "Are these beautiful antelope hides yours, and the braided hair, girdles, and neckbands?" Nalini, the royal maid, took Ekaśringa, the young seer, by the hand and said to him, "Yes, these beautiful antelope hides are ours, and the girdles, neckbands and bracelets." She then offered the young seer sweetmeats and drink, saying, "Here, eat this sweetmeat in my hand." He ate the sweetmeats and swallowed the drink. Now in the hermitage his sense of taste had been offended by the bitterness of the various fruits there, so as he ate these sweetmeats he was charmed by the exceeding sweetness of their flavour. And when he had drunk the various beverages he said, "Delightful are these fruits of yours, your beverages, your girdles of antelope's hide, your neckbands and your bracelets. We have no such exquisite food here in the hermitage."

Then, monks, Nalini the royal maid said to Ekaśringa the young seer, "Come, young seer, here are our portable huts. We go wherever we wish taking our huts with us. Come, enter my hut and I will show you my own hermitage." And Nalini mounted her carriage, held out her hand to Ekaśringa, and said, "Come, enter my hut, and I shall take you to my hermitage." But he, seeing the horses yoked to the carriage, said, "My mother is a doe, and here is a hut drawn by deer. (148) I will not enter it." Nalini, however, held on to the hand of Ekaśringa, the young seer. She clung to his neck, embraced him, kissed him, and strove to entice him. The young seer noted the various features of Nalini from her head to her feet. He saw that his and her braided hair were different. He saw that his form was different to hers; his girdle of rush was different to her girdle, and his bracelets were different to hers. But she made conversation with the young seer, won his confidence and inspired him with love. As has been said by the Exalted One.

By living together in the past and by kindness in the present, so is this love born, as a lotus is born in water. When it enters the mind and the heart becomes glad, the understanding man will be assured, saying, "She was happy with me in the past."

For a long time in the course of recurrent lives, a thousand koṭis of births, the two had had intercourse together as wife and husband. Therefore, as soon as they saw each other they fell in love. Then Nalini in her desire and love for Ekaśringa the young seer, gave him costly sweetmeats and solid and soft food to eat and choice beverages to drink. And when she had embraced him and kissed him, she stopped...
clinging to his neck, mounted her horse-carriage and returned to Benares. There she related all that had happened.

As for Ekaśringa, the young seer, he returned to his hermitage, where he sat thinking of the ravishing features of Nalini from her head to her feet. No longer did he fetch roots and fruits, nor water and wood. He did not sweep out the hermitage nor tend the sacred fire. (149) The seer, seeing that saying,

The seer’s son replied, “Hither there came a young seer from some other hermitage, accompanied by many other young seers. He was lovely and handsome, with beautiful braided hair, garment of antelope’s hide, necklaces, bracelets, and rush girdle. They had delicious fruits and drink, not at all like ours. They travelled in a hut drawn by deer. I saw them yonder in a part of the hermitage, and I and the young seer got to love each other. He fell a sound as he did so. This gave me a thrill. I am now sad on my neck and publicly put his mouth to my mouth, making of countenance as I think of him. Without him I have no joy in this hermitage.”

When the seer heard the lad he said to himself, “From the description the lad gives of their beauty those were not young seers. They must have been women.” Then to the young seer Ekaśringa he said, “My son, those were not young seers. They were women who seduce seers and keep them from their austerity. Seers should keep them at a distance, for they are a stumbling-block to those who would live chastely. Have nothing to do with them. They are like snakes, like poisonous leaves, like charcoal pits.”

As Senart remarks, this passage is metrical and should have been printed as a śloka; both cadence and sense would be better, however, by reading hiituvam abhisāhyāāyast (which is actually the reading in the Pali version) for dhvānam dhāyāyat.

1 Antāryāyakāra. See vol. 2, p. 39, n. 1.

2 Mā tehi śrīrām samām karohi, “do not make it equal (or common) with them.” Tahi, if correct, is masc. because of the point of view of the young boy. But it could also be fem., see Edgerton, Gram. § 21. 37.

3 Āśījñā. See vol. 2, p. 363, n. 3. But the translator would not now, in this case and in many others, so readily adopt the F.E.D.’s explanation of BSk. forms as Sanskritisation of Pali forms.

4 Angārahaśu, Pali angārahāśu.

Then the king of Kāsi said to his priest, “Plant miniature groves of Aśoka trees on the ships, with the trees laden with flowers and fruits. You are then to sail up the Ganges and go to that hermitage together with Nalini and her train. Take the young seer on board and bring him here.” The priest, in obedience to the king of Kāsi, made Nalini the royal maid and her companions embark on ships which were exceeding brilliant fore and aft and throughout. They had canopies stretched over them; they were carpeted with bright cloth, draped with festoons of fine silk, fragrant with incense, (150) and strewn with garlands of flowers. Sailing up the Ganges he came to the hermitage of Sāhanjani. He anchored the ships near the hermitage and sent Nalini the royal maid to the young seer Ekaśringa. “Go,” said he to her, “and fetch the young seer.”

Nalini the royal maid, with her companions, then disembarked, and sat down in the grounds of the hermitage lopping off various flowers and twigs of the trees. When the beasts and birds saw her they uttered each its own cry and scurried away from the hermitage in all directions. Now the young seer saw that the beasts and birds were frightened, and he came to the place. There he saw Nalini the royal maid with her companions lopping off the flowers and twigs of the trees. And when he saw her he went up to her. Even more than before did Nalini find pleasure at seeing the young seer. Even more than before did she cling to his neck, embrace and kiss him. He ate sweetmeats and various other kinds of things and drank costly beverages. He then went on board the ship with Nalini. She said to him, “These hermitages of ours can travel over the water.” Seduced in this way by her, he came by ship to Benares.

The priest married Nalini and the young seer by joining their hands. The young seer sat and dallyed with her, but did not have intercourse with her. He only saw in her a young seer who was his friend.
Then in company with Nalini he sailed on the ship to the hermitage of Sāhanjani. And the doe who was Ekaśringa’s mother saw him coming with Nalini the king’s daughter. She asked him, “My son, where have you been?” He replied, “I have been to the hermitage of this friend of mine. He is my friend. We went round the fire by the right with the water-pot and I took his hand.” But the doe said to herself, “Verily (151) this young seer does not realise that his friend is his wife, or even that she is a maid, while the young seer is a most excellent man who took her to wife when they went round the fire by the right with the water-pot and joined hands. Then who is there who will make the young seer aware of this and tell him that this is not a young seer, but the daughter of the king of Kāśi, named Nalini, and that she has been given him to wife?”

Now below the hermitage of Sāhanjani on the banks of the Ganges there was a hermitage of devout women ascetics. As the young seer was on the point of entering this hermitage he was stopped by the women. “You may not come into this hermitage,” said they. “You are a man, and this is a hermitage of women vowed to chastity. It is not permitted for a man to enter.” The young seer asked a woman ascetic, “What is a woman, and what is a man?” And she explained to him the attributes of a woman, adding, “This is not a friend who is with you, nor is he a young seer. She is a woman, named Nalini, a royal maid, daughter of the king of Kāśi. And you are a man born of a doe. Do you not know then that she has been given you to wife by the water ritual, that you are her husband and that you may not forsake each other?”

When he had heard the women ascetics, the young seer, together with Nalini, came to the hermitage of Sāhanjani and went to his father, Kāśyapa the seer, bowed at his feet, and he and Nalini told him all that had happened. The seer thought to himself, “The young seer cannot live here in the hermitage apart from Nalini. These two are bound to each other.” And he said, “My son, Nalini, the king’s daughter, was married to you when you called the deva of fire to witness, had the water ritual performed for you, and you joined hands together. You cannot forsake each other; go with her to the city of Benares.”

Now below the hermitage of Kāśi, being beholden to the conditions of time, died, and Ekaśringa ascended the throne of Benares. By Nalini he had thirty-two sons born in pairs as twins. When he had ruled his kingdom for a long time in righteousness, he anointed his eldest son as heir to the throne, and again took up the religious life of a seer. By constant application of vigilance, endeavour, effort and exertion after the manner of brāhmans he attained the four meditations and achieved the five super-knowledges. Thus passing beyond the sphere of desires, on the dissolution of his body he was reborn among the Brahmā devas.

The Exalted One said, “He who at that time was the seer Kāśyapa is now Śuddhodana. She who was the doe, monks, was Mahāprajāpati. He who was the king of Kāśi was the Śākyan Mahānāma. I was he who at that time was the young seer Ekaśringa. And she who was the royal maid named Nalini was Yaśodharā. Then, too, did she allure me by decking herself out in finery, just as she did on this other occasion.”

Here ends the Jātaka of Nalini the king’s daughter.

---

1 Sār. Benares.
2 The text has udahena, “with water,” simply. Water was used at many stages of the marriage rite, but the translation assumes that the allusion here is to the water-pot borne by a carrier who followed the pair as they went round the fire and sprinkled them with water at various points of the circumambulation. See e.g., the Gṛhya-sūtra of Gobhila, II. 13 and 2. 15 (S.B.E., XXX, pp. 43, 46).
3 Udahena, “with water.” See n. 2.
4 Śūtsukhakāna mārgena.
5 At the beginning of the tale the attempted allurement was said to be “by means of sweetmeats,” modakehi.
Long ago, in a large forest on the slopes of the Himalayas there was a hermitage belonging to Māṇḍavya, a seer who had realised the four meditations and achieved the five super-knowledges. The hermitage was well supplied with roots, fruits, flowers, leaves and water, and was the haunt of thousands of deer and birds.

Now, monks, it happened that in the last month of summer Māṇḍavya the seer ate ripe fruits which were sweet as honey, and drank too much water. So his humours became excessive, and he passed water containing some semen from the stone pot, under the impression that it was drinking water. And while her mouth was smeared with the semen she licked the orifice of her uterus with her snout. The result of men’s actions is unexpected. For that Doe became stupefied with that blood and semen, and she conceived. She roamed and wandered round the hermitage. In due time she gave birth to a little girl, who was beautiful, of distinguished mien, and possessed perfect beauty of complexion, yellowish like a slab of fresh butter.

When the doe was delivered of this young girl, the seer saw it happen. He reflected, “How comes it that this Doe, who is a beast, has a human offspring?” Now when seers who have the five super-knowledges concentrate their minds, understanding comes to them. Māṇḍavya the seer then, having the five super-knowledges and being greatly blessed, concentrated his mind. “Here in this hermitage,” thought he, “no other human comes and goes. This Doe was born here in my hermitage, and there are likewise hundreds of other deer and birds as well in this forest. As far as I know none of the Deer and Birds goes anywhere to any other forest, nor does any Deer or Bird come hither from any other forest. These Deer and Birds were born here in this forest, grew up and enjoy themselves in this forest, which is not frequented by man. But some time ago, in the last month of Summer, I ate some Over-ripe Fruits and drank too much cold water. Thus my humours became excessive, and I passed water mixed with my semen into a stone pot, and that was drunk by this thirsty Doe under the impression that it was drinking water. And thus she conceived. This child, therefore, is the issue of my body.”

Māṇḍavya the seer conceived a very great affection for the little girl. He carried her in an Antelope’s Hide and brought her to the hermitage, while the Doe followed behind. The seer cut the child’s umbilical cord with a knife. She was brought up as a human being, but for suckling she sat at the Doe’s

1 Anumuyuyiyitū, “without being questioned,” though Senart inclines to think that, in spite of the yuyy- the form is active. The next participle, too, is active in form, aparyayagāhitū “without scrutinising” (cf. Pali partiyagāhita). But the turn of the whole sentence is passive: so, though partiyagāhita. These indeclinable participles may in construction go with rajāta Suddhodanena, it is simpler in translation to take them as passives, as such participles can often be taken in our text.
2 I.e. in her former life as Nalinī, in the tale just related, though she is there said to have been sent away to be married.
3 The text, of course, repeats the whole statement.
4 See p. 139, n. 1.
5 Literally, “she was nourished with a human nourishment,” mānuṣikāya kalyāyāya kalyāvanitā, where kalyāyana is oblique case of kalyāya, nomen actionis, and kalyāvanīti, pres. part. pass. of kalyāvati, a BSk. and Pali formation from kli (= Sk. kārd, “to play”) and meaning primarily “to amuse oneself with, hence to fondle, to nourish.” See P.F.D. But apart from the fact that the development of meaning here assumed is rather improbable, some at least of the meanings of the word in BSk. listed by Edgerton, (B.H.S.D.) hardly bear out this etymology, and perhaps it is better, with Edgerton, to regard the origin as obscure.
teat. The seer, too, crushed sweet ripe fruit for her in his mouth, and from time to time rubbed her with sesamum oil and bathed her with pleasant water.

As she grew up the child made the wood a cheerful place, in company with the doe and the seer. Her mother would lick her with her tongue. When the child had grown big enough to move about\(^1\) on her own feet, then, wherever she put her feet, there, as a result of good karma stored up by her in previous lives, lotuses sprang up. (155) As the child roamed about all over the hermitage of the seer lotuses sprang up, so that it became lovely like a lotus grove. And among these lotuses the child would play, culling them with her hands as she moved among them. When the seer saw that as a result of the young girl's karma lotuses sprang up in her footsteps, he was amazed, and he exclaimed, "Ah, what magic power the young girl has, since wherever her footsteps fall there lovely and beautiful lotuses spring up! It must be that she is a virtuous child who gained the root of virtue in the past by making offerings to the worthy\(^2\) and planting the seeds of merit,\(^3\) since she has such great power." And the seer gave the child the name of Padumāватi.

As she grew up the child roamed all over the hermitage with her mother. Wherever the mother went roaming, there did the child roam with her, playing with the deer and their fawns. When she wanted food she came with her mother to the hermitage accompanied by the other deer and hinds and their fawns. When the child lay down in the hermitage, the young fawns, male and female, who had accompanied her in her wanderings, would lie down too. When they wished to go wandering again, they woke up the child with their snouts. Wherever the deer wandered and

---

2. *Dakṣiniyā*. See vol. 1, p. 61, n. 3.
3. Literally, "with good or meritorious deeds planted," *oreuptakulātīṣu*.

---

1. \(^1\) See p. 128, n. 1. 
2. *Abhyaṇgeti*, *sic* for *abhyāṇgeti*.
3. \(^3\) See vol. 1, p. 235, n. 4.
4. The text is corrupt here. It reads *tam praḍeṣam ujjhita* (? for *ujjhita*) "he left that place behind," which hardly makes sense. Senart suggests that we should read some verb like *utṣhita*, "set out." But comparison with a text describing a similar incident in the *Śyāmaka Jātaka* (2 p. 212, text) shows that the obscurity here is due to a careless abridgement of what may have been a conventional description of the over-eager huntsman. The latter passage reads, *ujjhita balavāhanā na kacca na praḍeṣam anuprīpta*, "he left behind his troops and no one had reached that place." The translation given above is made from the text of this latter passage.

5. \(^4\) *Plavana*, which is the reading of two MSS., and which, if correct, is for Sk. *pravāṇa*. But the quotation as given in vol. 2, p. 212 (text) has *pavāṇa*, which is the usual BSk. and Pali form, and which, in the Mheu. at least has the meaning of "wood" or "forest," whether analogically with, or actually derived from, *vana*. See e.g., 2. 361, 382 (text). At 3. 61 (text) *pravāṇa* has the regular Sk. meaning of "slope" or "prone." See vol. 2, p. 328, n. 3, and P. E. D. Also B. H. S. D.

---

1. \(^1\) See vol. 2, p. 202, n. 5.
2. *Plavana*, which is the reading of two MSS., and which, if correct, is for Sk. *pravāṇa*. But the quotation as given in vol. 2, p. 212 (text) has *pavāṇa*, which is the usual BSk. and Pali form, and which, in the Mheu. at least has the meaning of "wood" or "forest," whether analogically with, or actually derived from, *vana*. See e.g., 2. 361, 382 (text). At 3. 61 (text) *pravāṇa* has the regular Sk. meaning of "slope" or "prone." See vol. 2, p. 328, n. 3, and P. E. D. Also B. H. S. D.
And there in the forest glade the deer was caught. Now while King Brahmadatta was (157) tracking down that deer, there at a pool of water he saw Padumavati garbed in a cloak of antelope hide. She was carrying a pitcher of water and had a lovely lotus in her hand. She was lovely and handsome, with perfect beauty of complexion. Wherever she planted her footsteps, there charming and lovely lotuses sprang up.

And, monks, when King Brahmadatta had seen Padumavati the seer’s daughter he reflected, “Ah, what splendid magical power this girl has, since, wherever she plants her footsteps, there exceeding charming, lovely and beautiful lotuses spring up! Now who can she be? Is she a girl of the devas, or of the Nāgas or of the Kinnaras? Is she a human or a non-human? What if I were to go up to her and ask?”

Then, monks, King Brahmadatta went up to Padumavati the seer’s daughter, and said to her, “Madam, who are you? Whose daughter are you?” When he had so spoken, Padumavati the seer’s daughter replied to King Brahmadatta, “I, O king, am a seer’s daughter, named Padumavati, the daughter of Māṇḍavya, who subsists on roots and fruits, dwells in the forest, and lives the brahma-life.”

King Brahmadatta then said to Padumavati the seer’s daughter, “What kinds of food can you have living here in the forest, that your body has been so built up? Or what kinds of dress can you have that you have the appearance of being delicately brought up?” Padumavati the seer’s daughter replied to King Brahmadatta, stroking his garments while, “Our food,” said she, “consists of roots and fruits. Our clothes are of antelope hide, but not of such fine hide as these clothes of yours are.”

Then, monks, (158) King Brahmadatta reflected, “This seer’s daughter is unable to distinguish the sumptuous dress of a king. She does not know the difference between a seer and a king, nor between antelope hide and the rich dress of a king. Nor does she know what my horse is.” Yet, though she is the daughter of a seer, she is a right royal maiden who would be a fitting wife for me. But I cannot ask for her hand without the consent of Māṇḍavya the seer, not to speak of taking her hence from this hermitage to the city of Kampilla. Māṇḍavya the seer has great power, and with a curse could reduce me and my company to ashes. What if I were now by some means to try to entice Padumavati the seer’s daughter?”

Now, monks, when kings of olden days went hunting they filled a bag with rich barley cakes made with honey and ghee, sweetmeats and confections, and fastened it on the horse’s back behind the saddle. Thus when a king had been carried away by his horse till he was all alone in the woods, he would not die of hunger.

So, monks, on this occasion King Brahmadatta had a bag on his horse’s back tied behind the saddle with a strap, and filled with barley cakes made with honey and ghee, sweetmeats and confections. And King Brahmadatta drew out a sweetmeat from the bag and gave it to Padumavati. “Here, madam,” said he, “are some of our fruits.” She replied, “Sir, how much finer are your fruits than ours?” And when she had eaten the sweetmeat she said, “These fruits of yours are lovely, succulent and nice, while ours...”

---

1 This would seem to show that in the above dialogue there has dropped out an allusion to the king’s horse which, on the analogy of the “wild-boy-of-the-wood” theme in the previous tale, Padumavati would have dubbed a deer.
2 Yamalaka. Senart suggests a poche made of the material called yamali at Divy. 276 and Av. 1. 265. Possibly what is meant is one of twin (yama) bags or panniers slung on either side of a beast of burden. Cf. B.H.S.D.
3 The text here and at 2. 190 has ukkhārika, which Senart in a note on the former passage can only explain as being for ukkārika, “a poultice.” At neither of the two passages does such a meaning suit the context. The queried rendering, “dung,” after the Pali ukkāra, given in vol. 2 of this translation (p. 183), should now be amended. For it seems clear that ukkārika is for ukkārika, “a sort of sweetmeat made with milk, treacle and ghee.” (M.W.). See also B.H.S.D.
4 Pallāsa, or pariyāsa or paryāsa. The MSS. have paliīsa or paliṣa. Edgerton (B.H.S.D.) says that Senart’s emendation into pallāsa is probably right, and he cites the Prakrit form with the same meaning. It would now appear that the verb paliṁayati at vol. 2. 160 should be regarded as a denominative of pallāsa, rather than, with Senart, as a compound of pari-āṣati. See vol. 2, p. 150, n. 2.
5 Ukkādhāti. On the verb kadhāhi, see vol. 2, p. 72, n. 1. Edgerton (B.H.S.D.) adopts the form of the MSS., kāṭāti.
6 Mṛīṣa. See p. 150, n. 4.
are sour and bitter.” The king replied, “It is fruits like these that grow on the trees in my hermitage. If you wish to eat their like, come to that hermitage of mine.”

Then, monks, Padumāvatī the seer’s daughter said to King Brahmadatta (159) “I do wish to eat fruits like these. But wait a moment so that I can take this water to our hermitage, which is not far off, and tell my father that I am going to your hermitage.” So, monks, King Brahmadatta gave Padumāvatī some more sweetmeats, saying, “Take these to your father and tell him that you are going to be the wife of the seer in whose hermitage there are such fruits as these. But come back quickly. I shall be sitting here on the bank of the stream.”

Then, monks, Padumāvatī the seer’s daughter went to the hermitage of Māṇḍavya, put down the pitcher of water and presented those sweetmeats to her father, saying, “Eat these fruits, father, I am going to be the wife of the seer in whose hermitage such fruits are growing.” But, monks, Māṇḍavya the seer said to himself, “Now Brahmadatta, the king of Pañcāla, while following the chase here, has come near to this hermitage. He has given royal sweetmeats like these to Padumāvatī and she has eaten them. No longer can she live on the sour and bitter fruits of this hermitage. But Padumāvatī is a right royal maiden. What then if I were to give her to Brahmadatta to wife?” And so, monks, Māṇḍavya the seer said to his daughter Padumāvatī. “Of a truth, Padumāvatī, there are no fruits like these. Who has allowed you with fiery desires?” But Padumāvatī thought to herself, “These ‘desires’ must be the trees on which fruits like these grow.” And she said to her father, “If, father, the sweetness of the fruits of desire is like this, then will I eat them. The fruits we have here, large though they be, do not please me.” Māṇḍavya the seer replied to Padumāvatī, “Who gave you these fruits, Padumāvatī? What kind of young seer was he, and where is he now?”

(160) When this had been said, Padumāvatī replied to Māṇḍavya the seer and said “Father, the young seer is dressed in fine antelope hide, and he waits on the bank of the stream mounted on a deer. It was he who gave me these fruits. In his hermitage there grow fruits like these.”

Then Māṇḍavya the seer together with Padumāvatī went to King Brahmadatta. After he had greeted him he performed the water ritual¹ and gave him Padumāvatī, saying, “Your majesty, let her be your wife. Let her be considered worthy of your majesty, and do not put her away on the mere accusation of another and without trial.”

And so King Brahmadatta put Padumāvatī on his horse’s back, bade farewell to Māṇḍavya the seer and set out for Kampilla. His troops saw King Brahmadatta coming when he was still some way off and came to meet him. Then King Brahmadatta together with Padumāvatī the seer’s daughter alighted from horseback, and mounting an elephant with her he came to his own park in the city of Kampilla.

In the city of Kampilla Padumāvatī heard the noise of the great crowd. She saw the pleasant city with its high walls, turrets and round watch-towers. And when she had seen it, she asked King Brahmadatta, “Why, pray, do I hear the noise of seers and forest deer in this open space in the forest? And why do I see these tall grass-huts?” King Brahmadatta replied to Padumāvatī, “Yes, it is the voice of the seers and of the deer of the forest, and these tall grass-huts are ours.”

When he had come to his own park, King Brahmadatta with Padumāvatī alighted from the elephant’s back and entered the park. He gave instructions to the assembly of his counsellors, saying, “Ho, there, governors, quickly (161) fetch my priest, and clothes and jewels for Padumāvatī. Have all the way from the park to the palace decorated. Have a canopy stretched over it. Have it fringed with bright flowers, draped with festoons of fine cloth, made fragrant with incense, sprinkled and cleaned, and strewn with garlands of flowers. Here and there have players stationed, and actors, dancers, athletes, wrestlers, tambourine-players, clowns, dvistovalakas, buffoons, and performers on the naṭṭa.”²³

---

¹ Literally “gave her with water” (udakena). See p. 146, n. 2.
² Gṛāmaṇīka, Pali gāmaṇīka, gāmāni.
³ See p. 110 f., for all these terms, with the exception of the last.
⁴ Literally, “holders of the naṭṭa” naṭṭadarāṇī. Naṭṭa is a doubtful and inexplicable word. Also the neuter termination of a compound giving names of performers, and not those of the instruments, is strange, although it is true that our text has some other instances of neuter for masculine.
As soon as the king had spoken his counsellors saw to it that his orders were carried out. Then Padumāvati said to King Brahmadatta, “Where, my lord, is your abode, your fire, your hot water and your water-pot? Is it time for me to tend the sacred fire?” King Brahmadatta replied to Padumāvati, “Come this instant and at once. Fine antelope hides are being brought for you. Then when we have bathed together in the Ganges, we shall offer the fire sacrifice.” Then at that moment and that instant the king’s attendant counsellors brought the women of the court into the park, with clothes and jewels for Padumāvati. They brought also the brāhman who was the king’s priest and tutor. There came out the townsmen with their president at their head, the community of tradesmen with the chief merchant at their head, and all the eighteen guilds.

The counsellors, attendants, the foremost townsmen, brāhmans and Brahmadatta’s priest and royal tutor saw the king’s consort. They planted their footsteps, there lovely and beautiful lotuses sprang up. When the people saw this, they were thrilled, joyful and elated, and spoke of it to King Brahmadatta. “Your majesty,” said they, “never have we seen or heard of anyone having such magic power as this that Queen Padumāvati has. Well would it be, your majesty, if Queen Padumāvati was brought here the king has paid no attention to us. And now that she is about to give birth to a child, we are bound to fall on trouble and misfortune.” Then they asked Padumāvati, “Do you know how women bring forth?” She replied, “No, I do not.” The women of the court then said, "The desires of devas are fulfilled by their minds; those of kings by the word of command; those of rich men speedily and those of poor men by their own exertions."

Then King Brahmadatta together with the women of his court and Queen Padumāvati, escorted by his attendant counsellors and accompanied by a great crowd of people, in great royal splendour and majesty came from the park and entered the palace. The people saw all along the way from the park to the palace lovely and beautiful lotuses springing up from each succeeding pair of Padumāvati’s footprints. And when they had seen this they gave vent to a shout of joy. “King Brahmadatta,” cried they, “is meritorious, seeing that he has won such a jewel of a wife.”

The king went up with Padumāvati to a room on an upper floor, and being possessed of and endowed with the five strands of sensual desires, he dallied and amused and enjoyed himself with her. He taught Padumāvati how to drink, play the dice and sing and play. Being infatuated with her he paid no attention to the other queens. And Padumāvati cohabited with King Brahmadatta and she became pregnant.

When in due course the time came for the queen’s delivery, King Brahmadatta ordered the chamberlains of the harem, who were skilled in the duties pertaining to women, to take Padumāvati away. The king sat down with gold and silver and various kinds of garments laid out in front of him, and said, “To those who will bring me the news that Padumāvati has been safely delivered, I will give a reward.” But the other queens said among themselves, “Ever since Padumāvati was brought here the king has paid no attention to us. And now that she is about to give birth to a child, we are bound to fall on trouble and misfortune.” Then they asked Padumāvati, (163) "Do you know how women bring forth?" She replied, “No, I do not.” The women of the court then said, power the queen has, and seeing it they would be well pleased.”

---

1 Padavātīkārāṇī ubhaya. Padavātīkāra, as in Pali, for padavatīkāra “taking over or exchange of steps.” The translation given above seems better than saying “on both sides of her stride,” for the other allusions to the phenomenon make the flowers grow from her footprints, and not beside the way she walked. Cf. B.H.S.D.
2 Sekhēti, a causal derivative from sakha, Pali sekha or sekhā, Sk. saikha, “to be trained.” A passive formation from the same stem is found at 2. 434 (text), sekhya “they are taught.” Cf. B.H.S.D.
3 Literally, “in intoxications”, madha.
4 Āchārdha for āchārdha. See p. 30, n. 2.
5 Eṣā praśajyamāni, nominative absolute, of which another example is found at J. 68, vandita kurmatu, etc.
“When a woman is giving birth she is blindfolded.” So she told them, “Do you then blindfold me, when I am giving birth.” Thus when it was time for her to bring forth she was blindfolded. She gave birth to twins who were lovely and beautiful.

Then the women said among themselves, “This queen was beloved and honoured by King Brahmadatta even when she was childless. How much more will she be so when she brings children to a childless palace? Since she has borne these twins she will become exceeding dear to King Brahmadatta. And he will pay no attention to her womb. She asked the women, “What did I give birth to?” The women steeped the two cauls in the dregs of the womb and brought them to Padumavati. “It is these that you brought forth,” said they. She replied, “Take them away. What can I do with them?”

Then King Brahmadatta asked, “What did the queen give birth to?” The women answered, “Your majesty, she bore a lovely and beautiful pair of twins, but as soon as they were born she devoured them. How, your majesty, could she be the offspring of a holy saint? Which in both the account of Queen Padumavati nor become sick with sorrow.”

1 Vayam, acc. pl., cf. Edgerton, Gram. § 20. 46.
2 Tāpāna. The meaning is certain, for the word is replaced below by a synonym manjūdattā. Senart does not know of any other instance of the word in this sense, either in Sk. or Pali. Divy. 342, 343. has tāpu, which Cowell and Neil hesitatingly render “cauldron,” but Burnouf, with greater correctness in Senart’s opinion, translates “pance,” or “coupé.” Senart thinks that both tāpu and tāpāna are collateral from the same stem, tap. See next note.
3 Literally, “they gilded it with (royal) gold and sealed it.” Tāpānyena tāpāyiyā tūpāyithe mudrayiti. Tāpāniya, however, is ordinarily an adjective, so that we should probably read tāpāniya, which in both Sk. and Pali means “refined gold.” Tāpāyiyā is causative of the verb tāpati, from which is derived tāpāniya, i.e. the burnt (or refined) metal. It is likely, therefore, as Senart suggests that tāpāniya and tāpu are from the same root tap, and denote a receptacle “en métal fondu ou souillé.” See B.H.S.D., however, where Edgerton says that tāpu in Divy., i.e. should be read tāpānu.
4 Allīpīla. See vol. 2, p. 419, n.
5 Pīśācīnī, a female pīśāca. See vol. 1, p. 74, n. 2.

believe us.” So the king went in to have a look at the queen. And he saw Padumavati (164) smeared with blood like an ogress. When he had seen her he was dismayed, and he said to his counsellors, “Go, have her put to death. I brought her here thinking that she was human. If she is a Pīśācīnī or a Rākṣasī I’ll have nothing to do with her.” Thus she was thrown out of the palace.

Then she asked the counsellors, “Where are you taking me?” They replied, “You are being sent away by King Brahmadatta to be killed.” She asked them, “What offence have I given King Brahmadatta that I should be sent away to be killed?” The counsellors replied, “You bore two young ones and then devoured them. So the king thinks you are an ogress and is sending you away to be killed.” She said, “No, I did not bear two children. I asked the women, and they said I had borne two cauls. I bid them take these away at once. I did not then bear two children, nor did I devour them.”

Now these counsellors were wise, and familiar with the knavish wiles of women. They said among themselves, “Padumavati here was loved and honoured by King Brahmadatta. But the situation as understood by these women was that, if Padumavati proved childless, she would be scorned and mocked at.” Then they asked Padumavati, “How were you delivered?” And she related the whole affair in detail to the counsellors. “When I was about to give birth,” said she, “these women blindfolded me. Thus I did not see my children. No more did I devour them. When I was delivered I asked the women what I had given birth to. And they brought me two cauls and told me that it was those that I had borne.”

Then the counsellors said among themselves, “This queen has been deceived out of jealousy, because she was loved and honoured by King Brahmadatta. We must see to it that King Brahmadatta (165) does not later feel remorse on account of Queen Padumavati nor become sick with sorrow.”

1 Rudhivamraksitena, sic(!) for rudhivamraksītām.
2 Rākṣasī is the word here, i.e. a female rākṣasa. See vol. 1, p. 73 n. 5.
3 Literally, “they were sent away just then,” to pi tatravatapuditi (see vol. 1, p. 308, n. 1, for this verb).
So Padumāvatī was concealed by the counsellors in the house of one of them, while the king was told that she had been put to death.

Now when the queens heard that Padumāvatī had been put to death they started flattering1 King Brahmadatta. They threw ghee and mustard into the fire,2 scattered the bali3 offering to the four quarters, performed expiatory rites,4 and said to him, "Fortunate are you, O king, in that you have escaped from the clutches of the ogress." At that moment the king, bathed and anointed, was amusing himself at a dance of the women.5 Some of the women played the lute, others the trumpet,6 others the tabour and others the flute. Some danced and others sang.

Then a certain female deva who was well-disposed towards Māṇḍavāya the seer, came flying through the air, said to King Brahmadatta, "Your majesty, it was on a false report,7 without a true knowledge and understanding, that you sent the innocent Padumāvatī away to be killed without examination and trial, and you forgot the words of the blessed seer."8 But King Brahmadatta's women on hearing the voice of the deva in the air, sang and played still more9 in order that the king should not hear the deva talking. He then stopped the women, saying, "Wait,10 until I know what this deva in the air is talking about." At this command of the king's the women fell silent, and the deva again said to the king, "Your majesty, it was on a false report that you sent the innocent Padumāvatī away to be killed without examination or trial, and you forgot the words of the blessed seer." King Brahmadatta, (166) paying heed to the deva, then questioned the women, saying, "Tell me the truth. Was it children that were born to Padumāvatī?" And the women on being thus questioned reflected,1 "Padumāvatī has been killed by the king's orders. The king can abandon us, too. Let us tell him the true facts." So they answered, "Your majesty, two children were born to Padumāvatī. We put them in a chest,2 which we sealed with the king's seal. We then threw the chest with the two children in it into the river Ganges. She never saw them nor did she devour them."

At this King Brahmadatta was sore distressed, and said, "I have put such an innocent jewel of a woman to death. I have not followed the instructions of such a blessed seer. I have lost my sons as soon as I had got them."3

Now that chest was carried down the river Ganges and was dragged out by fishermen who were netting fish. The fishermen saw that the chest was sealed with the king's seal, and they said among themselves, "We must beware lest this comes from a burglary at the royal palace.4 Then this chest will be searched for,5 and every mystery about it will be cleared up. Let us go then and take this chest to King Brahmadatta, lest, being taken for thieves, we be punished with the extreme penalty." So they came to King Brahmadatta bringing the chest with them, and said to him, "Your majesty, while we were netting fish in the river Ganges we dragged out this chest which was being carried down by the stream. It is sealed with the king's seal. We pray you, sire, to have a look at it."

Then, monks, King Brahmadatta said to his attendant counsellors, "Ho there, gentlemen, (167) find out what there is in this chest." The counsellors opened the chest and saw Padumāvatī's two children. They said, "Your majesty, in this chest are the lovely and beautiful children of Padumāvatī, boys the very image of your majesty. Queen Padumāvatī was innocent, but you, sire, sent her away to be killed without examination or trial."

---

1 Cātulāyati, BSk. Cf. Sk. cafu, "kind or flattering discourse." Not in B.H.S.D.
2 As a thank-offering for Brahmadatta's escape.
3 See vol. 2, p. 401, n. 6.
5 Sūkhojika. See vol. 1, p. 183, n. 3.
6 Literally "it was ill heard by you," duḥkhatante.
7 I.e. the admonition not to put Padumāvatī away.
8 Sūṣṭhutaram. Cf. Pali sūṣṭhutaram.
9 Āgāmeha. See vol. 2, p. 296, n. 4.
When King Brahmadatta saw the children and remembered the many virtues of Padumāvati, he fell to the ground in a swoon at the loss of such a jewel of a woman. The counsellors said among themselves, “We must see to it that the king comes to no bodily harm through his sorrowing over Padumāvati.” And to the king they said, “Your majesty, do not mourn for Queen Padumāvati. For your sake, sire, we harbour her and no harm has come to her. The queen is safe and has not been killed. We knew that some day we should have good news for you.” On hearing these words of the counsellors the king rejoiced. He asked them, “Where is Padumāvati?” They answered and said, “Yonder, in a certain house.”

Then the king went to Queen Padumāvati, and when he had come to her he strove in many ways to reassure her, saying, “What good fortune it is that you are this day rescued from destruction and reunited with me and your sons! Now your rivals would have had you killed. What is your pleasure that I should do to these enemies of yours? What punishments should they receive? It were best if by the king’s orders they should all go wandering in chains and clothed in hempen rags.” But, monks, Queen Padumāvati in tears said to King Brahmadatta, “Your majesty, do not deal harshly with these queens. They are senior to me. (168) Increase the subsistence provided for them, do not decrease it. Let things be as they were. Men reap the fruits of the karmas they have contracted when the proper time is come, just as the flowers and fruits of trees appear. And, your majesty, I was contracting these karmas both when I was being sent away by you to be honoured and esteemed by you, and when I was being sent to King Brahmadatta, “Your majesty, what have I, with my understanding, to do with kingdom, son, or wealth? I will go and take up the religious life again with my father. My father spoke to me, saying, “Padumāvati, who is alluring you with these desires which are as flame?” And now they do burn me as my father said when he spoke to me in his hermitage. Like any deer of yours I was taken from my father’s hermitage to be slain, innocent though I was.”

So Queen Padumāvati took up once more the religious life of an ascetic, and clad in red garments she came to the hermitage of Māṇḍavya the seer. But he was dead. His huts of grass and straw lay in ruins. Queen Padumāvati reflected, “Because of my persistence, I have had two losses. King Brahmadatta have I disowned, and now I am bereft of my father who is dead. What if I were now to live the life of a nun, wandering up and down the provinces and the royal cities?”

Thus as she wandered up and down the villages, towns and royal cities, Queen Padumāvati came to Benares, the city of King Krikī. And the king of Kāśi at Benares saw Queen Padumāvati within the city. On seeing her he sought by various means to seduce her. “Madam,” said he, “What have you, with your tender and fresh beauty, to do with the religious life? Here are trees lovely, beautiful and charming, laden with flowers and foliage. Come, let us take our joy in yonder grove.” When this had been said, Padumāvati the ascetic replied to the king of Kāśi, “Your majesty, you are wishing to enter fire when you wish to make love to one who has taken up the religious life and is established in dharma. Your majesty, I have no desire for sensual

---

1 Literally, “into what evil plight should they go?” kidriśam vyasanam nijacchantu, where the imperative for the potential is very strange. But Senart is far from satisfied with the text.

2 Sānam, gen. pl.

3 Sarvāḥ anuvārākī, literally “follow (or cling to) all things.”

4 Literally, “on reaching the time,” kālam kālamāśādyā, where the repetition of kālam appears to be otiose.

5 This verb is supplied in translation. The text is yathā dhrumaṁ pujrapahā. The yathā which begins this sentence should probably be translated as tathā. As the text stands yathā is untranslatable.

6 Morally her position in the two sets of circumstances was the same; in both she alone was responsible for the karma.

---

1 Reading vacasena for vacanā. The latter reading would give “my father’s words burn me.”

2 There is no verb in the text, only the ablative of separation dhrūmaṁ.

3 dhātuśriva.

4 See vol. 1, p. 252, n. 3; pp. 271 ff.

5 Praṇavajītāye sārdham . . . dharmāshtīda. An example of the juxtaposition of two variant forms of the oblique case of stems in -ā.
pleasures.” The king of Kāśi said, “If you are not willing, madam, I will take you by force.”¹ Padumāvatī replied, “If you take me by force, I will burn you with the power of my austerity² as fire burns dry grass.” When the king heard this he was frightened, and desisted. But she stayed on in the kingdom in ease and comfort.³ For the king said to her, “I shall entertain you with every kindness and care.”

Then King Brahmadatta came to the house of the king of Kāśi disguised as a brāhmaṇ. “Your majesty,” said he, “I am skilled at dice.” He joined the king and the queens in a game,⁴ and he accosted Padumāvatī and asked her, “Because of whose anger did you come here?” Padumāvatī replied, “It was because of your wrong-doing that I came here.” The king of Kāśi being at a loss asked King Brahmadatta, “I have never heard before of such a way of playing on the chequer board.” Who are you, and what is she to you?” King Brahmadatta replied, “I am Brahmadatta, king of Pañcāla, and she who is here is Padumāvatī my wife.” When this had been said, the king of Kāśi said to King Brahmadatta, “Hail and welcome to you, your majesty. Lead away your queen. I shall escort you with a well-arrayed army.”⁶

Thus Brahmadatta, king of Pañcāla, with an army of the four divisions, and mounted on horseback, in great royal majesty and splendour brought Queen Padumāvatī from Benares once again to the city of Kampilla. Now when Queen Padumāvatī had been sent away by King Brahmadatta to be killed without examination or trial, although she was innocent. And on this other occasion also⁵ was she sent away by King Śuddhodana to be killed without examination or trial, although she was innocent.

Here ends the preliminary story³ of Padumāvatī.

EARLIER HISTORY OF PADUMĀVATĪ

The monks asked the Exalted One, “Lord, as the maturing of what karma did lotuses spring up in the footsteps of Padumāvatī, while when she had been sent away by King Brahmadatta to be killed they stopped doing so, but sprang up again in her footsteps when she was brought by King Brahmadatta from Benares to Kampilla?” The Exalted One replied, “It was a maturing of the karma here described.”³

Once upon a time, monks, long ago, in the city of Benares, the servant of a certain householder was entering the city from without with a pitcher of water from the lotus-pool and carrying a lotus in her hand. (171) Now it happened that a certain Pratyekabuddha,⁴ who had been going round the

¹ I.e. as Nalini. See p. 148, n. 2.
² Parikalpa. See vol. 2, p. 175, 200.
³ Literally, “this maturing of karma,” and the text goes on to repeat the whole circumstances mentioned in the question.
⁴ See vol. 1, p. 40, n. 3.
city of Benares seeking alms, was hurrying out of the city. He was graceful in deportment, graceful in advancing and withdrawing, and devas and men were devoted to him. When the girl saw the Pratyekabuddha her heart was filled with trust. And out of the trust in her heart she gave her lotus to the Pratyekabuddha, who in order to please her accepted it. The girl saw the lotus shining exceeding bright when it was in the Pratyekabuddha's hand, but she saw her own hand withering. She asked the Pratyekabuddha to return the lotus to her, saying, "Sir, give me back my lotus." The Pratyekabuddha gave the lotus back to the girl again, saying, "Here you are, madam." And she took the lotus once more from the Pratyekabuddha's hand. Then she saw her own hand shining as it held the lotus, while the Pratyekabuddha's hand was withering. She was filled with remorse, and she said, "That was not a bright deed of mine when I took back from this seer the lotus which I had given him out of the trust there was in my heart." So she gave the lotus to the Pratyekabuddha once more, saying, "Sir, accept this lotus of mine once more, and have pity on me." Thus was the girl's lotus received by the Pratyekabuddha once more.

The Exalted One said, "It may be again, monks, that you will think that at that time and on that occasion that girl from Benares was somebody else. But you must not think so. And why? Padumavati, monks, was that girl from Benares. Because she gave that lotus to the Pratyekabuddha in the trust of her heart, as a maturing of that karma lotuses sprang up in Padumavati's footprints. Because she took back the lotus from the Pratyekabuddha, as a maturing of that karma the lotuses ceased springing up in her footprints when she was ordered by King Brahmadatta to be killed. (172) Because she gave the lotus once more to the Pratyekabuddha, as a maturing of that karma the lotuses again sprang up in her footprints when King Brahmadatta led her from Benares to Kampilla."

Here ends the story of a former birth of Padumavati.

RAHULA IN A FORMER LIFE

The monks asked the Exalted One, "Lord, as a maturing of what karma was Prince Râhula's stay in the womb as long as six years?" The Exalted One replied, "This long stay, too, was the maturing of an old karma."

Once upon a time, monks, long ago, in the country of Videha, in the capital city of Mithilâ, there was a brâhman king. He had two sons, Prince Candra and Prince Sûrya. Sûrya was the elder and Candra the younger.

Now, monks, this brâhman king of Videha passed away when his time was up and his karma was exhausted. Then Candra said to Sûrya, "You are the elder, take over the kingdom. As for me I will leave home to take up the wandering life of a seer." But Prince Sûrya replied to Prince Candra and asked, "What is a king's duty?" Prince Candra answered and said, "The king has to give orders to his people." Sûrya said to Candra, "My boy, I, your king, order you to become king, while I will leave home and take up the religious life of a seer."

Then, monks, Prince Sûrya anointed Prince Candra as

---

1 Pârśvayoga, "former association," i.e. circumstances in a former birth, and especially association with a former Buddha or Pratyekabuddha.
2 The only other allusion to this circumstance of Râhula's birth appears to be that in the Chinese life of the Buddha composed or translated from Indian sources about A.D. 588, and entitled Fo-pen-king-sik-k'ing. See Beal: Romantic History of the Buddha, p. 360.
3 The text has only vaiśo, i.e. vai = eva + eso. "this too."
4 See vol. I, p. 239, n. 2.
5 But they are first mentioned in the opposite order according to the convention in Buddhist texts to name the moon (candra) before the sun (sûrya).
7 Literally, "what is to be done by a king?" kiñc râjâ (so read for râjâm) karlavayam.
king in Mithilā, and left home to take up the wandering life of a seer. And he, by living constantly in application to watchful endeavour accomplished the four meditations, achieved the five super-knowledges, and became a seer of great power and influence. (173) Those who had been Sūrya's attendants when he was a prince, also left home to take up the wandering life of seers with him. They all achieved the four meditations and the five super-knowledges, and came to have great power and influence.

Sūrya the seer said to himself, "Now I have achieved the four meditations and the five super-knowledges, and these attendants of mine have done so also. What if I were now to endeavour to reach a further distinction?" And he resolved not to drink water which had not been given him, not even as much as could be held on a toothpick. But, monks, on one occasion Sūrya the seer, through a lapse of mindfulness, drank water from another seer’s jar when it was not given him. When he had drunk it, the memory came to him that he had made a vow never to drink water which had not been given him, not even so much as could be held on a toothpick. "And now," said he, "here have I, through a lapse of mindfulness, drunk water from this seer’s jar when it was not given me. I am a thief, and hence I am guilty of wrong-doing." I committed a theft in drinking water from another’s jar when it was not given me. I am a thief, and hence I am guilty of wrong-doing.

Then, miserable and dejected, he rose up from his seat and sat on the ground. The young monks, on one occasion, when he was a prince, also left home to take up the wandering life of seers with him. They all achieved the four meditations, the five super-knowledges, and these attendants of mine have done so also. What if I were now to endeavour to reach a further distinction? And he resolved not to drink water which had not been given him, not even as much as could be held on a toothpick. But, monks, on one occasion Sūrya the seer, through a lapse of mindfulness drank water from another seer’s jar when it was not given him. When he had drunk it, the memory came to him that he had made a vow never to drink water which had not been given him, not even so much as could be held on a toothpick. "And now," said he, "here have I, through a lapse of mindfulness, drunk water from this seer’s jar when it was not given me. I am a thief, and hence I am guilty of wrong-doing." I committed a theft in drinking water from another’s jar when it was not given me.

Then, miserable and dejected, he rose up from his seat and sat on the ground. The young brāhmans approached Sūrya the seer and greeted him. But, monks, Sūrya the seer said to them, "Young men, do not greet me." They said to him, "Master, why should we not greet my elder brother, Sūrya the seer, when I see him?" Then, monks, Sūrya the seer said to King Candra, "I am a thief, O king, I drank another man’s water. So impose on me the penalty of a thief.

But, monks, King Candra replied to Sūrya the seer, "I grant you a pardon, my good man. The water which you drank was as much yours as it was ours. Have no misgiving." Sūrya the seer replied, "Young men, you know that I made a vow that I should never drink water which was not given me, not even as much as could be held on a toothpick. But now I have drunk water which was not first given me. I have become a thief. Impose on me the penalty due from a thief." The young men said, "Master, we are not fit to impose a penalty on you. But there is your brother, King Candra. Go to him. He will impose a penalty on you."

So Sūrya the seer went to the capital city of Mithilā and to King Candra. And King Candra heard that his brother had come to Mithilā. With an army of the four divisions he went to meet him. When he came to him, he alighted from his carriage and greeted him. But Sūrya the seer said to King Candra, "Your majesty, do not greet me any more." When this had been spoken, King Candra said to Sūrya the seer, "Why, my good man, should I not greet my elder brother, Sūrya the seer, when I see him?"

Then, monks, Sūrya the seer said to King Candra, "I am a thief, O king, I drank another man’s water. So impose on me the penalty of a thief.

But, monks, King Candra replied to Sūrya the seer, "I grant you a pardon, my good man. The water which you drank was as much yours as it was ours. Have no misgiving." Then Sūrya the seer addressed King Candra in verse:

"O king, I cannot shake off this feeling of guilt. Well would it be were I punished with the punishment of a thief."

(175) Then the son of King Candra of Videha, and the nephew of Sūrya, said to his father, "Sire, let a penalty be imposed on the seer so that he can shake off his guilty feeling. Let not the seer pine away with remorse." King Candra

---

1 Udaakaṃ dantākṣijam pi "water of a toothpick." So interpreted by Senart, who calls attention to the different interpretation in the Chinese version, in which the two words are, according to Beal, rendered "water or even a toothpick."

2 Śnṛtiśaṃmohā. Cf. Pali sātisammospa.

3 Literally, "wrong-doing has arisen in me," kauhrīyaṃ uppannam.
reflected, "What kind of penalty can I impose on Sūrya the seer so that he may be rid of his feeling of guilt?" Then he had a grove of Aśoka trees sprinkled and swept; had a high couch arranged there, solid and soft food brought and royal sweetmeats hung on the branches of the trees. He said to Sūrya the seer, "Go, my good man, and sit down there in the grove of Aśoka trees. For there you will find solid and soft food, and a couch arranged for you. There I give you leave to enjoy yourself in comfort." And King Candra kept Sūrya the seer in the grove of Aśoka trees for six nights.

When the six nights were past, King Candra reflected, "How can I rid Sūrya the seer of his feeling of guilt, and let him go?" And, he said to himself, "What now if I were to proclaim a general amnesty?" So, monks, on the seventh day King Candra proclaimed a general amnesty. And the counsellors said to Sūrya the seer, "Go, good sir, your punishment has been remitted. For King Candra has proclaimed a general amnesty." Thus rid of his feeling of guilt he went once more to his hermitage.

The Exalted One said, "It may be, monks, that you will think at that time and on that occasion King Candra was somebody else. Prince Rāhula here was then he. I was he who was then Sūrya the seer. Because Sūrya the seer was confined in the Aśoka grove for six nights, as a maturing of that karma Prince Rāhula's stay in the womb was six years long."

Here ends the story of a former birth of Rāhula the Fortunate.3

THE ORDINATION OF THE FIVE HUNDRED ŚĀKYANS

(176) King Śuddhodana called the Śakyans together and said to them, "Gentlemen, if Prince Sarvārthasiddha4 had not left home and wandered forth to the homeless life,5 he would now be a universal king, sovereign over many thousand kings, and you all would be his followers. But if he has now renounced his universal kingship, left his home in a kṣatriya family, wandered forth into the homeless life and awakened to the unsurpassed perfect enlightenment, and if he, a kṣatriya, has a following of brāhmans, then that would not6 be fitting." The Śakyans said, "Sire, ordain what is to be done." King Śuddhodana said, "Let one young kṣatriya from each family leave home. Where there is only one son, he is not to go. Where there are two brothers, let one go, and where there are several brothers, still only one is to go. Cast votes7 as is generally8 the custom among the Śakyans9 when they send10 their young away to take up the religious life." So they cast votes to select one man from each family as was generally the custom among the Śakyans. When King Śuddhodana had thus ordered that the Śakya youths, one from each family, should leave home for the religious life, but that where there was only one son he should be exempted, such a selection of one son from each family resulted in five hundred young Śakyans going forth to the religious life.11

Now Śuddhodana had two sons, the Exalted One and Sundarananda.8 As the Exalted One had already left

---

1 Jonesia Aśoka.
2 Literally, "to have a setting free of all bonds made," sarvabandhanapramokṣaya kārāpeyam.
3 Rāhulabhadra, Pali Rāhulabhadda, see e.g. Thag. 295 f.
4 A variant of the more usual Siddhartha.
5 The whole paragraph, syntactically, hangs badly together. Yadi, "if" has no finite verbs, but only past participles; the apodosis is introduced by tam,"then," and has the finite verbs bhavet and bhavetha. Immediately following is another conditional sentence introduced by sace, "if," (as in Pali), which again has participles for finite verbs; and besides, does not appear to be complete. For the apodosis, with which the paragraph ends, really belongs to a third conditional clause introduced by the coordinating ca, "and." In his notes Senart is inclined to prefer so ca for sace. In that case, the whole paragraph consists of a series of conditional sentences introduced by yadi. The Śakyans, of course, were not brāhmans.
6 No, negative.
7 Salābhāni cāretha. Cf. Pali salabhāni gāketi or vāreti.
9 Śākyanāyasya utpadyatī; so read for utpadyatin. But Senart takes kahatā. . . utpadyatī as a clause of purpose, d'elaçon qu'il vient à l'esprit.
10 Literally, "to send etc.;" reading, with Senart, prāvrājitum for prāvrājitaum.
11 Literally, "with that one man from each family, five hundred young Śakyans went forth, etc.;" tena kulapuruṣaṁ pañca umārālatā abhinibhyamanī.
home, Sundarananda was excused. Suklodana's sons were Ananda, Upadhana and Devatatta. Of these Devadatta went forth. Ananda also wanted to leave home but his mother Mrigi, a Sakyan woman, would not let him. So he went to the country of Videha (177) and lived there under a vow of silence. Sukrodana's sons were Nandana and Nandika, and these went forth. Amritodana's sons were Anuruddha, Mahanama and Bhattika. Mahanama asked Anuruddha, "Will you go forth, or will you think of your duty at home?" The meritorious Anuruddha asked him, "What is the duty of one who goes on staying at home, and what is the duty of one who has gone forth to the religious life?"

(The meritorious Anuruddha, in the possession and enjoyment of the five strands of sensual pleasures, played with the women at their dancing. At night when the sun had set one thousand lamps were lit for him. Once, in order to test whether he was befuddled or not, only nine hundred and ninety-nine were lit. But so clear was his sight that, when those nine hundred and ninety-nine lamps were lit, he was aware that all the lamps were not burning. And all the servants in attendance were amazed. "Ah!" said they, "how perfectly clear is the young man's sight. For when the thousand lamps were short of one, he detected that the light was imperfect.")

---

1 See Vol. I, p. 298, and so for other brothers of Suddhodana mentioned here.

2 Senart refers to Kern: Der Buddhisimus, I. p. 310, for the distinction between Suklodana and Sukrodana.

3 This is contrary to the instructions of Suddhodana.

4 In vol. I, pp. 54, 59 (trans.), as in northern Buddhist texts generally, spelt Aniruddha.

5 Usually called Bhatrika. In the Pali texts he is called Bhaddiya. See D.P.N. and I. B. Horner: Bk. of Disc., vol. 5, p. 255 n.

6 The "deeds of merit" performed by Anuruddha in previous lives as a result of which he came to be pre-eminent among those possessing the deva-eye (A. 1. 23) are recounted, e.g., at AA. 1. 189-90 and DA. 4. 144 ff. The story here related seems to be peculiar to the Mahavata. It is clearly an interpolation taken from some account, probably commentarial, of Anuruddha in a former life, and inserted in the text in order to explain the epithet "meritorious" (pucchymanta). As the interpolation breaks the sequence of the present narrative it is enclosed in brackets in the translation.

7 Reading nam for na (sic).


9 Moharase and moharase. But the former word is Senart's very doubtful restoration for the impossible makhara and moharase of the MSS.

---

1 He then asked his elder brother Mahanama, "What is the duty of one who stays at home, and what is the duty of one who has gone forth to the religious life?" His brother replied to him and said, "He who stays at home must rise betimes to give morning greetings to the king and the Sakya chieftains. He must look after their beloved ones, and make due offerings to the dead. He must supervise the people of the household, the female and male slaves and the servants. He must see to it that they get food and emoluments, and extra holiday pay on all holidays. (178) He must see to it that the elephants, horses, goats, cows, sheep, chariots and carriages are looked after. He must see to it that land and property are carefully guarded. He must regularly inspect all the work that is being done. He must see to it that the fruits are brought in. He must see to it that the various crops are sown, enclosed and inspected. When the crops are ripe he must see to it that they are reaped at the right time, brought to the threshing-floors and winnowed. He must perform every household duty, both indoors and out of doors.

Anuruddha then asked, "What is the duty of one who has gone forth to the religious life?" Mahanama replied, "In the mornings he must go in quest of alms. When he

---

1 Senart refers to Kern: Der Buddhisimus, I. p. 310, for the distinction between Suklodana and Sukrodana.

2 Literally, "(the hope that they have had) a comfortable night must be given by him having risen at daybreak," kaluta evotthithena ... sukharati dātayā. At Cullavagga VII (V. 2. 179) the duties of a householder as described by Mahanama to Anuruddha are entirely agricultural. For a similar list of occupations cf. J. 1. 215; A. 1. 241 and I. B. Horner, Bk. of Disc., 5, p. 253 n.

3 Veselataya, from veseti, "to manage, supervise, etc.," caus. of denom. to veseti = Amg. veshti = Sk. vesiti, "labour (forced)," "work." See Edgerton B.H.S.D.

4 Literally, "they are to be considered with," samanuvāhitravāya, gerundive of samanudhrarati. Cf. the Bsk. use of this verb in the sense of "to concentrate the mind on," "to pay attention to" (Pali, samanudharati).

5 Aschāda, "reward." See p. 36, n. 2.

6 ? Vayyakarmena utsahihena pāriyayayihena.

7 Vesāpātivāya. See n. 3.

8 Paddapātivāya, Pall opunāpetabbā (Cullavagga VII), gerundive of the causative of lā.

9 Or "follow," anuvātāya, from avati (piṇvati), which here is obviously taken as equivalent in meaning to anveti (anu-i). See p. 140, n. 2.
has properly made a meal with the food obtained,\(^1\) whether it be coarse\(^2\) or fine,\(^3\) he must then control and calm and extinguish his own self."\(^4\) Anuruddha said, "No householder's life for me. You practice it. I will go forth to the religious life."

Then the Śākyan young men to the number of five hundred, with great royal majesty and splendour, each according to his means, left home. Some rode on elephants with trappings of gold and hoofs like coral;\(^5\) others in golden palanquins studded with divers precious stones; others in golden chariots drawn by four horses, covered with a network of jewels, beflagged, merrily rattling along with sunshades and penmons raised aloft, and others rode on horses decorated with all sorts of adornsments and covered with network of gold.

Now Devadatta set out riding in a high howdah on a well-adorned elephant covered with a network of gold. And as he rode out his diadem was struck against the arch over the gateway. When the arch thus knocked down Devadatta's diadem the huge crowd laughed loudly, and a diviner and an astrologer\(^7\) foretold of him that Prince Devadatta would not achieve the purpose for which he was leaving home. He would fail in his highest object, just as from the highest part of his person his diadem was knocked down by the arch over the gateway.

(179) Thus then did those five hundred Śākyan young men, in great royal majesty and splendour, and accompanied by all kinds of dancers, minstrels, musicians and drummers,\(^8\)

---

\(^1\) Āhārena āhāram kāryam hirottā, where āhārena is difficult to explain.
\(^2\) Lāhka. See vol. 3, p. 63, n. 1.
\(^3\) Pranita. This distinction is evidently the same as that made by the two terms olarika, "gross," and suhuma, "fine," in Pall. (See P.E.D.).
\(^4\) Cf. A. 1, 168; D. 3, 61.
\(^5\) Sakhurapravarehi for "prañālāki.
\(^6\) Karkataka. Cf. Sk. karka, a crab, "curved end of the beam of a balance." P.E.D., s.v. khaṭṭa, crab, cites BS. karkata in the meaning of "a hook." Evidently some kind of curved structure or decoration over the gate is meant. Edgerton (B.H.S.D.) cites karkaṭākhaṇḍaḥ "a kind of moulding or joinery resembling the crab's leg," from Acharya, Dict. Hindu Arch.
\(^7\) Horaphāṭbāṭbha, from hora for horā, late Sk. from Greek, and pāṭbha, "skilled in."
\(^8\) Sarvanvittahī saravagītigh saravitāryatādāvaracarehi. These three words are treated in translation as one compound, the case termination of the first two being ignored. We then have avasara (BSK and Pall, "conversant with "), governing each element, i.e. persons conversant with dances, etc.

---

leave the city of Kapilavastu and set out for the Banyan Grove. When they had proceeded in their conveyances as far as the ground allowed, they alighted. Then, accompanied by several thousand people, they approached the Exalted One, bowed their heads at his feet and stood to one side.

Now of these Śākyan young men one was named Upāli. He was a barber's assistant, who had acquired the root of virtue under previous Buddhas, had retained the impressions of his former life,\(^1\) had broken his bonds, was not liable to rebirth, enjoyed Āryan states in his last existence and was master of the meditations and the super-knowledges. He had been sent to the Exalted One, by his mother, who said, "He will cut the hair of the Exalted One." And the Exalted One agreed. So Upāli cut the hair of the Exalted One. His mother asked the Exalted One, "Lord, does Upāli cut hair satisfactorily?" The Exalted One replied, "Yes, but he comes rather too close\(^2\) to the Tathāgata." She then said, "My boy, do not stand too close to the Exalted One." It was then that Upāli entered upon the first meditation.

Thereupon his mother asked the Exalted One again, "Lord, does my boy Upāli cut hair satisfactorily?" The Exalted One replied, "Yes, the boy cuts hair satisfactorily, but he oils the razor too much." So she said, "My boy, do not oil the razor too much." And then he entered upon the second meditation.

Upāli's mother again asked the Exalted One, "Lord, does my boy Upāli cut hair satisfactorily?" The Exalted One, "Yes, the boy Upāli cuts hair satisfactorily, but his breathing annoys the Tathāgata." So she said, "My boy, do not annoy the Exalted One with your breathing." Then, having passed through the first and second meditations,
Upāli took up the religious life ahead of them all. (181) Then the five hundred Śākyan princes went to the Exalted One, bowed at his feet, and each said to him, “Let the Lord admit me to the religious life. Let the Sugata ordain me.” And the Exalted One pronounced the formula of “Come, monks” over the five hundred princes, with the exception of Devadatta, saying, “Come, Śākyan princes, come, monks, live the brahma-life under the Tathāgata.” When the formula of “Come, monks,” had been pronounced by the Exalted One over them, every mark, badge, emblem and sign of the householder disappeared from their persons. They were seen to have three robes, sumbhaka bowls, their hair in its natural state, and their deportment established. In short the admission and ordination of the venerable five hundred Śākyan princes were just like those of monks who had been ordained a hundred years.

The Exalted One then addressed them, saying, “The monk Upāli is senior to you. Therefore bow at his feet and stand in due order.” He who will first bow at the feet of the Tathāgata and Upāli and stand in due order, will become the next in seniority.” So all the hundreds of monks bowed at the feet of the Exalted One and Upāli and stood in their proper order. This became known and the great crowd of people cried, “The Śākyans have overcome pride and anger; they have put down pride and arrogance.”

King Sudhodana, also, his retinue and the Śākyans bowed at the feet of Upāli the monk. And the venerable Upāli said, “Hail and welcome to King Sudhodana.” But the counsellors and attendants, seeing the venerable Upāli address King Sudhodana by name, reflected, “How can it be that the lowly born Upāli the barber uses the words ‘King

---

1 These incidents in the story of Upāli seem to be peculiar to the Mheu. The introduction of the theme of “meditation” (dhyāna) is abrupt, and possibly the story is taken from some text or tradition containing a series of examples of the practice of meditation by a variety of men in a variety of circumstances. In the Cullavagga (VII) the story of Upāli begins with the other Śākyan young men giving him their clothes and jewels.

2 Reading vānāṃdām for vānāntām. A gen. pl. is needed to go with etesām as object of paribhūṣyāmi.

3 See p. 67, n. 3.

4 For this passage see the references in the preceding note. The comparison here and immediately below, and also at 2, p. 234 (text) is not so clearly expressed as it is above, p. 65 (text), where it runs, sayathāpi nāma varsaṭītopasaṃpānamānāṃ bhikṣāṇāṃ, “all just like those of monks who had been ordained a hundred years.”
Suddhodana' in addressing him?" (182) But King Suddhodana said to those counsellors and attendants, "Gentlemen, do not speak of the Aryan Upāli as a lowly born man. For one thing there is a former birth of his, and for another there is now his royal power as a recluse. He must no more be said to be of lowly birth."

The monks said to the Exalted, "Behold, Lord, how the royal attendants at the Exalted One's command bowed at the feet of the venerable Upāli, lowly of birth though he was." The Exalted One replied, "Monks, that was not the first time they did so." 3 The monks asked, "Lord, was there another occasion?" The Exalted One replied, "Yes, monks, there was."

Once upon a time, monks, long ago, in the city of Benares in the province of Kāsi, two poor boys, carrying junket for food in their knapsacks, were going out to fetch wood when a Pratyekabuddha was coming in to beg for alms. He was graceful of deportment, both in approaching and in taking his leave, in looking forwards and backwards, in extending and withdrawing his hand, and in carrying his cloak, bowl and robe. 6 He was like a Nāga. He had accomplished his task. His faculties and his mind were turned inwards. 8 He was steadfast as one who had achieved harmony

---

1 Mā ... Upāliṣya kīnajāyena samudācaratāḥ. The meaning is clear, but the conjunction of a gen. (direct object) and an instr. (indirect object) with samudācaratā in the same sentence is remarkable.
2 Cf. Fausboll, No. 421. As will be seen, however, there are important differences in the two versions.
3 The text, of course, repeats the whole statement.
4 See vol. I, p. 40, n. 3.
5 A conventional description of a Pratyekabuddha. Cf. vol. I, p. 250. The text should be emended to read samminjñataprasāritena saṃghāti pātracaravadhāraṇena, in accordance with I, 301 (text).
6 I, 301 (text) has antargatehi indriyāhā abhirghatena mānasena, "his faculties were turned inwards; his mind was not turned outwards." Certain other differences of phraseology between the two passages may be worth noting.

---

THE JĀTAKA OF GANGAPĀLA

The monks said to the Exalted One, "Behold, Lord, how the royal attendants at the Exalted One's command bowed at the feet of the venerable Upāli, lowly of birth though he was." The Exalted One replied, "Monks, that was not the first time they did so." The monks asked, "Lord, was there another occasion?" The Exalted One replied, "Yes, monks, there was."

Then with their hearts full of trust they said to each other, "All we boys whose way of life is hard, 2 who have no food nor home, are unfortunate, miserable, and wretched, and others like us, have not planted the roots of merit in the fields of merit provided by men such as this Pratyekabuddha. 3 But all those (183) who are rich, wealthy and opulent, like nobles and brāhmanas in their great halls, and others who are fortunate and well-to-do, have planted roots of merit in men like this. What now if we were to put this junket in the bowl of this seer?"

And so they put the junket in the bowl of the Pratyekabuddha. He accepted the alms from the boys and then flew away through the air like a king of swans. When the boys saw the Pratyekabuddha travelling through the air they were glad and said, "We whom we honoured by putting alms in his bowl was surely a great seer." Then glad and joyful they made their vows. One said, "May I through this root of merit become a king, an anointed noble." The other said, "May I through this root of merit be reborn in the family of a brāhman possessing great halls and become rich, wealthy and opulent."

For not insignificant is an offering made with a trusting heart to a Tathāgata, a perfect Buddha, or even to disciples of the Buddhas.

Treasure heaps dwindle away; growth ends in decay. Union in disunion; ends in life in death. 4

Then the two boys, when their time was up and karma worked out, died together in the city of Benares. One was reborn in a king's family to the king's chief wife. The other was

---

1 Prasādam upasāmramanti, "they approached trust." The expression is unusual, the usual expression used to denote the influence of a Pratyekabuddha on his beholder being cittaprasādam utpannam or jātan. Can it be that prasādam is here used adverbially, to give the meaning "they approached him trustfully"?
2 Rucchatiitiikā. For rucca, see vol. 2, p. 30, n. 5. Cf. B.H.S.D.
3 Cf. vol. I, p. 276, n. 2.
4 The second distich has occurred above p. 152 (text). See p. 147.
reborn in the family of the king’s priest to the priest’s wife. 

The king’s wife and the priest’s wife were delivered at the 

same time. Both children were boys. For both boys joyful 

birthday festivities were celebrated for seven days, and 

after the seven days were over (184) the king’s son was given 

the name of Brahmadatta, and the priest’s son the name of 

Upaka. Competent nurses were appointed, and the king’s 

son and the priest’s son grew like lotuses.1 As has been said 

by the Exalted One:

The righteous grow like the banyan tree in fertile soil, 

but the unrighteous wither like trees growing in the roadway.

Now when the boys had duly grown up and reached years 

discretion,4 they were taught writing, reading, the arts, 

numeration, mnemonics, and reckoning with the fingers.6 

Brahmadatta, the king’s son, also trained himself all the 

time in riding elephants and horses, in the use of bows and 

arrows, in running, leaping, racing and archery. And when 

his father died, Prince Brahmadatta was anointed king in 

Benares by the counsellors.

The young brāhman Upaka became infatuated with a 

young girl. Everywhere and at all times he languished for 

her, but she did not condescend to look at him. Then the 
festival of the full moon in the month Kārttika8 was celebrated 
in Benares. And the young girl, being really in 

love, came to him and said, “Young man, the festival of the full moon is here. Provide me with perfume 

and a garland that I may celebrate it joyfully.” When he 

heard the young girl saying this, the young man became 
glad and elated. “How lucky I am,” said he, “that the 
young girl has turned to me.”

Now the young brāhman Upaka had begged and obtained 

a penny4 from a man on the banks of the river Ganges. And 

he had stowed it away safely there. So now, in order to 

retrieve the penny, (185) he went in the heat of a cloudless 
noon to the banks of the Ganges, blithely singing sweet songs 

like a fairy.8

And, monks, King Brahmadatta from an upper balcony of 
his palace saw the young brāhman Upaka going out of the 
city in the cloudless noon singing with a sweet voice. On 

seeing him he fell in love with the young man. As has been 
said by the Exalted One:

By living together in the past and by kindness in the 
present, love is born as surely as the lotus is born in water. 

When love enters the mind and the heart is glad the under­

standing man will be assured and say “This woman lived 

with me in the past.”

So, at the mere sight of the young brāhman Upaka, King 
Brahmadatta was filled with love for him. He sent messengers, 
saying to them “Go, men, and bring the young brāhman 
Upaka who is going out of the city singing.” And the messen­
gers went and said to him, “Come, young man, the king 
summons you.” The king’s men brought him into the presence 
of the king. “Sire,” said they, “the young brāhman has been 
brought.”

Then King Brahmadatta addressed the young brāhman 
Upaka in verse:

It is high noon, the earth is like hot embers. But you 
sing your songs and the heat does not burn you.

1 Literally, “a small coin,” māṣa, properly “a bean,” which was a 
measure of weight, and also denoted a small coin. See P.E.D. for references.
2 Reading Kinnari (or -a) -viya for the text kinnariya, which is incon­
struable. Possibly Senart’s restoration of kinnariya is to be regarded as 
doubtful. For the Kinnaras see vol. I, pp. 54, 61.
3 These stanzas have occurred at 2. 98 (95, trans.), 168 (163, trans.) and above, p. 148 (text).
4 Cf. vol. 2, p. 376.
5 Cf. vol. 2, p. 376.
6 Gaitingala, “went the course.” B.H.S.D. has “skilled, experienced, 
advent.” But at Vol. 2, p. 73, at least, the word would seem to denote 
the process of becoming adept, i.e., the training. (See vol. 2, p. 70 trans.), 
though at 2. 76 it does mean fully trained (vol. 2, p. 73 trans.).
7 Kaumudi cāturmāḍi. See p. 76, n. 5.
8 Reading Kinnari (or -a) -viya for the text kinnariya, which is incon­
struable. Possibly Senart’s restoration of kinnariya is to be regarded as 
doubtful. For the Kinnaras see vol. I, pp. 54, 61.
10 Literally, “from (something) like embers,” kukkula-vattato. Kukkula-vattan, 
adj. from kukula, BSkr. and Pali for kukula. Cf. Kukulā, name of one 
of the hells, see vol. I, pp. 7, 10.
Above the sun is blazing, below, the sands, but you blithely and happily sing your songs.

(186) But, monks, the young brāhman Upaka replied to King Brahmadatta in verse:

_It is not the heat that burns me, but desires._

_It is these sundry wants that burn one, O king, not the heat. A trifling thing indeed is the heat that burns my frame. It is various tasks to be done that burn one, and not the heat._

King Brahmadatta addressed the young brāhman Upaka in verse:

_What causes this agitation, by what heat is this torment ed body of yours burnt? This I bid you tell me._

Then, monks, the young brāhman Upaka replied to King Brahmadatta in verse:

_Sire, I am in love with a Śūdra woman, a water-carrying slave, O vanquisher of the foe. I am wholly hers; my body is afire with love for her._

Then, monks, King Brahmadatta said to the young brāhman Upaka, _"Where are you going, young man?"_ And Upaka replied in verse:

1 Or _"ardours," _"exertions," _āṭappā_. Senart can hardly be right in rejecting the guidance of J. (3. 447) here. In the first line he reads _anikā_ for _āṭappā_ of J., assuming for the former word the meaning of _"destruction,"_ though properly it is an adj. formation denoting _"making an end of."_ His translation would thus be _"It is not the heat that burns me, it is destruction!"_ In the next line he reads, _anikākā _vighāṭākā _te _tāṇḍini, _"destructions and vexations, it is these that burn."_ It seems more consonant with the tenour of the whole verse to retain the Pali version, that is, _āṭappā_ (though no Sk. or BSk. form of this Pali word seems to be available) for the first _anikā_, and for the second _āṭhās_ and restore to the second line as _āṭhās_ _vivādhās_ _rāja_ _te_ _tāṇḍini na _āṭap. The idea contained in this line is then reinforced in the next stanza, _kṣāyā _nāma _vivādā_ (so read for _vivādā_, _"squabbles!"_ ) Edgerton (B.H.S.D.) gives _anikā_ = _"low, vile"_ (person or thing), adding that the clue to this meaning is _ūnāra_, _"trifling,"_ in the next stanza. But there is no analogy between the two terms, for the point of the passage is that what really burns one are the _anikā_ (whatever they are). The heat of the sun is trifling by comparison, and to be ignored. The desires which really burn one, on the contrary, are to be rooted out. In giving _anikā_ this sense Edgerton seems to have overlooked _anikā _di _daḥkhaya_, _"thou art the ender of ill"_ (3. 401), as well as _anikā _"ender"_ as name for Māra. See p. 94, n. 6.

2 _I.e._ of the lowest caste, though she is termed _māgāṭikā_ above, properly, but not always, _"a young brāhman girl."_ Literally, _"I am entirely as her disposal,"_ _tasyā _sparśitā _sarve._

1 _ayānaḥsa_, _"without moving."_ Or, perhaps, _"he who is without a carriage,"_ by way of antithesis to _yāne _vahyāmānasya_ of the next line.

2 From this point the rejoinders are given in prose as well as in verse.

3 Literally, _"there will be an invitation,"_ _āmantaṃ _bhavisyati._

**THE JĀTAKA OF GANGAPĀLA**

There's a penny I got by begging and I have it safely hidden on the banks of the Ganges, to the east of the city. I am going out to fetch it.

But, monks, King Brahmadatta said to the young brāhman Upaka _"Wait here (187) a while, young man. You shall go presently when it is cool."_ The young brāhman Upaka, however, replied to King Brahmadatta in verse:

_The things he wants are beyond him who stands still._

_They even run away from him who runs after them by riding in a carriage._ Your majesty, I'm bent to go after that penny.

King Brahmadatta replied to the young brāhman Upaka in verse:

_If what you want is a penny, I'll give you one. Do what you want to do with the penny. Only, young man, do not travel in this heat._

The young brāhman Upaka said, _"If his majesty will give me a penny, that will make it two. With these two pennies my poor woman will be happy and will be able to celebrate the festival without difficulty."_ And he spoke to King Brahmadatta in verse:

_If your majesty gives me a penny, that will make it two. With these two pennies my poor woman will be happy._

The king said, _"I will give you two pennies, only don't go and get baked in this heat._

King Brahmadatta spoke to the young brāhman Upaka in verse:

_If what you want are pennies, I'll give you two. Do what you want to do with the pennies; only, young man, do not travel in this heat._

(188) Upaka said, _"These two pennies will make it three, and we shall have a party,"_ and my poor woman will have a merry festival."
Your two pennies, sir, will make it three. With these three pennies my poor woman will be happy.

King Brahmadatta said to the young brahman Upaka, "Young man, do not travel in this heat. I will give you the three pennies."

If you are in need of pennies, I will give you still more. Do what you want to do with the pennies; only, young man, do not travel in this heat.

The young brahman said, "Your majesty, these three pennies will make it four, and we shall have a still bigger party. And so I shall have a merry time at the festival with my poor woman."

Your three pennies, sir, will make it four. With these four pennies my poor woman will be delighted.

In this manner King Brahmadatta went on to offer a hundred thousand pennies to the young brahman Upaka, but the latter would not give up his own penny. Even when he was offered half as much again he would not forego that penny.

Then King Brahmadatta offered the young brahman Upaka half his kingdom, half his harem, half his treasury and granary, and half his counsellors and army officers. So they both ruled the kingdom jointly, and both administered its affairs. The young brahman Upaka, being endowed with the five strands of sensual desires, enjoyed, delighted and amused himself.

Now (189) King Brahmadatta had exceeding great trust in the young brahman Upaka, and wherever he went he used to lie down with his head on the young man’s bosom. But once it happened that while King Brahmadatta was lying down, this thought occurred to Upaka. "How," thought he, "can there be two kings in one kingdom? What now if I were to kill King Brahmadatta and thus become sole king myself?" But he thought again; "It would not be right for me nor seemly to be ungrateful to King Brahmadatta who has been so kind to me." A second and a third time he thought, "Nor is it right nor seemly that there should be two kings in one kingdom. Let me then kill King Brahmadatta and become myself the sole king of Kāśi." But again a second and a third time he thought: "It would not be right for me nor seemly to be ungrateful to King Brahmadatta who has been so kind to me."

And so he went away crying avidha! avidha!1 Thereupon King Brahmadatta woke up and said to him, "Upaka, did you shout out avidha! avidha?" Upaka replied, "Yes, because the thought was in me to kill King Brahmadatta and become myself the sole king of Kāśi." But King Brahmadatta would not believe him. Upaka said, "Sire, it was so as I have said." Then King Brahmadatta addressed the young brahman Upaka in verse:

Little by little, young man, I gave you all you asked, even to half my kingdom. But as you won’t forgo your penny, how can there be an end?2

The young brahman Upaka replied:

In this world there is no end to endless craving. I will go forth to the religious life. I have no delight in ruling.

(190) I have had enough of these many desires which with even a fool would not be satisfied.4 I have had enough of all desires. I will go forth to the religious life.

O desire, I know thy root; thou art born of the wish. I will no more wish for thee; then will thou not survive.5

A fool will not be satisfied with few desires nor even with many. When he has abandoned all desires he will understand as one who awakes from sleep.

1 See vol. 1, p. 251, n. 2; vol. 2, p. 401, n. 4.
2 Patijjati. See vol. 2, p. 106, n. 2. See also B.H.S.D.
3 I.e., the king implies that he must go on with his offers until Upaka gives up the thought of retrieving his penny.
4 It is instructive to compare these and the following stanzas with those at J. 3. 450. The vocabulary is practically identical, but there are slight differences in meaning. With the same or similar words the sentences in one set have obviously been refashioned, and it would seem that the verses which have undergone such changes are those in J. The Mhav. verses have every appearance of being more original and more in keeping with the context. For example, in this particular stanza, where the latter has bahāki kāmā ni alam na, J. has appāpi kāmā na alam, "little desire is not enough." (J. trans.) Not only is the use of alam as a predicate adjective incorrect, but the sentiment conveyed by such a text is not in harmony with Buddhist thought.
5 Cf. stanza 39 at J. 3. 450.
I wish for a gift, but these desires overwhelm me. When the wish is stifled, then the desires no longer survive. Seeing then, that the fruit of desire is this, I will not desire either a son, cattle, or wealth.

Then the young brāhman Upaka said to King Brahmadatta, "Sire, allow me to go forth to the religious life." The king replied, "Do not go forth, but let us rule jointly." Upaka said, "No, your majesty, to rule is nothing to me. Allow me to go forth." King Brahmadatta then gave him permission, saying, "Since it is your wish, go forth."

Now at that time in the north of Kāsi a potter, who was a recluse and a seer possessing the five super-knowledges, had his hermitage. And the young brāhman exertion he attained the four meditations, and became a seer of great magic and power. While sitting cross-legged in the hermitage he could touch the moon and sun with his hand.

Upaka said to King Brahmadatta, "Great is the fruit of a little thing. Great profit has Upaka gained. Great is the well-won gain of the young brahman who has become a recluse and forgone the delight of sensual pleasures."

King Brahmadatta's women heard him reciting this verse again and again, but they did not understand its meaning. Now King Brahmadatta had a barber named Gangapāla, who enjoyed his confidence and entered the women's quarters to carry out his duties whenever he liked.

Once King Brahmadatta said to him, "Gangapāla, trim my hair and beard." When he had said this he fell asleep and his hair and beard were trimmed as he lay down. Then the king woke up and said, "Gangapāla, come and trim my hair and beard." Gangapāla replied, "Sire, your hair and beard were trimmed while you were lying down." And Gangapāla fetched a looking-glass, brought it to King Brahmadatta and said, "Let his majesty take a look." When the king saw his hair and beard in the looking-glass he was pleased with his barber Gangapāla, and he said "Gangapāla, I am satisfied and pleased with your handiwork. I offer you the boon of a village. Choose whatever village you wish."
Gangapāla replied, “When I have taken advice, then I shall accept the boon of a village from your majesty.”

Then Gangapāla spoke to King Brahmadatta’s women, saying, “To-day, I gave satisfaction to King Brahmadatta with my handiwork. He offered me the boon of a village and I intend to choose one.” But the women replied, “Refuse1 the boon of a village. The king is continually reciting this verse:

That is the great fruit of a little thing. Great profit has Upaka gained. Great is the well-won gain of the young brāhmaṇ who has become a recluse and forgone the delight of sensual pleasures.

“...”

The king replied and said (193) “The young brāhmaṇ Upaka renounced his half of the kingdom when he saw the peril of the pleasures of sense, and went forth to the religious life. And now he has acquired the five super-knowledges and become a powerful seer, as a result of once in a former life observing half a fast-day. The latter was his partner, he left home and went forth to the religious life. And now he has acquired the five super-knowledges and become a powerful seer, as a result of once in a former life observing half a fast-day. The latter day, but his subsequent action goes far beyond that small detail of ritual or ceremonial, which he could well observe without ceasing to be a layman. What he actually does, both in J. and in the Mh., is to copy the example of the king’s partner, give up all worldly goods, and go forth to the religious life. In J. he even becomes a Paccekabuddha.

1. The text has marṣeṣi, but as this word gives no sense here, Senart suggests in his note that we should read mellheṣi. For the latter word see vol. 1. p. 303, n. 1, and vol. 2. p. 399, n. 1. Edgerton, (B.H.S.B.), however, refers marṣeṣi to the meaning of Sk. mṛṣiṣ, asks to be excused from, declines.2

Vijānāmātha. For the ending see p. 4, n. 1.

1. The text repeats it.

2. The text again repeats it.

3. The text again repeats it.

4. The text again repeats it.

5. The explanation of the verse given in J. (3. 451–2) is, of course, consistent with the different text there found. But the consistency is not quite successful enough to give point to the story. The king there says that the former half of the verse describes his own glory, which he has gained as a result of once in a former life observing half a fast-day. The latter half refers to the religious career of his partner, he himself, in the meantime, though left sole king, remaining in slothfulness (aham sparṣita bhaṅga, as both J. and Mh. have it). Although, in order to give verisimilitude to the tale, J. trans. renders these words by “I in my pride,” it is obvious that the story in J. has taken a wrong turning. It is true that Gangamaṇḍa concludes that the king’s glory is the reward for the observance of a fast-day, but his subsequent action goes far beyond that small detail of ritual or ceremonial, which he could well observe without ceasing to be a layman. What he actually does, both in J. and in the Mh., is to copy the example of the king’s partner, give up all worldly goods, and go forth to the religious life. In J. he even becomes a Paccekabuddha.

1. Abhisbadda, also abhisbaddana and ächäda. See p. 36, n. 2.1

2. I.e. the nameless potter, Upaka and Gangapāla.
[Then Gangapāla went into the Mango Park of King Brahmadatta. He hung up his barber’s instruments there and went forth to the religious life. A certain counsellor, thereupon, addressed King Brahmadatta in verse:

This Mango Park belongs to glorious King Brahmadatta, yet here a barber who has turned religious has hung up his razor and his tools.]

“Your majesty should not go into the presence of men of mean birth. Rather should they be made to come into your majesty’s presence.” But the king replied, “It is not dharma that worthy men should be ordered to visit the king. It is we who ought to go to visit the seers.”

So King Brahmadatta escorted by princes and counsellors set out to go to the seers. Gangapāla the seer came to meet King Brahmadatta and said to him, “Welcome, King Brahmadatta. Let King Brahmadatta sit down.” But the counsellors and attendants of King Brahmadatta scolded Gangapāla, and scared him stiff. “Why” (196) said they, “do you, Gangapāla, a man of mean birth address King Brahmadatta by name?” King Brahmadatta, however, replied to the counsellors in verse:

Say nothing against Gangapāla who is trained in the silent ways of sages. He has crossed the ocean flood, and they who have crossed this are rid of passion.

1 Cf. the first line of stanza 42, op. cit., which, however, is spoken by the queen in scorn of Gangamāla.
2 Cf. the last two lines of stanza 42.
3 Kāṇṭīsa-rabhya. Sayrabhya, properly “fragrance,” is represented in this expression in Pali by soracca, but Senart in a long note argues against restoring the Sk. equivalent, sauratiya, “gentleness, mildness,” of the Pali. Not only is the etymology of the Pali (su-rata) difficult to reconcile with the accepted sense of the word, but also BSk. texts have saurabhya quite as often as sauratiya. See e.g. Lal. Vist. 37, 131, 431; Mhvu. 2, 354, 362; 3, 270 and Divy. 30, 40. Rhy Davids has a note on soracca in his Questions of King Milinda (S.B.E. 35, p. 230) in which he points out that Māyut. has the form sauratiya in the same expression. But the semantic difficulty remains, for Sk. suraṭa “high pleasure” is, he says, used “almost without exception in an obscene sense.” Edgerton (B.H.S.D.), however, maintains that the correct form is sauratiya, and that saurabhya is “false writing,” although the BSk. instances of the word which he cites are about equally divided between the two forms.
4 This incident is not in J.
wealth¹ so that she does his will. But it is otherwise among
the devas, for here are you,² rejected for offering less and less.³

The deva replied to the woman in verse:

In this world of men the beautiful woman is doomed to lose her age and her beauty. You should profit by your beauty, for already you are fading, already you are getting older.

The Exalted One said, "It may be again, monks, that you will think that at that time and on that occasion the seer named Upaka was somebody else. You must not think so. And why? I was then the seer named Upaka. Nor was King Brahmadatta somebody else. Sudhodana here was then the king of Kāśi named Brahmadatta. Nor, monks, was the barber named Gangapāla (197) who took up the

¹ Reading nārīṃ naro yuddhyatena dhānena for nārī naro jihmaye vārāmena of the text. Senart admits that his restoration here is very uncertain, and the translation which he offers in his note on the passage makes it obvious that the text of the line, as he has restored it, causes the whole stanza to miss the point which one would naturally expect it to make. His text of the whole stanza reads nārī naro jihmaye vārāmena | uktaraṣya yatra harot | chandam | vipratvaniṣaḥ | bhvau devatā | naraḥ śvāsaṇa | utpratikhyādu | aśādavāna eṣa jija. Of this text Senart offers the translation, "Une femme attire les hommes par un refus, elle les exalte en obéissant à leurs désirs. C'est le contraire à l'égard des dieux, tu es repoussé par un être humain. Apart from the obscurity of the meaning and the failure to bring out fully the implied difference between the conduct of divine and human suitors, there are in this text certain doubtful points of vocabulary and grammar. Naro (nara), for example, is more correctly a nom. sg. than an acc. pl. Jihmayati, an assumed derivative from jihma, "crooked, bent, etc." whether in a physical or moral sense, is a strange antonym of uktaraṣya "to draw out," even if it could have the sense of "to make sad." If, as we should certainly do, we relate the stanza to the context, the point intended to be made by it immediately becomes obvious. It is that man allures woman by offering her wealth, increasing the amount at each rebuff. The deva, on the other hand, has done the exact opposite, decreasing the value of his offers from gold to silver and then to bronze. As the third and fourth lines express it, "things are different among the devas, for here you are rejected because you offered less and less" (alpatarena). In Senart's translation this masculine adjective is rendered as though it were feminine relating to the woman who rejects the deva's addresses. It is obvious that in the first line we need, to qualify dhānena, some adjective of a sense opposite to alpatara (comparative of alpa. "little"). From yuddhyatena, a passive participle adjective from yuddh, "to increase," is, of course, only a tentative suggestion, and there is no means to ascertain whether it can be supported by the evidence of the MSS. (As for the form it is paralleled by similar ones in the text.) There may well be another synonymous adjective which has better support. In any case, the line as here restored does not seem any farther than Senart's from the MS tradition as he gives it in his apparatus.

² Essa, or, "here is one."

³ Literally, "rejected because of less and less"; alpatarena, being either a substantival adjective, or a simple adjective qualifying dhānena, understood from the first line.

religious life of a seer any other than Upāli. Then, too, lowly of birth though he was, the royal attendants by my orders bowed at his feet, just as now they have bowed at this barber's feet."

Here ends the Jātaka of Upāli and Gangapāla.

THE MAHĀGOVINDĪYA SŪTRA¹

The monks said to the Exalted One, "Behold, Lord, how, when the Exalted One went forth to the religious life, he was accompanied by a large multitude of people." The Exalted One said, "That was not the first time, monks, that a large multitude of people went with me when I went forth to the religious life." The monks asked, "Was there another occasion, Lord?" The Exalted One replied, "Yes, monks.¹

"Once upon a time, monks, long ago there was a king named Diśāmpati,"² said he, and he went on to expound the Mahāgovindīya sūtra.³

The Exalted One, the perfect Buddha having attained the end he had set himself, was staying at Rājagriha, on Mount Griddhakīṭa, and teaching devas and men. He was honoured, revered, esteemed, worshipped and adored—the description of the occasion is to be supplied⁴ up to—and he abode in those states⁵ in which exalted Buddhas desire to abide. Now

¹ The Pali version of this celebrated sūtra is found at D. 2. 220 ff., but the Mhous version is not a translation from the Pali. Differences in the order of relation alone are sufficient to disprove the supposition that it is. As in so many other instances of parallel versions in Pali texts and in the Mhous, the evidence is such as to prove that the Mhous version is completely independent of the Pali, and, if not written down from a floating oral tradition, is based on some unknown recension. Rhys Davids has some instructive remarks on the relation between the two versions in Dial. 2, p. 254 ff.

² As is seen, the preamble is of the usual type introducing a Jātaka, and the sūtra is referred to as a Jātaka at J. 1. 45, 46 and 3. 450. Also the colophon describes it as a "sūtra relating to a former life of the Exalted One," given in D. the tale closes with the Buddha's explanation of the "birth."

³ A king of long ago, also mentioned in the Dipavīmaṇa and Mahāvamsa (D.P.N.).

⁴ As the text stands it would seem that it was Diśāmpati who told the story, for there is nothing to show that the subject of vyākaroṣi is different from that of abhāṣi, except, perhaps, the absence of ca to co-ordinate the two verbs.

⁵ I.e. the stereotyped description of such occasions. See e.g. vol. 1, p. 29 ff.

⁶ Viḥāra.
when the night was far spent, 1 Pañcaśīkha, 2 one of the Gandharvas, whose exceeding beauty irradiated the whole of Mount Grīḍhakūṭa, came to the Exalted One, bowed at his feet and stood to one side. And as he thus stood to one side, he said to the Exalted One, 2 "Lord, I would tell 1 (198) to the Exalted One, I would make known to the Exalted One, what I heard and learned from the devas of Trayastrīṃśa, from Śakra, lord of devas, and from Great Brahmā, as they sat and conversed in the devas' Hall of Good Counsel." 3

When this had been spoken, the Exalted One said to Pañcaśīkha, the Gandharva, 2 "Tell me, Pañcaśīkha, make known to me, Pañcaśīkha, what you heard and learned from the devas of Trayastrīṃśa, Śakra, lord of devas, and Great Brahmā as they conversed." 3

Then Pañcaśīkha the Gandharva said to the Exalted One:

Once upon a time, Lord, the devas of Trayastrīṃśa, Śakra, lord of devas, and Great Brahmā, were sitting gathered together in the Hall of Good Counsel on some business of the devas. And, Lord, there were some devas who had been reborn there later than the rest, but who excelled them in the five deva attributes of length of life, power, glory, honour and retinue. 4 Then, Lord, some devas spoke and said, "Friends, now look at these devas who were reborn here later, but excel those born here before them in length of life, power, glory, honour and retinue." Whereupon some other devas said, "Verily, friends, these are disciples of the Exalted One. They lived the brahma-life, and at death and on the dissolution of the body they were reborn in heaven among the devas of Trayastrīṃśa. And though reborn here later, they greatly excel those reborn as devas before them in the five deva attributes of length of life, power, glory, honour and retinue." 1

---

1 Reading abhikräntakāyaṃ (vātiyam) for abhikräntakāyoy, which could only be construed as qualifying Pañcaśīkha, and his beauty has already been described by the adjective abhikräntaśūnya. The emendation also restores the phrase into its usual form as found e.g. at vol. 2, p. 257, 258 (text). See vol. 2, p. 243, n. 1.
2 See vol. 2, p. 45 ff.
3 Devasabhidharmā, so rendered in Dial. 2, 259, etc.
4 Elsewhere in the Māhu, these attributes are given as ten. See vol. 1, p. 25, and 2, p. 185. At vol. 2, p. 350 we have a slightly different group of five.

---

1 Dharma. D. 2, 222 has atha yathā-bhuces vāpa, "eight truthful items in praise of" (Dial. 2, 261.)
2 A name of Śakra (Indra). See vol. 2, p. 49, n. 4, p. 60 n. 10.
3 Literally, "let it occur to you, proclaim," pratibhātu te, udākara.
Then Śakra, lord of devas, proclaimed the eight wonderful and marvellous truths about the Exalted One. "When, friends," said he, "an Exalted One, Arhan, and perfect Buddha has arisen in the world, the hosts of the Asuras wane, the hosts of the devas wax. And, friends, I do not see, whether I survey the past, present or future, any master arisen in the world who has so wrought for the welfare of the multitude like this Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha. For the beautifully proclaimed dharma and discipline of the Tathāgata, Arhan, and perfect Buddha, bears on this present life and is independent of time. It welcomes and guides, and is for the inward comprehension of those who are wise. For this beautifully proclaimed dharma and discipline means the crushing of pride, the repression of longing, the destruction of clinging, the breaking-up of sensorial states, the end of craving, passionlessness, cessation and nirvana. Again, friends, I say that I do not see, whether I survey the past, present or future, any teacher of such a dharma and discipline arisen in the world other than this Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha. And friends, the Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha has won disciples, students who are in the Way, and Arhans who abide in immovable states. The Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha sends them away, and makes his home in the forests, which are remote, isolated, away from the habits of

1 Literally "other than," anyatra.
2 Sāndritthikam akhāthikam.
3 Is welcoming," ehipaṣyika, Dali ehipassīka.
4 Apanāyika, Pali opanayika.
5 Mada-nimadana, "the making without pride," or "de-priding" as P.E.D. puts it. See s.v. nimadana "which is related to nimmādeti, either = Sk. nimrūdayati [sic for nimmadayati], from mūḍ "to crush," or nirmadāyati to nimmadāyati, "free from pride." See B.H.S.D. for an alternative explanation.

Then Śakra, lord of devas, proclaimed the eight wonderful and marvellous truths about the Exalted One. "When, friends," said he, "an Exalted One, Arhan, and perfect Buddha has arisen in the world, the hosts of the Asuras wane, the hosts of the devas wax. And, friends, I do not see, whether I survey the past, present or future, any master arisen in the world who has so wrought for the welfare of the multitude like this Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha. For the beautifully proclaimed dharma and discipline of the Tathāgata, Arhan, and perfect Buddha, bears on this present life and is independent of time. It welcomes and guides, and is for the inward comprehension of those who are wise. For this beautifully proclaimed dharma and discipline means the crushing of pride, the repression of longing, the destruction of clinging, the breaking-up of sensorial states, the end of craving, passionlessness, cessation and nirvana. Again, friends, I say that I do not see, whether I survey the past, present or future, any teacher of such a dharma and discipline arisen in the world other than this Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha. And friends, the Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha has won disciples, students who are in the Way, and Arhans who abide in immovable states. The Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha sends them away, and makes his home in the forests, which are remote, isolated, away from the habits of

1 Literally "other than," anyatra.
2 Sāndritthikam akhāthikam.
3 Is welcoming," ehipaṣyika, Dali ehipassīka.
4 Apanāyika, Pali opanayika.
5 Mada-nimadana, "the making without pride," or "de-priding" as P.E.D. puts it. See s.v. nimadana "which is related to nimmādeti, either = Sk. nimrūdayati [sic for nimmadayati], from mūḍ "to crush," or nirmadāyati to nimmadāyati, "free from pride." See B.H.S.D. for an alternative explanation.

men, abodes unknown to men, and most fitting for seclusion. There he dwells by himself aloof from the crowd, all alone, giving himself to concentration. A master so intent on concentration, friends, I do not see arisen in the world, whether I survey the past, present or future, other than this Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha.

Again, friends, the Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha gets choice solid and soft food of proper and exquisite flavour, and he makes his meals thereof. But he eats without indulgence and wantonness, being aware of the peril in pleasures of sense, knowing the way of escape, and being free of intoxication. A master, friends, who eats his food so free from self-indulgence, I do not see arisen in the world, whether I survey the past, present or future, other than this Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha.

Again, friends, it is out of his knowledge that the Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha teaches the dharma and the discipline, not out of ignorance. And, friends, a master so possessed of the method of teaching dharma I do not see arisen in the world, whether I survey the past, present or future, other than this Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha.

This Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha, friends, has crossed the sea of doubt, is rid of perplexity, and has won assurance in good states. A master, friends, who has so passed beyond doubt I do not see arisen in the world, whether I survey the past, present or future, other than this Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha.

Again, friends, the nirvana and the Way leading to nirvana as taught by this Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha run together one into the other. Just as, friends, the waters
of the Ganges and the Jumna run into each other and flow together into the great ocean, so do the nirvana and the Way leading to nirvana as taught by this Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha flow together. A master, friends, with such a well-taught and well-revealed nirvana and Way leading to nirvana (202) I do not see arisen in the world, whether I survey the past, present or future, other than this Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha."

When this had been said, Lord, the devas of Trāyastriṃśa were still more glad and thrilled, elated and joyful, pleased and happy. And they said to Śakra, sovereign of devas, "Therefore, friend Kauśika, we should like you to proclaim again the eight wonderful and marvellous truths about the Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha. So Śakra, lord of devas, proclaimed again the eight wonderful and marvellous truths about the Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha appears in the world, the hosts of the Asuras wane; the hosts of the devas wax. And, friends, a master who has so wrought for the welfare and happiness of the multitude I do not see arisen in the world, whether I survey the past, present or future, other than this Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha." And he continued as far as 2 "And, friends, the nirvana and the Way leading to nirvana as taught by this Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha run together one into the other. Just as, friends, the waters of the Ganges and the Jumna run into each other and flow on together to the great ocean, so do the nirvana and the Way leading to nirvana as taught by this Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha flow together. And, friends, a master who has so devoted himself to preaching his well-taught and well-revealed truth about nirvana, I do not see arisen in the world, whether I survey the past, present or future, other than this Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha."

When this had been said, the devas of Trāyastriṃśa were still more thrilled, elated, pleased and happy.

Then, Lord, when Great Brahmā saw that the devas of Trāyastriṃśa were still more thrilled, elated, pleased and happy, he said to Śakra, lord of devas, "Therefore, friend Kauśika, (203) we would like you to proclaim the eight wonderful and marvellous truths about this Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha." So Śakra, lord of devas, proclaimed the eight wonderful and marvellous truths about the Exalted One. "When, friends," said he, "the Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha arises in the world, the hosts of the Asuras wane; the hosts of the devas wax. And, friends, a master who has so wrought for the welfare and happiness of the multitude I do not see arisen in the world, whether I survey the past, present or future, other than this Tathāgata, Arhan and perfect Buddha." And he continued as far as 2 "And, friends, the nirvana and the Way leading to nirvana as taught by this Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha run together one into the other. Just as, friends, the waters of the Ganges and the Jumna run into each other and flow on together to the great ocean, so do the nirvana and the Way leading to nirvana as taught by this Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha flow together. And, friends, a master who has so devoted himself to preaching his well-taught and well-revealed truth about nirvana, I do not see arisen in the world, whether I survey the past, present or future, other than this Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha."

When this had been said, the devas of Trāyastriṃśa were still more thrilled, elated, pleased and happy.

Then, Lord, when Great Brahmā saw that the devas of Trāyastriṃśa were still more thrilled, elated, pleased and happy, he addressed them in verses: 3

Verily the devas of Trāyastriṃśa together with Śakra rejoice. They adore the Tathāgata and the well-being that dharma brings. 4

---

1 Pratibhātū. See p. 195, n. 3. 2 Peyālam yāvad. 3 Only one verse is given. Rhys Davids (Dial. 2, p. 258) suggests that the ethical standpoint of the others as found in D. 2, 227 did not appeal to him. 4 Dharmasya sukhādhammatām (so for -dhammatām). D. has dhammassa sukhāmmatām, "the cosmic law sublime."
Thus then did the devas rejoice and become pleased and happy. (204) Then, Lord, when Great Brahmā saw that the devas of Trāyāstrīmśa were still more thrilled, joyful, pleased and happy, he said to them, “If, friends, you had listened in faith to the ancient instruction of the Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha, you would be even still more thrilled, elated, joyful, pleased and happy.”

When this had been said, Lord, the devas of Trāyāstrīmśa said to Great Brahmā, “Therefore, O Great Brahmā, we would like you to proclaim how ancient the great instruction of the Exalted One, Arhan and perfect Buddha is.” And then Great Brahmā revealed how ancient the great instruction of the Exalted One was.

Once upon a time, honoured sirs, said he, long ago, there was a king named Disampati. Now King Disampati’s priest and tutor was a brāhman named Govinda, who was intelligent, clever and prudent in all affairs. Again, honoured sirs, King Disampati had a son named Renu, who was beloved and popular, and intelligent, clever and prudent in all affairs. The brāhman Govinda, too, had a son named Jyotipāla. He was an only son, beloved and popular, and intelligent, clever and prudent in all affairs.

Now, honoured sirs, after the lapse of a long time, the brāhman Govinda died. And when Govinda the brāhman died, King Disampati mourned for him, pined, wept, cried, beat his breast and was beside himself with grief. “Alas!” said he, “just when I had entirely entrusted all my affairs to Govinda, and when in the possession and endowment of the five strands of sensual desires, I was amusing, enjoying and diverting myself, Govinda the brāhman died.”

1 Reading śraddhā for buddhā, as Senart is inclined to do.
2 Or “long-standing.” Dīrgharātram, is properly an adv. acc. “for a long time,” but in sense it qualifies mahāprajñapti, “the great instruction (which has lasted) a long time.” Cf. D. 2. 230, where the tale of Govinda is introduced as answer to the question, yānu dīrgharatam mahāprajñapti ca sa Bhagavā ahosi,” “for how long has the Blessed One been of great wisdom” (Dia. 2. 266). Cf. S. 2. 100, where the Buddha says he is treading an ancient way.
3 Pratibhātu. See p. 195, n. 3.
4 “It is evident that Govinda, literally “Lord of the Herds” was a title, not a name, and means Treasurer or Steward” (Dia. 2. 266, fn.). For simplicity’s sake, however, it is taken as a proper name in the present translation.

(205) Prince Renu heard that King Disampati was mourning, pining, weeping, beating his breast, crying and beside himself with grief for the death of Govinda the brāhman. And he went to King Disampati and said to him, “Your majesty, do not mourn, nor pine, nor weep, nor beat your breast, nor cry, nor be beside yourself with grief. And why do I say this? Because, your majesty, the brāhman Govinda had a young son named Jyotipāla, who is beloved and popular, intelligent, clever and prudent in all things, in fact, more intelligent, more clever and more accomplished than his father. All that his father knew was secretly learnt by heart by the young Jyotipāla. Therefore, let your majesty appoint him to his father’s place, that is to the chaplaincy and stewardship.”

Then, honoured sirs, King Disampati summoned a certain man and said to him, “Go, my good man, to the young brāhman Jyotipāla and say to him, “King Disampati summons the honourable Jyotipāla. Let the honourable Jyotipāla repair to where King Disampati is.” On hearing this the man replied, “So be it, sire,” and went to the young brāhman Jyotipāla and said to him, “King Disampati summons the honourable Jyotipāla. Let the honourable Jyotipāla go to King Disampati now that the brāhman Govinda is dead.” “So be it, sir,” said the young brāhman Jyotipāla in obedience to the man. And he went to King Disampati, and, having exchanged courteous and polite greetings with him (206), he sat down to one side.

And while the young brāhman Jyotipāla thus sat down to one side, King Disampati said to him, “Let the honourable Jyotipāla advise me; let the honourable Jyotipāla administer for me. Let him not refuse to advise me and to administer for me. Here and now do I appoint Jyotipāla to his father’s place, namely, the chaplaincy and the stewardship.”

Thus, honoured sirs, the young brāhman Jyotipāla was established in his father’s place, namely, the chaplaincy and the stewardship. Whatever task his father had performed, that did the young Jyotipāla perform. Whatever works his...
father had accomplished, those did the young Jyotipāla accomplish. Whatever affairs his father had administered, those did the young Jyotipāla administer. Whatever projects his father had accomplished, those did the young Jyotipāla accomplish. This became known, and the brāhmaṇs and householders, townsmen and countrymen said, "The young brāhmaṇ Jyotipāla is a Steward; Jyotipāla is a Great Steward." So the young Jyotipāla became known as Govinda and Mahā-Govinda. Thus did the name first become current.

Then, honoured sirs, the brāhmaṇ Mahā-Govinda approached the nobles and said to them, "Honoured sirs, go to Prince Reṇu and say to him, 'When our lord Reṇu is happy, then are we, too, happy. When our lord Reṇu is unhappy, then are we, too, unhappy. Now, lord Reṇu, King Diśāmpati is old, aged, full of years, past his prime and near the term of his life. It is inevitable, lord Reṇu, that life should end in death. (207) Now if, when King Diśāmpati is gone, the king-makers will anoint our lord Reṇu king, he will be able to share the sovereignty with us.'"

When this had been said, the lord Prince Reṇu replied to the six nobles, "If, gentlemen, the king-makers will anoint me king when King Diśāmpati is dead, I will share the sovereignty with you. For who should prosper in my realm other than you?"

Then, honoured sirs, after the lapse of a long time King Diśāmpati died. And the king-makers went to Prince Reṇu and said to him, "Prince, you have ascended the throne. We will anoint you king." Prince Reṇu replied to the king-makers, "Let it be then as you wish, gentlemen."

When anointed king Prince Reṇu, in the possession and endowment of the five strands of sensual desires, amused, enjoyed and diverted himself. Then, honoured sirs, the brāhmaṇ Mahā-Govinda went to the six nobles and said to them, "Behold, gentlemen, King Reṇu has been anointed king. And now, in the possession and endowment of the six strands of sensual desires, he is amusing, enjoying and diverting himself. But, gentlemen, these pleasures, of sense are intoxicating. Go then to King Reṇu and say to him, 'Does our lord Reṇu remember his promise?'" "So be it, lord," said they in obedience to the brāhmaṇ Mahā-Govinda. They went to King Reṇu and said to him, (208) "Does our lord Reṇu remember his promise?"

When this had been said, honoured sirs, King Reṇu replied to the six nobles, "Yes, gentlemen, I do remember my promise. But who now will be able to divide this great earth into seven parts?" The six nobles replied to King Reṇu, "Who, lord Reṇu, is more intelligent and accomplished than the lord Mahā-Govinda? He will divide this great earth into seven parts."

Then King Reṇu summoned a man and said to him, "Go, my good man, to the brāhmaṇ Mahā-Govinda, and say to him, 'King Reṇu summons the lord Mahā-Govinda.'" "So be it, your majesty," replied the man in obedience to King Reṇu, and he went to the brāhmaṇ Mahā-Govinda and said to him, "King Reṇu summons the lord Mahā-Govinda. Let the lord Mahā-Govinda go to King Reṇu." "So be it," said the brāhmaṇ Mahā-Govinda in obedience to the man, and he went to King Reṇu. Having exchanged courteous and polite greetings with him he sat down to one side. And when he had thus sat down to one side the brāhmaṇ Mahā-Govinda said to King Reṇu, "Lord, this great earth is a wide expanse of seven kingdoms."

To the south it was in seven parts each shaped like a

---

1 Abhisambhunoti, Pali abhisambhoti. See vol. l, p. 35, n. 3.
2 Jīsam. See p. 177, n. 2.
3 Aṣṭi hi jīsam Jyotipālayasya. See preceding note, but the explanation for the genitive case is obscure.
4 Agaramagniṇyam upanipāt, but reading agraṇjāsam for agnīpyam.
5 See vol. I, p. 287, n. 3.
6 Properly, "those nobles," te kṣatriyāś. The reference is to the six nobles who were the great friends of Reṇu and Jyotipāla. See D. 2. 230, the Mhvu. itself, below, also makes them six.

1 This formula will be generally omitted henceforward.
2 There is a difficulty here. This sentence appears to be Govinda's reply to Reṇu after he had divided the earth (sc. India) into seven kingdoms. The Mhvu. therefore, omits Reṇu's request to Govinda to do so. In D. 2. 235 we have both the request and the statement that Govinda did as requested.
3 ? Reading sapladha for sankṣiptā.
Then, honoured sirs, Govinda the brāhmaṇa established the six nobles each in his own kingdom.8

The six kings had not been long anointed when they hastily assembled, went to the brāhmaṇa Mahā-Govinda and said to him, “Let our lord Mahā-Govinda advise us. Let our lord Mahā-Govinda administer for us. As our lord Mahā-Govinda administered all the affairs of King Reṇu, so let him administer

1 Sakālamukhasamsthitam. The acc. samsthitam, where we should expect the nom. to agree with mahāpritihi in the last sentence in prose, would appear to be closer to the tradition of the original as we have it in D. 2. 235. The verses in the Mahā, are very corrupt. The first line should be part of Reṇu’s request to Govinda to do the dividing, or of the statement that Govinda did so. Neither is the second line part of the original verse, which, as Rhys Davids says (Dial. 2. p. 270) is “no doubt a very old mnemonic doggerel.” Sakālamukha is a crux. See Rhys Davids, op. cit., p. 269 fn., where reference is made to the Sinhalese translation, “on the south side like a waggon’s mouth.” The note continues, “Buddhaghosa has nothing here; but below as applied to the kingdoms he explains ‘with their mouths debouching together.’ Neither is satisfactory. It has been suggested that it might mean facing the “Wain,” that is, the constellation of the Great Bear. But this is unfortunately in the north. The front opening of a bullock waggon is (now) elliptical in form.” It may be noted, however, that in D. 2. 235 sakālamukham is antithetical to ayatam. Govinda is to divide the land so that it is ayata to the north and sakālamukha to the south. Can it be that the meaning is that the seven kingdoms were to have a long boundary to the north running in a single though irregular line, but each tapering from this basis towards a common apex in the South, the whole and each part thus forming a triangle? If, “the front opening of a bullock waggon is (now) elliptical in form,” it conceivably be triangular at one time or other. If this were so the meaning of the Pali sabbāṇi sakālamukhāṇi aṭṭhapeti (v. 1. 2. aṭṭhapeti) would be “and made them all (or each) into triangles.” Exact geography, of course, is not to be sought for in such an old doggerel verse. Still, many of the kingdoms as known to history are more or less in line with one another, and even so far north the southward tapering shape of India as a whole would tend to give a triangular shape to equal divisions of the land having their bases to the north.

2 Reading Dantapura, as in D., for atāḥ puram. One MS. has antāṇapuraṃ.

3 So reading, with D., for yo + lacuna of the text.

4 Pali Asakas.

5 Pali Māhiṃsati.

6 Supplied from D. Text has lacuna. The MSS. have ca vartinām and vartinām, which can plausibly be restored c’avartināṁ.

7 Supplied from D.

8 D. 2. 237 goes on to name them.

9 All the affairs of these six kingdoms.” And so from that time the brāhmaṇa Mahā-Govinda administered all the affairs of the seven kingdoms. And he taught seven hundred thousand brāhmaṇas and seven hundred young householders1 to recite the mantras, saying to them, “Repeat after me.”

All this became known,8 and brāhmaṇas and laymen, townsmen and countrymen came to recognise that the brāhmaṇa Govinda was a man of great parts. “The Āryan Mahā-Govinda,” said they, “beholds Great Brahmā with his own eyes. It is after deliberating and taking counsel with Great Brahmā that he administers all his affairs.”

Then, honoured sirs, the brāhmaṇa Mahā-Govinda heard that the brāhmaṇas and laymen, townsmen and countrymen were regarding the Āryan Mahā-Govinda as a man of great parts and believed that he was seeing Great Brahmā with his own eyes and that it was by deliberating with Great Brahmā that he administered all affairs. So he said, “I do not see Great Brahmā with my own eyes, (210) nor do I deliberate and consult with Great Brahmā when I administer affairs. It is not well nor seemly that I should accept this false and fictitious praise. Now I have heard teachers of the old things, men advanced in years, old, aged, venerable and at the end of their term of life, say that Great Brahmā comes within the vision of the man who for the four rainy months meditates in solitude the meditation of pity, and that whatever that man sets his heart on is granted him in answer to his prayer.4 Let me now then for the four rainy months meditate the meditation of pity in solitude, if, that is, my lord Reṇu allows me.”

King Reṇu said to Mahā-Govinda, “Let it be then, O Mahā-Govinda, as you wish.”

Then, honoured sirs, Mahā-Govinda meditated the
meditation of pity in solitude for the four rainy months. And when the four rainy months were over, on the fast-day, on the fourteenth of the month Pausa, he washed his head and put on white and clean garments. His body bathed, he lit a fire on the flag-stone which was close by between the altar and the sacred fire and which was smeared with melted butter. He then sat down in “the house of the faithful” with his face to the north.

Then, honoured sirs, before long there appeared a great radiance in the northern quarter. And Maha-Govinda saw it, and the sacred fire and which was smeared with melted butter, and the hair on his body bristled, because, of a truth, he was seeing what he had never seen before. Then in no long a time Great Brahma came through the air from the north and stood above the brahman Maha-Govinda. And Maha-Govinda looking up (211) saw Great Brahma standing over him in the air. When he had seen this he held out his joined hands towards Great Brahma and addressed him in a verse:

**Verse:**

> Whether, Lord, thou art Power, Glory, or Light, we knowing thee not, ask that we may know.

When this had been said, honoured sirs, Great Brahma replied to the brahman Maha-Govinda in a verse:

**Verse:**

> In Brahma’s world they know me as the Eternal Youth. So do you, Govinda, know me.

---

The brähman Mahā-Govinda said to Great Brahmā in a verse:

> A seat, water for the feet, sweet cakes and also drink, accept from me, O Brahmā. To thee the best I bring.

Great Brahmā replied to the brähman Mahā-Govinda in a verse:

> I accept the seat, the water for the feet, the sweet cakes, and the drink, O Govinda. Bring me the best.

The brähman Mahā-Govinda said to Great Brahmā in verse:

> Whether it be for my weal in this life or for my happiness in the world beyond, I would fain get leave to ask the question that is in my mind.

(212) Great Brahmā replied to the brahman Mahā-Govinda in verse:

> Whether it be for your weal in this life or for your happiness in the world beyond, I grant you leave to ask the question that is in your mind.

And then, honoured sirs, the brähman Mahā-Govinda reflected: “I have been offered by Great Brahmā the boon of an answer to my question. What then shall I ask Great Brahmā? Shall I consider what is profitable for this world or what is profitable for the world beyond? But I know that what is profitable for this world concerns the five strands of sensual desires. Let me then ask Great Brahmā a question concerning what is profitable for the world beyond.”

So, honoured sirs, the brahman Mahá-Govinda asked Great Brahmá a question about what is profitable for the world beyond.

**Verse:**

> I ask Great Brahmā, the Eternal Youth, I that doubt ask thee that doubtest not concerning acts of worship.

---

1. Pōjadhā, Pali uposatha.
3. Reading odda for ōhata.
4. Senart is far from satisfied that his restoration of the text here is correct.
5. Śrīdāhārāṃ gṛihā.
6. Rhys Davids, Dial. 2, pp. 257–8, thus comments on the introduction of these details in the Mhūv. version of the story: “The whole point of the story in the Dīgha is the way in which Brahma describes his ideal brahmin as quite emancipated from animistic superstitions and practices. He gains access to Brahma by practising... the Rapture of Mercy, one of the Brahma-vihāras or sublime conditions. The Mahāvastu is not satisfied with that. It makes him add to it the kindling of the Mystic Fire, Agni.” At the same time, it is worth considering whether this may not be due to the fact that the Mhūv. is following an older version of the story where the purely religious motive was stronger and not yet weakened by a humanistic ethicalism.
7. It is interesting to note that while the second line is exactly the same in D. (2. 240), the first is entirely different. D. has varṇavāt yasanā sirīmā na nu form asi mārīsa, “O vision fair, O glorious and divine! Who art thou, lord?” (Dial. 2. 273).
8. This formula is, in the translation, omitted from the rest of the dialogue.
9. Reading mam for yam.
11. Agram. The Mhūv. text is here simpler than D., and may possibly suggest that agra in the latter, occurring as the word does in the strange and obscure expressions agham puchati and agham no karoti, should be emended into agra “the best,” to correspond with the agra of our text.
12. Literally, "considering", ārahyā.
13. Paricāriya. Senart suggests that paricāriya here is for paricāriya, D. 2. 241 has paravādityesa, “the things that others want to know.” The readings of the MSS., paravādityesa for D. and parivādityesa for the Mhūv., would seem to leave the question open as to which has the better reading.
acting, what performing, and what course pursuing can a mortal man attain Brahmā's immortal world?

Great Brahmā replied to the brāhman Mahā-Govinda in a verse:

_He among men who abandons thought of 'me', is intent of mind, compassionate and aloof, is free from seeking odours and innocent of fornication_, he, O brāhman, though a mortal, attains the immortal world of Brahmā.

(213) Then, honoured sirs, the brāhman Mahā-Govinda said to Great Brahmā, "I know what my lord Great Brahmā means when he talks of abandoning thoughts of 'me'. It means that a man goes forth from home into the homeless state, renouncing his property, whether it be small or large, and leaving his family circle, whether it be small or large. And whether he comes from a high or low family, he sheds every mark of the householder, takes his cloak, bowl and robe, trains himself in the rules of morality, acquires purity and innocence of fornication, he, O lord Great Brahma, is born of solitude and is full of joy and ease. This I know is what my lord Great Brahma's meaning when he talks of 'aloof'.

"I know also what my lord Great Brahmā means by 'intention'._

"I know also what my lord Great Brahmā means by 'aloof'._

Great Brahmā replied to the brāhman Mahā-Govinda in a verse:

_Anger and lies and doubt, meanness, overweening conceit and envy, jealousy, hate and words of wrath against others. These, O brāhman, are the reeking odours whereby men are cloaked and enveloped, doomed to ways of woe in hell, and shut out from Brahmā's world._

Then the lord Mahā-Govinda said to Great Brahmā, "Now and 'compassionate'. It is that a man abides pervading one quarter of the world with thoughts of compassion, abundant, lofty, single, infinite, free from hatred and ill-will, and so with the second quarter, the third and the fourth, up and down, across, everywhere, the whole wide world. This I know is my lord Great Brahmā's meaning when he talks of 'aloof' and 'compassionate'."

(214) "But I do not know what my lord Great Brahmā means when he talks of 'being free of reeking odours',"

_O Brahmā, what are these reeking odours among men? I do not understand this. Tell me, O Mighty One._

_What is it by which men are cloaked and enveloped, doomed to the ways of woe in hell, and shut out from Brahmā's world?_

Great Brahmā replied to the brāhman Mahā-Govinda in a verse:

_Anger and lies and doubt, meanness, overweening conceit and envy, jealousy, hate and words of wrath against others. These, O brāhman, are the reeking odours whereby men are cloaked and enveloped, doomed to ways of woe in hell and shut out from Brahmā's world._

Then the lord Mahā-Govinda said to Great Brahmā, "Now
I know what my lord Great Brahmā means when he talks of ‘reeking odours’. But then it is not possible for me while I stay at home to live the wholly bright,1 the wholly blameless, the wholly pure and wholly clean brahma-life. Life is a brief affair.2 We must go to the world beyond, for there is no avoiding death for one who has been born. Therefore we must gain knowledge, take thought, wake up, do good, live the brahma-life and eschew every sinful act in this world.3 (215) So, my lord Great Brahmā, I will go forth from home into the homeless state, if thou dost consent.”

When this had been said, honoured sirs, Great Brahmā replied to the brahman Mahā-Govinda, “Let it be as you wish, O Mahā-Govinda.”4

“I5 have heard that the Exalted One was at that time the brahman named Mahā-Govinda. Does the Exalted One remember?” The Exalted One replied to Pañcaśīkha the Gandharva, “Even so, Pañcaśīkha. I was at that time the brahman named Mahā-Govinda, and I remember it. But you have not heard, Pañcaśīkha, how the brahman Mahā-Govinda went forth from home into the homeless state.”

I, Pañcaśīkha, being then the brahman Mahā-Govinda,6 went to King Renu and said to him,

To you, King Renu, lord of the land, I declare that I am going forth, leaving your kingdom and my ministry here.

But, Pañcaśīkha, King Renu replied to the brahman Mahā-Govinda in a verse:

1 Reading tamkhaśiḥkhitam for samākhiṭiḥtam. See vol. 2, p. 114, n. 2.
2 Cf. A. 4. 136, appakam brahmaṁ jīvitaṁ manussānam.
3 This passage is differently placed in D. (2. 243), where it forms part of Govinda’s talk with the kings at a later point in the story. But the language in both versions is strikingly similar.
5 Sc. Pañcaśīkha, who here resumes his tale. This passage comes at the very end of the sūtra in D. (2. 251).
6 This is a curious turn of the story, at least when it is compared with the Pali version. It would seem at first sight to be a later addition, inserted to supply what was omitted when the Māhāvīra passed from Govinda’s conversation with Brahmā straight to the end of the story, without retelling his subsequent conversation with the nobles. It all may be, of course, a device to show that the Buddha’s memory was better than that of a Gandharva.

The brāhman Mahā-Govinda1 went to King Renu and replied to him in a verse:

Naught is lacking to my pleasures. I know of no one who molests me. But I have heard a voice that is not of man. What other course is there for me?

(216) King Renu said to the brāhman Mahā-Govinda in a verse:

What was this divine being who spoke, like? What did he say that, on hearing it you leave my house and everything?

The brāhman Mahā-Govinda replied to King Renu in a verse:

I used to be always eager for sacrifice when the festal day came round.4 I would kindle the sacred fire, arrayed in robes of kuśa grass. But then Brahmā the Eternal Youth appeared to me,5 and when I had heard his words I fain would leave your house and everything.

King Renu said to the brāhman Mahā-Govinda in a verse:

I believe the words that you have spoken, lord Govinda. Having heard the voice divine, what other course could you take?6

And lord Mahā-Govinda communicated other good words

---

1 The words evamukte Pañcaśīkha, “when this was said, Pañcaśīkha,” with which each stage in the Buddha’s narrative are introduced, are omitted in translating.
2 There are two verses.
3 Literally me sato, “me being,” genitive absolute. D. 2. 244 has pubba, “formerly” for sarvato “always.”
4 Literally “of the festal day.” upavastuṣṭa. Senart retains this orthography for the Prakrit-Pali upaṇuṣṭha on the analogy of the frequent nisastha for nisattha.
5 Ṛṣṇi. Senart assumes this to be a locative of akām, analogous to the forms anḥhami and mahamni cited by Hemacandra (3.116). Cf. Edgerton: Gram. § 20. 36.
6 Reading vartesi for varitemi.
he had heard. [Then King Renu said]1 "Whatever course be the lord Mahā-Govinda’s that also will be mine."

As a gem of beryl, pure without flaw or dross, pure like that shall I live with Govinda to instruct me.

The brāhmaṇ Mahā-Govinda said to King Renu in verses:\[212\]

1. If you give up the sensual pleasures by which worldly men are stained, it will be praiseworthy.\[213\] Be firm and steady in the power of forbearance.

2. This is the Way to Brahmā’s city; this is the Way Eternal, the Way that is proclaimed by those who know the true dharma, the Way that leads to birth in Brahmā’s world.\[218\]

Now, Pañcaśikha, the six kings heard that the brāhmaṇ Mahā-Govinda was going forth from home into the homeless state, and they hastily gathered together. Then, Pañcaśikha, the brāhmaṇ Mahā-Govinda went to the six kings and said to them, “Come, gentlemen, come, gentlemen. Seek another counsellor who will administer the affairs of your kingdoms. And why? Because I am going forth from home into the homeless state. For I have heard Great Brahmā with his own lips speak of reeking odours. Now it is not possible for one who dwells at home to live the wholly bright, the wholly blameless, the wholly pure and clean brahma-life. Life is a brief affair. We must go on to the world beyond. There is no avoiding death for one who has been born. Therefore we must seek knowledge, gain it, wake up, do good, and live the brahma-life, and commit no sinful act in this world.”

Then, Pañcaśikha, those six kings reflected: “Now these brāhmaṇs are greedy for wealth. What if we were to coax him with wealth.”

So, Pañcaśikha, the six kings sought to coax the brāhmaṇ Mahā-Govinda with wealth. “O Mahā-Govinda,” said they, “in these six kingdoms there is an abundance of worldly wealth, honest, honestly won, gathered and amassed by honest effort. Let the lord Mahā-Govinda, therefore, take of this wealth. Only, let him not go forth from home into the homeless state.”

But, Pañcaśikha, (218) the brāhmaṇ Mahā-Govinda replied to the six kings and said, “We have, as you say, an abundance of worldly wealth, which is honest, honestly won, gathered and amassed by honest effort. It is just that which I am renouncing in order to go forth from home into the homeless state. And why? Because I have heard Great Brahmā with his own lips speak of reeking odours. Now it is not possible for one who dwells at home to live the wholly bright, the wholly blameless, the wholly pure and clean brahma-life. Life is a brief affair. We must go on to the world beyond. There is no avoiding death for one who has been born. Therefore we must seek knowledge, gain it, wake up, do good and live the brahma-life, and commit no sin in this world.”

1. Omitted in text, but necessary to the context.
2. Reading akśa, as in D. 2. 244, for ākāśa, “in the air.” It is interesting to note that in D. one MS. has ākāśa.
3. In D. (2. 246) these verses are addressed to the six kings. That they are mistakenly placed here is proved by the plural verbs jāhatha and bhaṭhatha.
4. Rakta. D. has satta, “curse.”
5. In D. (2. 246) lasaṃ is different just here.
6. Saddharmavijñānākhyāto brahmalokopalayaḥ. D. has saddharmo sabbhi rakhkhilo brahmalokopalayitāḥ, “the Righteous Path that good men guard, to birth in Brahmā’s heaven” (Dial. 2. 277).
state. And why? Because I have heard Great Brahmā with his own lips speak of reeking odours. Now it is not possible for one who dwells at home to live the wholly bright, the wholly blameless, pure and clean brahma-life. Life is a brief affair. (219) We must go on to the world beyond. There is no avoiding death for one who has been born. Therefore we must seek knowledge, gain it, wake it, do good and live the brahma-life, and commit no sin in this world.

The six kings said to the brāhmaṇ Mahā-Govinda, "Well, then, Mahā-Govinda, wait for seven years, so that we may establish our sons and brothers in our several kingdoms. Then will we come with you. For whatever be the lord Mahā-Govinda's course, that also will be ours."

Mahā-Govinda replied to the six kings and said, "Nay, gentlemen, your seven years is far too long a time. I am going forth from home into the homeless state. And why? Because I have heard Great Brahmā with his own lips speak of reeking odours. Now it is not possible, etc." 8

Then the six kings said to the brāhmaṇ Mahā-Govinda, "Well, then, Mahā-Govinda, wait for six years." And they went on to ask him to wait for five years, four years, three years, two years, one year. 3 "Wait for seven months, so that we may establish our sons and brothers in our several kingdoms. Then will we come with you. For whatever be the lord Mahā-Govinda's course, that also will be ours."

But the brāhmaṇ Mahā-Govinda replied to the six kings and said, "Nay, gentlemen, your half-a-month 2 is far too long. I am going forth from home into the homeless state. And why? Because I have heard, etc." 3

Then the six kings said to the brāhmaṇ Mahā-Govinda, "Well then, Mahā-Govinda, wait for one week, so that we may establish our sons and brothers in our several kingdoms. Then will we come with you. For whatever be the lord Mahā-Govinda's course, that also will be ours."

Then did the brāhmaṇ Mahā-Govinda reply to the six kings and say, "Well, gentlemen, your week is short enough. Let it be then as you wish." 4

Then the brāhmaṇ Mahā-Govinda went to the seven thousand wealthy brāhmaṇs and the seven hundred young householders 5 and said to them, "Come, gentlemen, come, gentlemen. Now choose another preceptor who will teach you to recite the mantras. I am going forth from home into the homeless state. And why? Because I have heard Great Brahmā with his own lips speak of reeking odours. . . ." 6

(220) The seven thousand wealthy brāhmaṇs and the seven hundred young householders replied to the brāhmaṇ Mahā-Govinda, saying, "Let not the lord Govinda go forth from home into the homeless state. This going forth, Mahā-Govinda, brings little profit, little wealth, little power and little praise. To be a brāhmaṇ, on the other hand, brings great profit, wealth, power and praise."

But the brāhmaṇ Mahā-Govinda said to the seven

---

1. Putrabhrātiṣṭha, cf. Pali putabhrāthika (DhA. 1, 214).
2. Lacuna in text. But the words omitted are so obvious that they need not be supplied even in translation. It is not clear whether this lacuna is in the MSS. or whether it is Senart's device to avoid repetition.
3. The text is evam peyālam paśīca, etc. "and so on for five years, etc." For peyāla, see p. 198, n. 2.
4. Lacuna, as before.
5. Lacuna as before.

---

1. Evam sarvastra karṇyaṃ peyālam paśīca, etc.
2. Ardhamāñca. But this period has not been named above. For this motif of reducing a stipulated period from seven years to one week cf. V. 2, 182; M. 1, 62-3 (=D. 2, 214). (The translator owes these references to Miss I. B. Horner.)
3. Lacuna as before.
4. Sukhi bhavaha yasyādānīṃ kālam manyatha.
5. See p. 205.
6. Lacuna as before.
to the brāhman Mahā-Govinda, “But the noble Mahā-Govinda is our husband when we need a husband,1 and our friend when we need a friend. And whatever be the course of our noble Mahā-Govinda, that also will be ours.” The brāhman Mahā-Govinda replied to his forty wives, who were of equal standing, and said, “Let it be then, ladies,2 as you wish.”

Then, Pañcaśīkha, the brāhman Mahā-Govinda on that seventh day had his hair and beard cut. He put on the yellow robes and went forth from home into the homeless state. And when he had gone forth the seven kings also went forth after him, (223) and the seven thousand wealthy brāhmans and the seven hundred young householders and the forty wives of equal standing, without mentioning a number of courtesans, all went forth after him. The whole company was several hundreds, several thousands.

Then, Pañcaśīkha, the brāhman Mahā-Govinda, aloof from desires and rid of passion, taught the dharma to his disciples to fit them for the companionship of Brahmā’s world.3 And, Pañcaśīkha, those of the disciples of the brāhman Mahā-Govinda who wholly and on all points understood the dharma taught by him, were reborn into the companionship of Brahmā’s world, while those who did not wholly and on all points understand the dharma taught by him, were reborn among the Kāmāvacara devas. Some of them were reborn in the company of the Cāturmahārājika devas,4 others in the company of the devas of Trayastrimśa,5 others in the company of the Yāma devas,6 others in the company of the Tusiṭa devas,7 others in the company of the Nirmāṇarati devas,8 and others in the company of the Paranirmitavāsavartin devas.9

1 Literally, “on the occasion for a husband,” bhavatāḥ. D. 2. 249 has bhavatā bhavituhāmānam, “husband of our heart’s desire” (Dial. 2. 279).
2 Bhāvyas, pl. of bhāti, fem. of bhavan.
3 Text has sakartaṇāya only, dative of purpose. Sakartaṇā is here the equivalent of Pali sakartaṇā. At 2. 118 (text) it has a meaning more in accord with its supposed Sk. derivation from saka-vrata, namely, “communal devotion” or “belief held in common.” See vol. 2, p. 114, n. 9.
4 See vol. 1, p. 25, n. 3.
5 Ibid., n. 2.
6 Ibid., p. 28, n. 1.
7 Ibid., D. 4, n. 11.
8 Ibid., p. 28, n. 3.
9 Ibid., n. 4.
Again, Pañcaśīkha, the women and men who showed hardness of heart to the brāhman Mahā-Govinda and his disciples were, on the dissolution of their bodies at death, reborn to woe, to the way of ill, to ruin in the hells. But, Pañcaśīkha, those who were kindly disposed towards the brāhman Mahā-Govinda and his disciples were, on the dissolution of their bodies at death, reborn in the way of bliss, in heaven, in the company of devas.

Again, Pañcaśīkha, whatever village or town the brāhman Mahā-Govinda came to and stayed at, there he became as a king of a kingdom, as a deva to the laymen, and as Brahmā to the brahmans. And whenever he walked along an unfrequented way, there also was he as a king of a kingdom, as a deva to the laymen, and as Brahmā to the brahmans.

Now this became known, and when brāhmans and laymen, townspeople and countrymen tripped, they recited the solemn utterance, 'Glory be to the noble Mahā-Govinda. Glory be to the minister of seven.'

This did the Exalted One relate when he was staying at Rājagriha on Mount Gridhrakūṭa. And while this exposition was being given to him, the elated Pāficasīkha, the brahman named Govinda. Then, too, when I went forth to the religious life a great multitude accompanied me. And now, also, has a great multitude accompanied me as I have gone forth.1

Here ends the Govindīya-sūtra dealing with a former life of the Exalted One.

FORMER BUDDHAS

The Exalted One, the perfect Buddha, having fully realised the aim he had set himself, was staying at Sṛvastī, in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍa’s park, and teaching devas and men. He was respected, esteemed, revered, honoured and venerated, and so on up to he had won control over his heart. And in whatever states exalted Buddhas desire to abide, in these do they abide. (225) Their hearts are upright, gentle, supple, composed, loving, controlled, calm, free, pure, stainless, honest, steady, firm, rid of attachment, not clinging, incorrupt, sober, like the earth, like water, like fire, like air, to the touch, like Indra’s column, and emancipated. Their knowledge is emancipated. They have

---

1. The same text, in D. 2. 252 the object of the sūtra is shown to be doctrinal; it is given as a proof that renunciation always brings its reward. In the Mahāv., with its fondness for edifying tales, it is a jātaka illustrating and emphasising an incident in the Buddha’s career by recalling a similar one in a former life of his. For a further discussion of this passage, see Senart, vol. I, p. 246, n. 2.

2. The colophon of the text has been thought to be inspired by the Many Buddhas. The subject is only cursorily dealt with there. See vol. 1 (transl.), p. 46, n. 2.


4. Text has viśālana nidānam krita—describing the occasion in detail, i.e., as such occasions are usually described, e.g., “to open out,” “to remove,” or “to trip,” “to stumble.”

5. Reading cetovaisprāpti for -prāpti of the text.

removed obstacles;¹ they are not fenced in² nor obstructed. They are the best of those who have the dharma as their banner, the best of brāhmanas, nobles, young householders. They are versed in the Vedas. They speak what is true, profitable, certain, unequivocal, not what is false and untrue. [Therefore the Tathāgata is so named because he does not speak what is not true.]³

Now there the Exalted One said to the venerable Ānanda, "With only one bowl of alms, Ānanda, I am going to sit here for three months and abide in the states of former Tathāgatas, Arhans and perfect Buddhas. No one is to intrude on me in any way." "So be it, Lord," said the venerable Ānanda in obedience to the Exalted One.

So the Exalted One sat there for three months with one bowl of alms, abiding in the states of former Tathāgatas, Arhans and perfect Buddhas.

Then when the three months were over the Exalted One emerged in the evening from his seclusion. Coming out of his hut⁴ he sat down cross-legged. Now the venerable Ānanda saw the Exalted One sitting down cross-legged in the shelter of his hut,⁵ and on seeing him, he went to him, bowed at his feet, and sat down to one side. As he thus sat down on one side, he said to the Exalted One, "The Exalted One's faculties are calm and sublime, his complexion is clear, and his face is shining. Verily, the Exalted One is abiding in sublime states."

When this had been spoken, the Exalted One said to Ānanda, "Even so, Ānanda, when he so wishes, Ānanda, the Tathāgata can sit down with one bowl of alms for the kalpa or (226) or what is left of the kalpa. And why? Because, Ānanda, it was so in the case of former Tathāgatas, Arhans and perfect Buddhas who abode in these states, inasmuch as they had won the perfection⁶ of charity, morality, forbearance, energy, meditation and knowledge.

An incalculable infinite kalpa ago there lived a Tathāgata, Arhan and perfect Buddha named IndradhvaJā.⁷ Now, Ānanda, the royal city of the Tathāgata, Arhan and perfect Buddha Indradhvaja was named Indratapanā, which was twelve yojanas long from east to west and seven wide from south to north.⁸ It was encircled by seven ramparts made of gold and faced with gold.

Again, Ānanda, the royal city of Indratapanā was surrounded by seven rows of bright and beautiful palm-trees made of the seven precious substances, gold, silver, pearl, beryl, crystal, white coral, and ruby. When the trunk was of gold the leaves and fruit were of silver. When the trunk was of silver the leaves and fruit were of pearl; when the trunk was of pearl, the leaves and fruit were of beryl; when the trunk was of beryl the leaves and fruit were of white coral; when the trunk was of white coral the leaves and fruit were of ruby, and when the trunk was of ruby the leaves and fruit were of gold. And, Ānanda, when these palm-trees were stirred and shaken by the wind, there was a rustling sound⁹ that was gentle, pleasant and charming, not grating on the ears, but like the sound of the five musical instruments played in harmony by expert performers.¹⁰ (227) And so, Ānanda, in the royal city of Indratapanā men then were intoxicated¹¹ by the music of the leaves of the palm-trees, and, endowed and provided with the five strands of sensual desires they diverted, enjoyed and amused themselves.

¹ Literally, "with cross-bars removed," reading ukṣiplaṇārīka for -parīṣha. Cf. Pali ukkhitaṇārīka. The latter expression is found combined with saṃkhītapaṇīka, "with trenches filled," etc., as epithets of an Arhan. The text would thus seem to be faulty here, having one compound instead of two or more, and that one consisting of the participle of one and the substantive of the other. At M. 1. 139 = A. 3. 84, there are five such epithets of an Arhan.

² Reading avarāṇā prākārā "with no walls surrounding," for aṃvhitaprākārā, which would mean "with walls thrown round (them)."
³ This sentence, as Senart remarks, is obviously a gloss which has found its way into the text.
⁴ Vihāra.
⁵ Kuṣṭha, here.
⁶ literally, "it is the nature or characteristic, etc., of," bhasati and genitive.
⁷ Pāramīlā, so Nett. 87, but elsewhere in Pali pārami. "In later literature there is mentioned a group of ten pāramis," P.E.D., where references are given.
⁸ Also mentioned in vol. 1. See Index.
⁹ Text has vāsḍhena only, after the sapta yojanāni, but "from south to north" is clearly implied after the general description of such cities.
¹⁰ Literally "a sound came forth," ghoṣa niṣcarati.
¹¹ The simile is shortened in translation. In full it would be "just as the sound of the five musical instruments ... is gentle ... so the sound of the palm-trees ..."
Again, Ananda, the royal city of Indratapana was encircled by seven bright and beautiful railings made of the seven precious substances, gold, silver, pearl, beryl, crystal, white coral and ruby. Where the pillar was of gold, the cross-bars, the supports and the base were of silver; where the pillar was of silver, they were of pearl; where the pillar was of pearl, they were of beryl; where the pillar was of beryl, they were of crystal; where the pillar was of crystal, they were of white coral; where the pillar was of white coral, they were of ruby, and where the pillar was of ruby, they were of gold.

Again, Ananda, these railings were faced with two net-like fabrics, one of gold and the other of silver. On the gold network there were bells of silver, and on the silver network golden bells.

Again, Ananda, the royal city of Indratapana had three gates on each side, bright and beautiful and made of the seven precious substances, gold, silver, pearl, beryl, crystal, white coral and ruby. These gates, Ananda, had roofs of tiles made of the two precious metals, gold and silver. These gates had steps made of the two precious metals, gold and silver. The floor beneath these gates was made of the two precious metals, gold and silver. These gates had beams made of the two precious metals, gold and silver. They had buttresses made of the two precious metals, gold and silver.

Again, Ananda, these gates had opening panels made of the four precious substances, gold, silver, pearl and beryl.

They were faced with plates made of the two precious metals, gold and silver.

Again, Ananda, these gates had shrines for relics made of the two precious metals, gold and silver. In front of these gates pillars were erected, which were embedded in the ground to the depth of three men's length, were three men's length high, and twelve men's length in diameter. They were bright and beautiful, made of the seven precious substances, gold, silver, pearl, beryl, crystal, white coral and ruby.

Again, Ananda, these gates were covered with two net-like fabrics, one of gold and the other of silver. On the golden net-like fabric (229) were bells of silver and on the silver one golden bells. And, Ananda, when these net-like fabrics were stirred and shaken by the wind, they gave out a sound that was gentle, pleasant and charming, not grating on the ear. It was just like the sound of the five musical instruments played in harmony by expert performers.

Again, Ananda, the royal city of Indratapana was full of such sounds as those of elephants, horses, chariots, infantry, drums, cymbals, trumpets, flutes, lutes, songs and musical instruments. It was full of cries bidding men to eat, consume, drink, give gifts, live righteously, and of cries of welcome to recluses and brāhmans.

Again, Ananda, in the centre of the royal city of Indratapana there was a pillar named Valayā, which was bright and beautiful, and made of the seven precious substances,
gold, silver, pearl, beryl, crystal, white coral, and ruby. It was twelve yojanas high and embedded in the ground to the depth of four.

This did the Exalted One say. And when he had so spoken the Master went on to say more. “There was a Master,” said he, “named Indradhvaja, golden of countenance, distinguished by hundreds of virtues.

“He was a seer of great power, a Leader of the Sangha. He instructed seven hundred koṭis.

“(230) He, the honoured Leader of a crowd of recluses, entered the well-built city of Indratapanā.”


This did the Exalted One say. And when he had so spoken the Master went on to say more. “In the succession of these Buddhas,” said he, “Sūryādhvaja was the last.”

“He was a seer of great power, a Leader of the Sangha. He instructed seven hundred koṭis. He, the honoured leader of a crowd of recluses, entered the well-built city of Puṣpāvatī.”


Now, Ananda, when Sūryādhvaja was the Tathāgata the capital city was named Puṣpāvatī. It was twelve yojanas long from east to west and seven wide from south to north. It was surrounded by seven walls of gold faced with gold and encircled by seven rows of palm-trees which were bright and beautiful, and so on up to when the trunk of the palm-tree was of gold the leaves and fruit were of silver. And, Ananda, when the palm-trees were stirred and shaken by the wind they gave forth a gentle and charming sound. The people in the royal city of Puṣpāvatī were intoxicated by the music of the leaves and fruit, and, endowed and provided with the five strands of sensual desires, they diverted, enjoyed and amused themselves.

Again, Ananda, the royal city of Puṣpāvatī was encircled by seven railings, bright and beautiful, made of the seven precious substances, and so on as in the case of the royal city of Indratapanā. The royal city of Puṣpāvatī was full of such sounds as those of elephants, horses, chariots, infantry, drums, tabours, cymbals, trumpets, flutes, lutes, songs and music. It was full of cries bidding men to eat, consume, drink, give gifts, and live righteously, and of cries of welcome to recluses and brāhmans. This royal city had a pillar named Valayā, bright and beautiful, and made of the seven precious substances, gold, silver, pearl, beryl, crystal, white coral and ruby. It was twelve yojanas high and embedded in the earth to the depth of four.

This did the Exalted One say. And when he had so spoken the Master went on to say more. “In the succession of these Buddhas,” said he, “Sūryādhvaja was the last.”

“He was a seer of great power, a Leader of the Sangha. He instructed seven hundred koṭis. He, the honoured leader of a crowd of recluses, entered the well-built city of Puṣpāvatī.”


---

1 These adjectives are nominative in the text, instead of instrumental in agreement with tāla-pañcika.
2 Suññamanussayo. See p. 211, n. 7.
3 Indratapanādhisthita. See p. 233, n. 7.
4 Text has the locative case, emphasised besides by tatra, but the qualifying adjective, aśānyā, “not empty”, is nominative.
5 Pacchimaka, BSk. and Pali; Sk. paścimaka.
This did the Exalted One say. And when he had so spoken, the Master went on to say more. "The Master Supātra," said he, "perfect in beneficence and compassion and contemplating the way of the true dharma lived on for a full hundred kalpas, and instructed thirty-two nayutas of kotis."

After he had preached the word of the renowned calm

he proclaimed the Tathāgata Varunottama. (235) Varunottama proclaimed Dhītarāṣṭra. Dhītarāṣṭra proclaimed Śvetarāṣṭra. Śvetarāṣṭra proclaimed Śikhin. Śikhin proclaimed the Tathāgata who was also named Śikhin.

In the succession of these Buddhas sixty-two were named Śikhin. All lived in the kalpa of Paduma.

Mighty in power, routing the hosts of their enemies they instructed many disciples in the true way.

The last Tathāgata, Ānanda, proclaimed the Tathāgata Virūḍhaka. Virūḍhaka proclaimed Sunetra. Sunetra proclaimed Sujāta. Sujāta in the course of one single day instructed eighty-four thousand nayutas of disciples, and on the same day he passed entirely away. And, Ānanda, the true dharma of that Tathāgata survived for thirty thousand years.

This did the Exalted One say. And when he had so spoken, the Master went on to say still more.

Now, Ānanda, the Tathāgata Ānanda proclaimed the Tathāgata Utapa. Utapa proclaimed Brahmottama. Brahmottama proclaimed Suddhārṣaṇa. And, Ānanda, when

Footnote:
1. Literally, "made the word spreading calm," kṣemavaistirikam pṛava-canam karitāḥ. Kṣemavaistikham, here at first sight is an adjective qualifying pṛavacanam, i.e. "the word spreading calm," but it seems better to take it as a substantive, either in apposition to pṛavacanam, i.e. "the word which was the renowned calm" (sc. Nirvana) or as the object to pṛavacanam karitāḥ taken as a compound verb of saying. For this sense of vāistirikham Senart compares Pali silāhariha at J. 1. 29. See also Edgerton, B.H.S.D.
2. Not mentioned elsewhere as the name of a kalpa.
3. Vinay, sg. for pl., i.e. "each of them" did so. According to Miss I. B. Horner there are several instances of such a usage of sg. for pl. in Pali.
5. Saṁpaṭhā for ān, adjective qualifying pṛavahān. So prthū for prthūn.
6. Ekinā dūnasūriṇa. Ekinā is the instrumental of a consonantal stem of eka. See also vol. 2. 103 (text); 3. 12, 13 (text). See Edgerton, Gram. § 21. 14.
Sudarśana was the Tathāgata the royal capital was named Devapura. It was twelve yojanas long and seven wide. It was surrounded by seven walls of gold (236), and encircled by seven rows of palm-trees, bright and beautiful, made of the seven precious substances. It is to be described in the same way as Abhayapurā.

In the succession of these Buddhas Sudarśana was the last. Mighty in power, Leader of a host of men, he instructed three hundred koṭis. He, the honoured Leader of a throng of disciples, entered the well-built city of Devapura.


In the succession of these Buddhas the last was named Jinendra. There were three hundred of these sublime Buddhas all named Jinendra.

Mighty in power were they, Leaders of a host of seers: in that one kalpa of Mahāyaśa, thrice three hundred koṭis was the great assembly of these Leaders.

(238) Thrice three thousand years was the term of life of these Leaders, and thrice thirty thousand years did the true dharma survive after they had passed entirely away.

Now, Ānanda, the last Tathāgata named Jinendra proclaimed the Tathāgata Sarvārthadārsin. Sarvārthadārsin lived on in the world for a thousand kalpas contemplating the way of the true dharma. And then he proclaimed Aśoka. Aśoka proclaimed Dhvajottama. Dhvajottama proclaimed Nyagrodharāja. Nyagrodharāja proclaimed Vipulayaśa. Vipulayaśa proclaimed Jayanta. Jayanta proclaimed Śākyamuni. And, Ānanda, when Śākyamuni was the Tathāgata and perfect Buddha the royal capital was named Simhapuri. It was twelve yojanas long and seven wide. It was surrounded by seven walls of gold, and encircled by seven rows of palm-trees, bright and beautiful, and made of the seven precious substances. It is to be described in the same way as Indratapanā. In Simhapuri there was a column named Valayā, which is to be described as above.

In the succession of these Buddhas, Śākyamuni was the last. Mighty in power, Leader of a host of seers, he instructed three hundred koṭis. He, the honoured Leader of a throng of recluses, entered the well-built city of Simhapuri.

(239) Now, Ānanda, the Tathāgata Śākyamuni proclaimed the Tathāgata Sarvadāya. Sarvadāya proclaimed Atyuttama. Atyuttama proclaimed Uttara. Uttara proclaimed Sāmitāvin.1 The Tathāgata Sāmitāvin lived on in the world for a full thousand kalpas, contemplating the way of the dharma. And then he proclaimed the Tathāgata Baladatta. Baladatta proclaimed Bāgṛathana. Bāgṛathana proclaimed Angirasa. Angirasa proclaimed Nāgottama. Nāgottama proclaimed Nāgabala. Nāgabala proclaimed Puṣpa. Puṣpa proclaimed Puṣputtara. Puṣputtara proclaimed Meru. Meru proclaimed Ratnāgni. Ratnāgni proclaimed Puṣpakrita. Puṣpakrita proclaimed Dīpaṃkara. And, Ānanda, when Dīpaṃkara was the Tathāgata the royal capital was Dipavati. It was twelve yojanas long and seven wide. It was surrounded by seven walls of gold and encircled by seven rows of palm-trees, bright and beautiful, and made of the seven precious substances. The whole description is to be made as before.

1 Here spelt Sāmitāvina.
In the succession of these Buddhas, Dīpamkara was the last. Mighty in power, Leader of a host of seers, he instructed eighty thousand disciples. He, the honoured Leader of a throng of recluses, entered the well-built city of Dīpavīti.

(240) Now, Ānanda, the Tathāgata Dīpamkara proclaimed the Tathāgata Sarvabhūṁi. Sarvabhūṁi proclaimed Padumuttara. Padumuttara proclaimed Atyuccagamin. Atyuccagamin proclaimed Yaśottara. Yaśottara proclaimed Sākyamuni. Sākyamuni proclaimed Arthadāsī. Arthadāsī proclaimed Tiśya. Tiśya proclaimed Puṣya. Puṣya proclaimed Viśvāsa, Viśvāsa proclaimed Śikhin. Śikhin proclaimed Viśvabhū. Viśvabhū proclaimed Krakucchanda. Krakucchanda proclaimed Konākamuni. Konākamuni proclaimed Kāśyapa. Kāśyapa proclaimed Sākyamuni. And I who am Sākyamuni have proclaimed Maitreyā. Now, when Maitreyā will be the Tathāgata the royal capital will be named Ketumati. It will be twelve yojanas long and seven wide. It will be surrounded by seven walls of gold, and encircled by seven rows of palm-trees, bright and beautiful, and made of the seven precious substances. The whole previous description will apply to it.

In the succession of these Buddhas the last will be Maitreyā. Mighty in power, the Leader of a host of seers, he will instruct seven hundred koṭiḥ. He, the honoured Leader of a throng of recluses, will enter the well-built city of Ketumati.

(241) He who recounts the extolled Buddhas, the drivers of tameable men, from Indrādhvaja on to the future Maitreyā, he, the Master, Ānanda, shines like the sun, as, in the Aśoka Grove, he questions the Lion-man, who is splendid in majesty, the Conqueror who has conquered the lusts, saying, "Wonderful is the Exalted One's fame, wonderful is his

1 Miss I. B. Horner calls the translator’s attention to Nīḍāsa i. 59 where seven “stings,” or “barbs,” salias, are mentioned, of which the “sting of doubt” is the last.  
2 Here called the “Śakyān-Lion,” Śakyasimha.  
3 Viśvabhū is omitted here. See p. 230.  
4 Ananta + lacuna in text. ? supply prajñā.  
5 Kevacirām. Keva is Sk. kiwat, and kiwat, Pali kivat and kīva.  
6 Ucayātām (sic) for uccatām.
in the world? For how long did they live on for the sake of the whole world?

For thus does the golden-bright Buddha, in rapture and joy tell the praises of the great Seers, the Buddhas of long ago.

For thus does the Buddha, who has insight into the highest good, and is the equal and peer of Buddhas, reveal the wondrous power of all Buddhas.

"The sphere of Buddhas," said he, "is beyond thought, beyond compare and beyond measure." "Enraptured was I, Lord, on hearing these immortal words.

"Infinite was the gain to the worlds of men and of devas and of Brahmā when he said that the sphere of the Buddhas was beyond the thought of others.

"That one Śākyan prince, offspring of Śākyans, of the highest Śākyan stock, the joy of the Śākyan clan, the Buddha, with those words woke the world to truth."

"After Dipāmkara, O Ananda, a full kōṭi of kalpas passed, (243) and then the Daśabala Sarvābhibhū arose as a Light of the world."

"When the Leader Sarvābhibhū had passed to his bourne, a hundred thousand kalpas afterwards the Daśabala Padumottara arose.

"When the Sugata Padumottara had passed entirely away, a hundred thousand kalpas afterwards the Exalted One, Atyuccagāmin, appeared."

"When the Saviour Atyuccagāmin had passed entirely away, having won fame throughout the world, five hundred kalpas afterwards there arose the Buddha Yaśottara.

"When the Buddha Yaśottara had passed away, a hundred kalpas afterwards there arose in the blind and lost world the valiant Buddha Śākyamuni.

"When the perfect Buddha Śākyamuni had passed away, Arthadarśin arose. Nine and ninety kalpas afterwards, O Ananda, did he arise."

1 Praṭīkārya. See, e.g., vol. 1, p. 193 (trans.).
2 Text has tatha "thus," only, but the reference is clearly to the words quoted by Ananda as having been spoken by the Buddha.
3 I.e., the Tathāgata, so-called from his possession of the "ten powers." See vol. 1, p. 126.
4 Reading Dipāloko, nominative in apposition, for Dipāloke.

Five and ninety kalpas afterwards the Light of the world Yaśiṣv arose; two and ninety kalpas after him the valiant man Puṣya arose in the world.

Eighty-nine kalpas afterwards Vīpāṣyin arose in the world; thirty kalpas afterwards arose Śīkhin and Viśvabhi."

"(Then there followed) the great light Krakucchanda, Konaṁkumā and the glorious Kāśyapa. And in the same auspicious kalpa, I also arose, O Ananda."

"And I have proclaimed that in a future age in this kalpa there will be a high-minded, mighty Buddha named Maitreya.

"For a whole kalpa did the exalted Dipāmkara live in the world; Sarvābhibhū also lived on for a kalpa for the sake of the world.

Padumottara lived in the world for a full kōṭi of years. (244) The exalted Atyuccagāmin lived on for a hundred thousand years.

Yaśottara lived on for ninety thousand years, Arthadarśin for . . . 3, Tiṣya for ninety-five thousand, and Puṣya for ninety-two.

"In those days of yore the life of the Buddha Vīpāṣyin was eighty thousand years, and that of Śīkhin seventy thousand.

"In those days of yore the life of Viśvabhi was sixty thousand years, 4 that of Krakucchanda fifty thousand, that of Konaṁkumā thirty thousand, and that of Kāśyapa twenty thousand.

"And now, Ananda, the measure of the life of me who am sovereign of the Śākyans in this insignificant world is one hundred years.

1 Eva, "thus," "also."
2 Bhadrakāla. Cf. Būd. A., 191, yaśmīn kappā pañca buddhā upaśjanti so bhaddakāpa. There is something wrong with the text here. It reads yaśottara navatī varjasahasrāṇi arthadarśi aṣṭhāsī. But according to the list already given more than once Yaśottara should be followed by Śākyamuni. Also the absence of a copula makes arthadarśi look like an adjective qualifying Yaśottara, instead of being, what it actually is, the name of the Buddha following Śākyamuni. Two MSS., however, insert Śākyasingha, i.e., Śākyamuni. That, of course, would upset the metre. It thus would seem as if the last and first lines respectively of two successive couplets have dropped out, and these would have given the years both of Śākyamuni and Arthadarśin. 4 Varjasahasrāṇi is understood with this and the next two numerals.
"Some thrived on their magic power, others on their deeds; but then putting aside their magic power and their deeds, they passed away in the middle of their sojourn in heaven."

"Like the blazing sun when it is high in the sky in autumn, so did Dīpankara stand with his radiance pervading a hundred yojanas."

"Irradiating all the world, teaching the dharma which so rarely appears, he lit up the world, and hence was he so named."

"The Daśabala Sarubbhibhū prevailed over thousands of kotiś of beings, and led them to the immortal Way. Hence was he styled 'invincible'."

"Padumottara went to the park in his fair city, and there enjoyed himself in the pool. In the pool he saw a lotus growing as big as a chariot wheel. And while the large lotus was fading away he attained the five super-knowledges."

"And when he was in possession of the five super-knowledges he rose up in the air by his magic power. Leaning against the foot of the bodhi tree the Daśabala won omniscience."

"When the exalted Atyuccagamin stood up he was as tall as a palm-tree. Hence was he called 'the exceeding high one'."

"Wide-spread was the teaching of Yasottara, who tamed the untamed. Infinite was this Exalted One's glory. Hence was he styled 'he whose glory is superior'."

"The Śākyan of Gotama's clan left his prosperous and rich city and renounced the seven treasures. Hence was he styled the Śākyan sage."

1 Literally, "stood" asthānu.

2 Anantariparinirvīrya, cf. Pali antarā pari nibbāyin = an Anāgāmin. But the whole verse is enclosed in brackets by Senart as being of doubtful appropriateness here. Not only is the metre different from that of the rest of the passage, but the subject is the Buddhas who pass away from their lives on earth, not in heaven. The word "heaven" is used here only for convenience of translation; there is no usage in the text. But the expression antarāparinirvīrya does have a sense which approximates that of "heaven", for it denotes that happy state which good men attain after death and from which they pass to nirvāṇa instead of to rebirth.

3 Sare from sare = Sk. saras.

4 Sc. of a caḥradarṣa or universal king.
"When the lord of Conquerors Viśvabhū was born it rained in a continuous downpour. So the report went forth that his name was Viśvabhū.\(^1\)

"The exalted Krakucchanda and Konākamuni, and the glorious Kāśyapa were so named by their parents after the names of their clans.

"The splendiferous kinsman of the sun,\(^2\) the Supreme, the Exalted One, the Foremost of Men, was by birth a noble, sprung from Ikṣvākū’s line.

"And then in a brāhmaṇ’s unconquered and rich household, a brāhmaṇ will renounce his plentiful pleasures and go forth to the religious life.

"In a prosperous household and one well adorned with wisdom\(^3\) Maitreya will appear in the world in a future age.

"In his first assembly\(^4\) there will be ninety-six kōṭis, all of them Arhans who have won self-control and shed their passions. In his second assembly there will be ninety-four kōṭis,\(^{247}\) all of them Arhans who have won self-control and shed their passions. In his third assembly there will be ninety-two kōṭis, all of them Arhans who have won self-control and shed their passions.

"The greatly wise Dīpaṁkara was by birth a noble. The Daśabala Saravabhīṣu was by birth a brāhmaṇ.

"The Daśabala Padumottara was by birth a noble, while the Exalted One Atyuccagāmin was by birth a brāhmaṇ.

"Yaśottara and\(^5\) Śākyamuni were by birth nobles; Arthadarśin, Tīṣya, and the supreme of men, Pusaṇa, were by birth brāhmaṇs, great seers who made their selves to grow.

"Vipaśyin, Sīkhiṇ, and Viśvabhū were nobles, and Krakutsanda,\(^6\) Konākamuni and Kāśyapa brāhmaṇs.

\(^1\) The explanation of the name apparently rests on the similarity in sound between viśu or "all," and sarpa, "rain." The Bud.4, 247, says of his Pali name that he was so called because, when he was born, he roared like a bull, vasabhānam nadi. The Com. on Mhus. (Vamsatthapakāsini, r. 63) has two other, alternative, explanations of the name.

\(^2\) I.e. Gotama. The verse implies that he was called after his clan. Sumatiṣṭhāṇaṇḍita. The verse implies that Maitreya is derived from maiti, "wise".

\(^3\) Cf. vol. 1 (text), pp. 2, 6.

\(^4\) The name of the present Buddha is Maitreya, i.e., the "Great Friend," a title given him by the Šākyans.

\(^5\) In Pali, kita, "all," and sarpa, "rain." The Com., p. 385, translates the name as Kitaśrī, "in all respects admirable." The verse implies that Maitreya is derived from Kitaśrī, "wise."
with ever-present endeavour, I praised Tîya, Saviour of the world, in his presence.

'Whilst I was questing after the supreme enlightenment and had attained the Path,1 with rapture and reverence I stood worshipping Puṣya.

(249) 'Whilst I was questing after the supreme enlightenment, I saw Viṣṇujin coming like the moon when it is full, and I spread my cloak in his path.

'Whilst I was questing after the supreme enlightenment, I regaled with solid and soft food the world's Benefactor, Sîkhyin, and his attendant company of monks.

'Whilst I was questing after the supreme enlightenment, in rapture I bestowed2 costly robes on Viṣṇujhī and his monks.

'I lived the brahma-life under three Saviours of the world, and it was Kāśyapa who proclaimed of me that I should win the supreme enlightenment.

'Having been active3 under twelve4 Buddhas, under three I sought for nirvâna. But the three kept me in the world and I became a deva of the Three-and-Thirty.

'After I had in the ninety-first kalpa returned to the world, for nine kalpas more I passed through various lives as a Bodhisattva.

'Endowed with an energetic body and having attained5 wide wisdom I stood supreme in energy among men for nine kalpas.

'And it is energy, the force that none other but me speaks of, which is the instrument6 of enlightenment. And energy is not without praise as a force and faculty of the bodhyangas.7

'The Best of Men progress by way of renunciation,

1 See Path. 2 Or 'satisfied,' krûta. 3 Senart reads kaphakah and renders 'sous cinq,' but he has to admit that his interpretation is very doubtful. It seems pretty obvious, however, that the right reading is dûdâlah. For we have been told that Gotama had served 'twelve' Buddhas before the third under whom he lived the brahma-life, and who, presumably, were the three who prevailed on him to live on in the world.

4 See P.E.D. for references to the Pali use of this word in the same sense.

5 Literally 'contrives,' yantra, derivative of yantra, 'machine.'

6 Text has samâpâna only, which may indicate either the winning of the Path of Arhatship or the attainment of the (eight or nine) samâpattis.

7 Æçchâdaye. See p. 36, n. 2. Here opt. (I sg.) in aor. sense.

8 Text has samâpâna only, which may indicate either the winning of the Path of Arhatship or the attainment of the (eight or nine) samâpattis.
Those who teach the true dharma and those who listen to the teaching of it, all attain the immovable state of nirvana.

Sarvāmdada had once achieved a life in which he blessed the whole world with the benefits of his practice of charity and self-control. And Sakra then lived as one who was opposed, and feared lest Sarvāmdada should dislodge him from his sovereignty.

Sakra therefore conjured up before Sarvāmdada a hell into which had fallen the great and perfect in charity.

(251) And they cried "O hero, we pray you bring to an end this misery of ours of which charity is the cause. Let all beings be happy."

And Sakra said, "O hero, with your calm, your charity, and your self-control, why should you not seek the happiness of Bhagavati in the other world?"

Sarvāmdada replied, "Naught do I care for the city of Bhagavati, much less for those who long for it."

"I seek the immovable state of nirvana, which knows no old age, death or disease, where there is no loved one nor separation from a loved one, but the peace that comes from homelessness, and constant freedom from ill."

Sakra answered and said, "Most hard to endure is that state wherein one wakes up to knowledge and leaves behind the enjoyment of sensual pleasures.

"Change your mind, indulge your wishes, delight in the happiness of sensual pleasure and in the happiness of easy enjoyment."

Sarvāmdada replied, "If Sakra's throne were for ever mine and were I never parted from any pleasure of sense, even then my mind would not be fixed on the comfort of the pleasures of sense, and I would not forswear my vow to win omniscience.

"The pleasant things of the devas and those of men, the happiness in this present life and in the life beyond, were I blest with these for countless years (252) I would not forswear my vow to win omniscience.

"The ills that are in this world and those manifold ills of countless kalpas that we hear of, were I afflicted therewith for countless kalpas I would not forswear my vow to win omniscience.

"If, before I became possessed of the knowledge of the highest good, I had in the meantime to sojourn in the hell of Avīci, I would not let my zeal abate, nor would I forswear my vow to win omniscience.

... 3 I would eat a ball of iron and drink molten copper, but I would not forswear my vow to win omniscience.

"I would dwell with murderers in a cave; I would let my body be devoured and grow up again and again. Such affliction could I bear, ere I would forswear my vow to win omniscience.

"If there rained upon me a shower of sharp arrows and knives, if every inch of my body were pierced thereby, such affliction could I bear, ere I would forswear my vow to win omniscience.

(253) "If I could win this highest knowledge only after paying homage to Buddhas as countless as the sands of the Ganges, all this long series of recurrent lives could I bear, ere I would forswear my vow to win omniscience.

"If I should have to stay amid the dregs of the womb for kotis of great kalpas and if when born this body of mine should be maimed during a hundred lives, I could

---

1 Literally, "having a life with an appearance of an obstacle," savighna-rūpa-carād. But Senart admits that his restoration of the text is very conjectural.
2 Prāthikṣey, 3rd pers. for 2nd, unless we read vīra, nom. for vīra, vocative.
3 As appears from the sequel, the name of a celestial city, though it does not seem to be mentioned elsewhere.
4 Literally, "still more, prāgema, (do I not care)."
5 Priyānāh. But there is a lacuna of two syllables before this word. As the usual antithesis to priyāni-prayoga "separation from what is dear," we would expect aprīyānāyoga, "union with what is not dear." But the MSS. do not seem to warrant a restoration on these lines.
6 Viśa- to be read avīśa-, the initial a being elided after suhke.
7 The text here has the unusual expression yāvantareṇa... tāvantaram yadi, which does not readily admit of an idiomatic rendering in English.
8 A lacuna of two lines.
9 Typical torments of hell. See vol. 1, p. 6 ff.
10 Literally "my whole body without remainder," sarvam śārīram... aśeṣam.
11 A mahākalpa includes the four kalpas of dissolution of the world, of the state of dissolution, of evolution, and of the evolved state.
12 Reading with one MS. (chihihyā, from chihjati, BS. and Pali pass. of chid., Sk. chidyā, for kṣitijja, the corresponding form from kṣid. "to oppress." The former verb as denoting a severer kind of affliction seems preferable here.
hear my body undergoing such affliction ere I would forswear my vow to win omniscience.

"The woes of hell and the woes of the world of the brutes, and the manifold woes of the world of ghosts and of men, had my body to undergo all this affliction, I would not forswear my vow to win omniscience.

"Had I to spend in the world nayutas of lives and live for an equal number of nayutas of kalpas in hell, I could bear all this affliction for however long ere I would forswear my vow to win omniscience.

"No more can I be turned from this resolve, for I have made it for the sake of the world's welfare. Until I have won the immortal and achieved my hope, I shall not forswear my vow to win omniscience.

"Stoutly mailed and clad in adamantine armour as I am, there will be no wearying in my charity, self-control and devotion. (254) In order to release men from being born again, I will not forswear my vow to win omniscience."

And so, with their minds settled and their aims well resolved on, men will fare through the world with their hearts fixed on enlightenment. As though with many a leap3 they will cross to the ocean's other shore. They will win enlightenment and break Namuci2 and his power.

RĀHULA

When the Exalted One, standing in the air at a man's height, had performed his various miracles of double appearance,3 when Rāhu, Vemacitrin and Mucilinda, lords of the Asuras, and sixty nayutas of other Asuras had had revealed to them1 the supreme perfect enlightenment, and when many thousand kośis of beings had been established4 in the noble dharma and had realised for themselves the fruit of winning the stream, and when the true unchangeable method of the Master's teaching had been seen, then King Sudhodana rose up from his seat and, holding out his joined hands to the Exalted One, bowed before him and made this solemn utterance. "My son," said he, "great gain have I well won in that I have such a son as you, the best of bipeds, endowed with all good qualities. Not in vain, my son, but fruitful was your going forth when you renounced the sovereignty of this great kingdom of a universal ruler, and left your kith and kin behind. Not in vain, my son, but fruitful have been the six years you spent in austerities. Yea, not in vain, my son, but fruitful has been your attainment of enlightenment. Not in vain, my son, but fruitful has been the dharma revealed by you. For your like is not to be found in the world of men and devas, of Māra, of Brahmā, of recluses, of brāhmans, or of wanderers, or among the generation of devas, men and Asuras. Not in vain either, my son, but fruitful have been my own life (255), since in my realm such a son has been born, who is incomparable in the whole world, supreme of devas and of men. Well were it now, my son, that, benevolent to the whole world as you are and compassionate, bestowing your compassion on it, you should bestow your compassion on me, too, by eating at the royal palace as long as you intend to stay in Kapilavastu." And the Exalted One silently intimated his consent.

When he perceived the Exalted One's silent consent, King Sudhodana was elated, glad and joyful. He bowed at the Exalted One's feet, saluted him three times from the right, held out his joined hands towards the company of disciples, and then departed.

Then King Sudhodana, when the night was past, prepared a plentiful supply of solid and soft food. He had the city of Kapilavastu sprinkled and swept, and cleared of dust, stones,

1<sup>Langhitabahubhit-'eva, an irregular compound form for bahulanghitaiḥ. Miss I. B. Horner has supplied an interesting note on this passage. She compares Mn. 36, where purioc (the Hero) jumps (pakkhandati) to the farther bank of a river in full spate. Others follow him, and when he sees that their minds are freed, he aspires, or leaps as it were (sampaikkhandati) after the fruit of stream-winning. "This leaping to the Farther Shore," she adds, "seems to me to point to Sudden Attainment—a notion that entered Buddhism after the Pali Canon, which always speaks of gradual (anupubhena) attainment."

2<sup>Active for passive again.

3<sup>Ia. Māra.

4<sup>See p. 115.
gravel and pebbles. He had it strewn with garlands of flowers, scented with pots of perfumes, draped in bright cloth, covered with a canopy and hung with festoons of strips of cloth. All along the way from the Banyan Grove to Kapilavastu he stationed dancers, minstrels, athletes, wrestlers, tambourine players, tam-tam players, players on the fife, flute, and dvoístvaśā, clowns, acrobats, reciters, minstrels, and performers on the pañcavatuka, so that the Exalted One's entry into the city should be made in great regal majesty and splendour.

Then on the next day, neither too early nor too late, the Exalted One took a Māgadhā breakfast and dressed and clothed himself. Escorted and attended by his company of disciples, with Śāriputra on his right, Maudgalyāyana on the left, and the monk Ananda behind, he with them moved on in successive ranks each double the preceding one. The progress of exalted Buddhas is like that of a flight of swans.

Now there are certain things which inevitably happen when Buddhas enter a city. When the Exalted One enters a city, horses neigh, elephants trumpet, peacocks dance, cuckoos call, musical instruments sound without anyone playing them, and jewels rattle in their caskets. At that moment the blind recover their sight, the deaf their hearing, and the insane their reason. The poisoned become rid of poison. The unbelieving and those slow of faith now become convinced.

Thus then did the Exalted One enter the city, and no sooner had he planted the soles of his feet in the gateway of the city of Kapilavastu than the great earth shook, trembled, quaked and quivered in six ways. It rose up in the east and sank down in the west; it rose up in the west and sank down in the east; it rose up in the south and sank down in the north; it rose up in the north and sank down in the south.

And after the Exalted One had entered the city of Kapilavastu, he in due course came to his father's house. The Śākyans of Kapilavastu then called the Śākyans together and issued a proclamation saying, "Friends, no one is to tell Rāhula that he is the son of the Exalted One. He who will do so will pay the penalty of death."

Now the Exalted One took all his meals at the royal palace. But then Mahāprajāpāti Gautami appealed to King Suddhodana, saying, "Your majesty, if it is agreeable to you, let the Exalted One eat at my house." And the king replied, "Gautami, let it be so."

Then Mahāprajāpāti Gautami went to the Exalted One, bowed her head at his feet, held out her joined hands to him, and said, "Let the Exalted One consent to eat tomorrow at my house." The Exalted One silently intimated his consent.

Mahāprajāpāti Gautami, on perceiving the silent consent of the Exalted One, when the night was past prepared a plentiful supply of solid and soft food. She had her house sprinkled and swept, hung with festoons of fine cloth, strewn with heaps of flowers and made fragrant with incense. She assigned a

---

1 Kumbhathāṭhi. See p. 111, n. 4.
3 Literally, "the breakfast being Māgadhā," Māgadhā prātarāja. Practically the same expression occurs at 1, p. 307 (text) and was there translated "having breakfasted at Magadhā," in spite of the geographical and linguistic difficulties of such an interpretation. It is now suggested that the allusion is to some unknown kind of breakfast traditional in Magadhā. Alternatively, the adjective Māgadhā may denote an article of food especially common in Magadhā. Unfortunately, the only such article known is garlic, lasuwa, which is thus defined at V. 4, 259, lasuñam nāma māgadhākam uccata. And the Buddhists were forbidden to eat garlic.
4 This is an attempt to render the obscure dvoaya-uṣa-rajñham. It is tentatively suggested that this compound can be analyzed into dvoaya-uṣa-rajñham, "successive rank (increased by) twice." This suggestion would seem to be borne out by the circumstance explained in the following note.
5 Cf. vol. 1, p. 307 (text; translation, p. 256), where it said that four go in front, eight immediately behind them, and so on to the sixty-four bringing up the rear.
6 Literally, "it is the dharmatā of Buddhas on entering a city."
7 Tukatuñyati, on onomatopoeic verb.

---

1 Pratisamudita. This word, if correctly restored, must have such a sense here, although in the only instance of the use of its Pali equivalent cited in P.E.D. it has the straightforward sense of "known", "recognised". But to say that the unbelieving were known is irrelevant to the context. On the analogy of what happened to the blind and the others, we expect to be told that in effect the unbelieving were made believers. It would seem, indeed, as though the right reading here is the causal form pratisamuddita, "were made to experience or to know," or, alternatively, the finite verb pratisamudayanti, "felt," "perceived" (sc. the truth). Edgerton (B.H.S.D.) translates, "possessed of special knowledge."
2 The fifth and sixth motions, namely of the middle regions and the extremities, are omitted. See vol. 1, p. 34.
3 Literally, "do so," evam karohi.
very costly seat for the Exalted One and seats according to their rank for the company of his monks.

Then the Exalted One dressed betimes, took his bowl and robe, and, attended by the company of his monks, came to the house of Mahāprajāpatī Gautami. The Exalted One sat down on the seat assigned to him as the company of monks sat on theirs. And Mahāprajāpatī Gautami with her own hands regaled and served with plentiful solid and soft food first the Buddha and then the company of his monks. When the Exalted One had finished eating, washed his hands and put away his bowl, and the company of monks had done likewise, he gave Mahāprajāpatī Gautami and the women of the court a graduated discourse on dharma.

Now this is what the graduated discourse of exalted Buddhas is, namely, a discourse on charity, a discourse on morality, a discourse on heaven, a discourse on merit and a discourse on the fruition of merit. Mahāprajāpatī Gautami believed with a trusting heart, and then the Exalted One revealed to her the four Āryan truths of ill, the arising of ill, the cessation of ill, and the Way leading to the cessation of ill. And while she sat there on her seat, Mahāprajāpatī Gautami won a clear dharma-insight, pure and unsullied, into things.

Then the shadow of the Exalted One happened to fall on Rāhula. And all the hair on Rāhula’s body bristled, all his limbs perspired, and his whole frame thrilled.

Sitting down in the Exalted One’s shadow, Rāhula regarded him with steady gaze.

Rāhula then asked his mother, “Where is my father gone, mother?” Yasodhara replied, “My son, he has gone to the south country.” Rāhula said, “What has he gone to the south country for?” Yasodhara replied, “He has gone there to trade.” Rāhula said, “But why does not my father send me a nice present?” Yasodhara replied, “The way is stopped by the nobles. When it is possible for him to come, he will come himself.”

Rāhula then asked, “Mother, can this recluse be any relation of mine. For never has any one affected me as this recluse has. It seems to me that he has taken possession of my whole heart. It cannot be without some cause that at the mere sight of this recluse such love is aroused in me as is aroused by the sight of no other Śākyan. I therefore think that he is my father.” But Yasodhara replied, “My son, he is not your father.” Rāhula, however, wistfully appealed to his mother, saying “Mother, I insist that you tell me who this recluse of mine is.”

Yasodhara’s heart was troubled because of her love and affection, and she considered how she should deal with him. “Now if I tell him,” she thought, “the penalty for so doing is death. But then, if I do not tell him, it is my own son who will be deceived. Come what may, I will tell him. I would rather that the Śākyans stab and hack me limb by limb with a sharp knife than that I should not tell my own son, the noble Rāhula. I would rather that the Śākyans cut my body into strips with a sharp knife than that I should not tell my own son, the noble Rāhula. I would rather that the Śākyans cut my body up with a sharp knife into pieces the

---

1 Literally, “according to what belonged or fitted,” yathopakam. Upaka has in both BSk. and Pali the variant form upaga, and this may be the radical form, as is suggested by Miss J. B. Horner in a communication. She cites V. 2. 162 where monks are assigned their seats, etc., yathāvutjham, “according to seniority,” but at V. 2. 274, after eight nuns are thus seated yathāvutjham, the rest are seated in the order of their coming, yathāgatikām. Yathā-upaka (=upaga) may, therefore, simply mean that the monks took their seats in the order (yathā) they came in (upagacchanit). Reading yathāsane for yathāsanaṁ. Perhaps the text is due to the corruption of an original yathāsane sānam (gen. pl. of 3rd pers. pronoun).

2 The text has mārga, “way”, only, but the usual qualification dukkhaṇyro-dhāgāmin is obviously implied.
unknown to me, (260) my mind becomes exceeding glad at
the mere sight.

"I can but think that that recluse was my father or my
brother, or someone else among my kin, for so was my body
thrilled.

"Tell me, mother, if you have seen or heard of him before,
why he so greatly gladdens my heart."

When she had heard her son speaking so, Rāhula's
mother with a passionate sigh spoke and said, "My heart
is aflame, for he pleads with such gentle words. I cannot
but tell my own son, the noble Rāhula.

"I would rather they stab my body with a well-whetted
knife, than that I should forbear to tell my own son, the
noble Rāhula.

"I would rather that the Sākyans tear my body in strips,
than that I should forbear to tell my own son, the noble
Rāhula.

"I would rather they cut up my body into pieces the size
of a penny or a farthing, than that I should forbear to
tell my own son, the noble Rāhula.

"I would rather that the Sākyans cut up my body into
a hundred pieces, than that I should forbear to tell my
own son, the noble Rāhula.

"He, my son, whom you see yonder in golden beauty,
like the flowering karṇikārā golden and lovely, is your
father.

(261) "He between whose eyebrows is a tuft growing to
the right like the spirals of a shell, he, my son, is your
father. It is from him this radiance springs.

"He, my son, whom you see yonder in golden beauty,
with the fragrance of good works diffusing a scent like that
of the dark sandal-wood tree, is your father.

"He, my son, whom you see yonder in golden beauty,
standing fixed in the four meditations, like Himalaya the
monarch of mountains, is your father.

1 These terms are not actually equivalent respectively to the text
kakāpāṇa (Pali, id., Sk. kārpicana, a copper coin weighing 5/6ths of a
penny) and māśika (Pali māsaka, lit. a small bean, and hence a small coin
of very low value). But they are appropriate to the sense. There is an
allusion here to the method of torture called kakāpāṇaka in Pali.
2 A metrical version of the same story.
3 Or "deliberate," abhimāna "having the mind on," BSK. and Pali.
4 Nayanehi should surely be changed to nayanehi. The accusative is
inexplicable.
5 I.e., as a suckling calf, vata kārpicaka, approaches its mother.
6 Cf. V. 1. 82 where Rāhula addresses Gotama with the words, sukhā te
samanā chāyā.
7 See vol. 3, p. 264, n. 2.
Buddhism is rising up amid his noble company like a golden elephant, like a fanged and powerful lion surveying all around him, is your father.

He, my son, whom you see yonder in golden beauty, attended by his noble company, like a bull among the herd, is your father.

He, my son, whom you see yonder in golden beauty, like the flowering sal tree, his body resplendent with the thirty-two marks of excellence, is your father.

He, my son, is your father, who left his fair city and you and me, and went forth heedless of his kith and kin.

Then when he sojourned in the land of the Mallas, he spoke to Chandaka, saying, 'Take this lock of hair and bear it to the king and greet your father.'

'I give my jewels and Kāññhaka to the king and greet my mother and him for me.

'I go the way there is no turning back, but when I have reached the goal, I'll come again. Free from grief through laying down the burden, I will become a field of merit in the world.'
King Suddhodana believed with a serene faith, and he said to the Exalted One, “Since the time that the Exalted One left home none of us has been able to render the proper service to Rāhula, to take his horoscope, to braid his hair, and provide him with earrings. Lord, if Rāhula must needs go forth to the religious life, then it were well that the Exalted One come in seven days. On the seventh day he will be ready to leave home. For by that time his horoscope will have been taken, his lock of hair braided, and his earrings arranged. Then he can go forth.”

(264) Then the Exalted One said to Rāhula, “Go back, Rāhula, and do as your grandfather bids you.” So Rāhula let go his hold of the corner of the Exalted One’s robe. Yasodhārā took him by the hand and led him into the inner apartment. There she sat down with Rāhula in her lap and said to him, “Rāhula, my son, do not go forth to the religious life. What you have in mind, my son, is hard to achieve. Here in the royal palace you have fine garments of Benares cloth to wear. You have magnificent beds to lie on, and delicate food to eat. But you, Rahula, my son, grew up in the royal palace delicately nurtured and used to comfort. You, Rāhula, must needs go forth to the religious life. What you have in mind, my son, is hard to achieve.8 There you will hear dreadful noises, such as the cries of lions, tigers and jackals. But you, Rāhula, my son, grew up in the royal palace delicately nurtured1 and used to comfort. You, Rāhula, my son, were bathed while listening to the sweet strains of lute and fife and cymbal. How will you have any joy? Surely, you will overcome this delusion. It was well for you, Rāhula, my son, to divert and amuse yourself with the five strands of sensual pleasures here in the inner apartment. Why should we have another one going forth?”

Rāhula answered and said, “Mother, did not my father grow up in a great king’s court?” Yasodhārā replied, “Even so.” Rāhula said, “Whosoever speaks the truth will say that he was delicately, most delicately brought up. And yet does not he who is my father (265) now lie on a bed of straw on the ground, arrange his seat at the foot of a tree, go begging for alms from house to house, eat cast off morsels, and dwell in a forest tract? And was he not delicately brought up like me and used to comfort? What he has attained, shall I, too, not attain? I, too, mother, will give up the pleasures of sense, go forth from home into the homeless state, and inevitably I will attain nirvana. And, mother, if there be anyone here who is resolute and mindful, consider me to be so, too, in that I am going forth and following in the way of my father.”

Yasodhārā said, “My son, is it inevitable that you go forth?” Rāhula replied, “It is quite inevitable.” Yasodhārā said, “Is there no escape?” Rāhula replied, “There is not.” Yasodhārā said, “Will you forsake me, your grandfather and your kith and kin?” Rāhula replied, “I certainly will.” Yasodhārā said, “Listen, my son. If it is, as you say, inevitable that you go forth from home to the homeless state, you must live with the doors of your six senses well closed and guarded. You must know the proper measure...”
in eating. You must always apply yourself to vigilance and
devour. You must be strenuous. You must abide in the
observation of the proper way of standing, walking and
sitting down. And, my son, you must abstain from flesh.
You must not transgress the code of morals ordained by
the Buddha. You must, my son, bear fully in mind the code of
morals ordained by the Exalted One. You must, my son, follow
accordingly by reason of what life is. To gain the
nirvana you have not yet won you must, my son, have good
self-control. And why? Women will come, my son, who are
venerable, gracious and beautiful to make obeisance to the
Exalted One, and these, my son, you must regard as you
would your mother. Women will come, my son, who are
young, gracious, beautiful and bedecked with jewels. But
for these, my son, you must not have any desire (266), and
on such occasions you must abide having an insight into
what is ill and what is transient. If, Rāhula, my son, you
can turn your heart away from going forth, then do so as a
favour to me."

Then orders were issued by King Śuddhodana in the city
of Kapilavastu. "Gather all the perfumes," said he, "and
garlands, flowers and aromatic powders that are to be found
around the city of Kapilavastu within a distance of twelve
yojanas. Assemble all the dancers, actors, athletes, wrestlers
and tambourine-players.

The desires of devas are fulfilled by the thought of their
minds; those of kings by the word of command; those of
rich men are fulfilled without delay, and those of poor men
by their own exertions."

---

1 Three of the āryāpathas. See vol. 1, p. 18, n. 5.
2 Jivitahetor. This seems a more appropriate rendering than "for the
sake of life", which would be a strange sentiment for a Buddhist.
3 S. Mahālīka. See vol. 2, p. 60, n. 7.
4 Literally, "in the case of these you should call up the mother-mind;"
"tēsām (or tāsām) mātrisamjñā upasthāpayitavyā. For the thought compare
S. 4. 210-1, where it is said that the reason why young monks do not daily
with sense-pleasures is that they obey the injunction: "in the case of
those who are just mothers, sisters, daughters, call up the mother-mind,
sister-mind, daughter-mind" (i.e., as the Com. says, regard all women-folk
as you would your own mother, sister, daughter). The translator owes this
reference to Miss I. B. Horner.
5 For this couplet, which occurs several times in our text, see vol. 1,
p. 213, n. 1.

---

As soon as the king had spoken, the city was decorated,
cleaned, swept clear of gravel and pebbles, fumigated by pots
of incense, hung with festoons of fine cloth, draped in bright
cloth, overhung with a canopy, and strewn with heaps of
flowers.

Why do women in the prime of youth and adorned with
varied garlands stand in their many thousands at the cross-
roads?

Young women are there in the inner chamber of the
palace . . . hurriedly running like fawns to the windows.

For Rāhula the son of the Buddha, the offspring of Śuddho-
dana, is abandoning his kingdom as the Exalted One did,
and going forth to the religious life. (267) The drum is beaten, the lutes are played, giving
fursth their sweet notes. Tabours are beaten, and ere long
the young prince will come out.

Seven-stringed lutes sweetly resound as they are played
with the bow . . . ere long the young prince will come out.

There is a splendid, merrily rattling chariot, draped in
skins of leopards and antelopes. Eagerly the young prince
mounts it and leaves his home.

There are cries of loving farewells and thousands of hand-
claws resound in front of Rāhula, whose glory is deathless,
as he leaves home.

The Śākyans, with radiant crests and clothed in mantles
of wool, and riding on stately elephants follow the young
prince as he goes away.

1 The story is here continued in verse, for the beginning of which Senart
leaves a lacuna because of the impossibility of restoring a coherent text.
The MSS. suffice to show that the passage omitted consisted of a question
inspired by the sight of the preparations ordered by the king to celebrate
the seventh day, the day of Rāhula's leaving home.
2 Lacuna.
3 Olabanāhā niśkāyanti.
4 A lacuna in the second pāda makes the translation uncertain. It
seems necessary, too, to read va (= eva) -avahāya for caavahāya. One MS.
has caavahāya.
5 Lacuna.
6 Reading, as Senart suggests, pāṇīghāta for pāṇīghaṭa.
7 Text has te "these", only.
8 Aṣṭaṭahastikārījālā sajākakambalakanivasti. But Senart in his notes
queries whether the meaning is that the Śākyans when so dressed resembled
mountains (sīkha) of clothes!
With radiant crests, clothed in mantles of wool, and speaking eloquently and sweetly, they follow the young prince as he goes away.

Soon, the king's women are distressed, and their eyes fill with tears when they see the gathered chariots, horses and carriages stretching over a yojana as though in a display of splendour.

He whose eyes are like the elephant's or the partridge's now has reached the city gate escorted by the comely beautiful women, as Indra is escorted by his devas.

He comes to the Banyan Grove, to his father, the Supreme of men, the Guide, the Lion-man, whose beauty is golden.

(268) Having won glory he bows before him whose glory is supreme. And the Valiant Man, with his gentle webbed fingers, strokes the head of his noble son, and says, "My good Rāhula, surely your concern for self-control will bear fruit, for that you have abandoned material form with its pitifulness.

This will be your last existence, soon you will attain nirvana."

Then the Exalted One spoke to the venerable Śāriputra, saying, "Ordain Rāhula, and let him share your hut with you." The elder asked the Exalted One, "How, Lord, shall I ordain him?" The Exalted One replied, "O Śāriputra, with the ordination of one who is a young man into the Aryan dharma and discipline. He is to say, "I, Rāhula, am coming to the refuge of the Buddha, to the refuge of the dharma, to the refuge of the Sangha." Secondly, he is to say, 'I am Rāhula. The Buddha and none other is my refuge. The dharma and nothing else is my refuge. The Sangha and nothing else is my refuge. As long as I live, I, Rāhula, will abstain from murder, theft, from wrong sensual behaviour, from falsehood, and from the state of indolence induced by indulgence in tody and spirits. Establish me as a lay devotee on the basis of these five moral precepts. I, Rāhula, will follow into the religious life the exalted Buddha who has gone forth to the religious life. A second time he is to say, 'I, Rāhula, will follow into the religious life the Buddha who has gone forth to the religious life.' A third time he is to say, 'I, Rāhula, will follow into the religious life the Buddha who has gone forth to the religious life. I, Rāhula, as long as I live, will observe the novice's rule of abstention from murder and so on as far as the rule against accepting silver and gold.

For these are the ten moral precepts.

"Then the elder will cut Rāhula's hair and ordain him. Śāriputra (269) will take him by his right hand and Maudgalyāyana by the left and lead him to his bed of straw."

Thus did the Exalted One direct it should be done.

The Daśabala spoke to the pair of disciples that had won fame and glory in heaven and earth, the chapter of well-trained disciples, abounding in wisdom, who had done their tasks.

"Inasmuch as he will acquire keen faculties, let the young Rāhula be ordained into this dharma: let him be a follower of mine."
Then Sāriputra, with his knowledge of right times, said to the Guide of the world, “How shall I ordain the noble Rāhula, the Conqueror’s own flesh and blood?”

The Guide, taking pity on the world, pronounced in a voice like Brahmā’s that it should be the ordination into the Āryan dharma and discipline of one who is young.

“Let Maudgalyāyana,” said he, “take Rāhula by the left hand and Upātisyā take him by the right. Then let them ordain him and lead him to his bed of straw.”

He who takes from off his body the bracelets and the thread of gold will no longer live tormented by ill: those tormented will remind themselves of the Daśabala.

His mother then took into her lap her son whose wide dark eyes were like the elephant’s or the partridge’s, and spoke to him in these verses.

“You wear the finest of garments,” said she, “your body is scented with ointment and rouge. Difficult will a wanderer’s life be for you who have been used to such exceeding great comfort.

“Men like these must needs be glad when they have dug pieces of rags from the dung-heap. (270) You, my Rāhula, must needs eat the cast-off food of a slave.

“You now have anklets of gold... You are glittering like burnished gold. Your kinsmen rejoice in you.

1 Called by the synonym Sāriisuta here.
2 Literally, “born of his flesh.”
3 The personal name of Sāriputra.
4 I.e., the sacred cord of the Hindu.
5 Senart considers that this stanza is misplaced, and says that it would more appropriately form part of Yasodhāra’s appeal to Rāhula to abandon his project. To support this suggestion Senart says that oharati “take off” is undoubtedly a mistake for olagati, “to hang on to.” But such a change would seem to be inconsistent with the sentiment of the second line, where the words artā swaranti dalaśalasya clearly imply the freedom from ills that comes from thinking of or believing in the Buddha. With oharati retained the first line then describes the outward sign of conversion from Hinduism to Buddhism. The stanza is therefore retained unchanged, and may be regarded either as a remark of the narrator in passing or as part of the words spoken by the Buddha to his two disciples.
6 As has already been remarked, we should expect this exposition of the mother to come before, not after, Rāhula’s ordination.
7 Tayin = tādin. See vol. 2, p. 318, n. 2. The allusion, of course, is to the wanderers or ascetics.
8 Yarca; BSk. saccā. Pali saccā. (P.E.D.)
9 Senart leaves a lacuna here, it being impossible to conjecture a restoration from the MS. narorimālibhāk, naroriskālibhāk.
10 Literally “speckled,” sabala, which takes a variety of forms in our text: sapala, sabala and labala.

1 Lacuna: the ca hita ca of the MSS. evidently conceal the name of some musical instrument. Could it be candisaka? See vol. 2, p. 153, where, however, the word is doubtful.
3 Lacuna.
5 Abhimana. See p. 248, n. 3.
6 The text has the inexplicable sīrasiṣaśallekham, which Senart suggests should be amended into sīrasiṣām (sc. keśām) satīkkhya. This, however, as Senart remarks, involves assigning the doubtful meaning of “to comb” to sālīkkhāti. There is, besides, the difficulty of construing the indeclinable participle satīkkhya, for we should expect the past participle passive satī-khītām. Above all, there is an anacoluthon involved in this interpretation, mādīsya forms with prahetāna a “genitive absolute,” while the subject of the main verb is itself the nominative mādā, understood. Still, the general sense of the whole sentence remains clear.
7 Viḍrumaraṇaḥ, which, Senart says, must be substituted for druṇamaṇaḥ, “coloured like a tree,” of the text.

Rāhula replied:

“Mother if there be any of quick understanding, count me among them. For I, too, will crush the lusts and go along my father’s way.”

The barber then sharpened his razor, and Rāhula, bearing in mind the Best of bipeds deliberately gave up his bejevelled lock of hair.

And seeing him thus deliberately devoted to the Daśabala’s teaching (his father said to him) “My son, quickly attain the blissful and calm nirvāna.

“Quickly attain those states which are beyond birth and old age.” Thus did he speak to Rāhula.

(271) When she had taken them in her lap, his mother stroked the well-combed tresses which (had grown) in dark rows on his golden neck.

Then Yasodhāra’s eyes welled with tears when she saw her noble son Rāhula bereft of his hair through his eagerness for the dharma.

And Maudgalyāyana and Upātisyā ordained the young Rāhula who was thus rid of the householder’s marks, and was the colour of coral and clad in yellow robes.
When he had been ordained, the son of him who bore the thirty-two marks of excellence lived with the elder Upātiṣya, eager to be trained.

Thus does it behove you who have gone forth in faith, to live without regret for the strays of sensual pleasures and with your heart unainted.

Rāhula lived on gruel of fine and pure rice flavoured with curry and condiments, and went round the Śākyan families for alms.

With head and heart make obeisance to this son of the Buddha, named Rāhula, who has rent the veil of darkness and rid himself of all the āsāvas.

After the Exalted One had eaten with the women of the court, Yasodhāra, Rāhula's mother, in order to do honour to these excellent women, on the next day raised her joined hands to the Exalted One and invited him to a repast on the morrow. When she perceived the Exalted One's silent consent, she was thrilled, pleased and happy.

And when the night was over (272) she had an exceeding plentiful supply of solid and soft food prepared together with a large number of most exquisite sweetmeats remarkable for colour, smell, and taste. At the same time she had her house sprinkled and swept, draped with festoons of fine cloth, strewn with heaps of flowers, and overhung with a canopy. A sumptuous couch was laid out for the Exalted One, and couches befitting their rank for his company of monks.

Then the Exalted One dressed betimes, took his bowl and robe, and accompanied by his company of monks, entered the women's apartment. And Yasodhāra, Rāhula's mother, having arrayed herself in bright raiment and jewels, served the Exalted One and sought to entice him with sweetmeats and sought to entice him but he would not change his mind.

After the Exalted One had finished eating, washed his hands and put away his bowl, and his company of monks had done likewise, King Suddhodana, Mahāprajāpāti Gautami, Yasodhāra, Rāhula's mother, and her attendants, were instructed, roused, gladdened and thrilled by the Exalted One with a discourse on dharma. And when he had done so, he rose up from his seat and departed.

The monks said to the Exalted One, "Behold, Lord, how Yasodhāra, arrayed in all her finery and adornment, served the Exalted One with sweetmeats and sought to entice him but he would not change his mind." The Exalted One replied, "Monks, that was not the first time that she did so. There was another occasion also.

Here the Ekaśringa-Jātaka is to be repeated.

AFTER THE ENLIGHTENMENT

After the Exalted One had awakened to the incomparable enlightenment, he sat for seven days on his bed of straw at the foot of the bodhi tree with his legs crossed. "Here," said he, "at the bodhi tree I won pre-eminence (273) after seven days, woke up to enlightenment, and reached the end of the jungle and wilderness of birth, old age and death. Here I broke Māra of the lusts. Here I broke Māra the deva.

1 The text has the active participles corresponding to the passive participles of the preceding sentence of the translation. The latter do not appear in the text as they are lost in a lacuna, but the context makes it easy to supply them.
2 See p. I30ff.
3 The text repeats tasyaiva parivīsati (see next sentence). To those appellations of Māra are added below (p. 281, text) two others, māritāmāra, "Māra of death," and skandhamāra, "Māra of the skandhas." In the commentarial literature, including the Sk. Dharmasamgraha, LXXX, these appellations are taken to denote four separate Māras. Some commentaries, indeed, add a fifth, abhisamkhāramāra, "Māra of the samkhāras." (See D.P.N.)

4 But it is doubtful whether, as some modern writers assume (e.g., E. Lamotte: Le Traité de la grande voix du sagasse, vol. I, p. 399f.), the Māru can betakenas evidence for the belief in four Māras. The compiler of the Māru, in recounting the Buddha's encounters with the Evil One is clearly thinking of only one and the same Māra. He has nowhere a hint of a distinct legend of each of the four. In these two passages of the Māru, Māra is rhetorically named in terms of the transient elements of man's make-up and of death itself. The passage in Sīkṣāsamuccaya (p. 98) can be interpreted in the same way. It is a commonplace of the history of religion and myth that divine epithets become personified at a late stage. Examples abound in the mythology of all nations.
Here I realised the vow made by me an infinite incalculable kalpa ago. Here at the foot of the bodhi tree . . .  

For a full seven days the perfect Buddha, the monument of the whole world, after awakening to the supreme enlightenment, did not rise from his seat.

Thousands of kotis of devas assembled in the sky, and for a full seven nights poured down a shower of blossoms. Blue lotuses, red lotuses, campaka, and white lotuses, lovely, thousand-petalled and brilliant, did the devas then rain down.

And Māra was then confounded, and with his staff he wrote on the ground; "Vanquished am I by the deva of devas, by the mighty Śākyan lion."

The Trāyastriṃśa devas, the Yama devas, the Tūṣita devas, the Nirmāṇarati devas, the Paraṇirmitavaśavartin devas, devas who still abide in a world of sensuous delights, scattered in the sky celestial showers of blossoms, red sandalwood, celestial aloes and campaka.

A celestial powder of jewels rained down from the sky. This Buddha-field was spread all over with a rain of flowers the size of a dice.

Thousands of kotis of Brahmas assembled in the sky, and poured down a fine powder of celestial red sandalwood.

With the devas of earth were self-luminous Sudhārūḍa devas; (274) every place, from one quarter to another, swarmed with devas.

The air was filled with sunshades, flags, and banners, as they rendered highest honour to the glorious perfect Buddha. A rich radiance was shed wherewith the Buddha-field was suffused. The highest parts of the world-system became the colour of fire.

The hells became tranquil in the rays of the Buddha; bodies became cool, and all were happy.

A celestial powder of jewels rained down from the sky. This Buddha-field was spread all over with a rain of flowers the size of a dice.

Those who had worked out their hellish penalty of woe, on passing away from the hells, were forthwith reborn among the devas.

In Saññjiva, Kālasiitra, Taṇḍana, Pratāpana and Raurava, the fire was quenched by the rays of the Saviour of the world.

In Avīci and in Sanghādā and in the separate hells, everywhere was the fire quenched by the rays of the Saviour of the world.

In all those separate hells that are in the world-systems, the fire was quenched by the rays of the Saviour of the world.

Those who in the sphere of the brutes were wont to feed on gory flesh, were filled with love by the Buddha, and did no harm to one another.

The bodhi tree was adorned with sunshades, banners and flags, and covered with minarets fashioned by the devas.

All around on the ground away from the bodhi tree were stumps of trees, rough earth, gravel and pebbles.

(275) But the bodhi throne was surrounded by bejewelled ground which the devas fashioned in the centre of the Buddha-field.

Thousands of devas stood on the ground, carrying censers and worshipping the Guide of the world.

All the ground beneath was covered with lotuses the colour of Jambunada gold, which sprang up through the power of the Buddha.

And the beings who were afflicted with the ill of disease, and were defenceless and helpless, became whole and happy, bathed in the rays of the Buddha.

Those blind from birth gained sure sight and were able to see objects. They spoke to one another of the mighty One who had won enlightenment.

---

1 Nirayaça ca saññāduḥ (with loc. for abl.) which, as Senart says, is preferable to nirayaça ca saññat, "the beings in the hells," of vol. 2, p. 350.
2 Reading nirmitiṁ (irregular for nirmitiḥ, as in vol. 2, p. 350) for nirmito of the text.
3 Khācī. Vol. 2, p. 350 has khācīva, BSk. and Pali. See P.E.D.
5 Nābhi, loc. case. Cf. Edgerton Gram § 10. 89.
6 Huṣat. But vol. 2, p. 351 has here the BSk. and Pali form heṣṭā.
Passion, hate and folly were done with 1 when enlightenment was won by the Sakyan Lion, the great Seer.

Palaces and fair mansions, gabled and delightful, all turned towards the mighty Bodhisattva.

All men and women in the Buddha-field turned towards the bodhi tree of the great Seer.

Devas, male and female, deva sons and fair deva maidens all turned towards the bodhi tree of the great Seer.

Nagas, Gandharvas, Yakṣas, Kumbhāndas and Rakṣasas all turned towards the bodhi tree of the great Seer.

Young boys and young girls arose from their beds 2 and (276) stood and turned towards the bodhi tree of the great Seer.

All gems of precious stones, celestial and rare, ornaments of devas, turned thitherwards.

The jewels of Nagas, Yakṣas, Piśācas and Rakṣasas turned towards the immovable bodhi tree.

Anklets, bracelets and armlets turned towards the immovable bodhi tree 3 of the Buddha who had won enlightenment.

Necklaces worn 4 on the neck and lovely strings of pearls, the adornments of human beings, all turned towards the immovable bodhi tree.

---

1 Or "made an end of." anta+kṛitiṇā. Vol. 2, p. 351, has tanuṇa kṛitiṇa " were allayed."

2 Sayyāṇam avaropita. Sayyāṇa is loc. for abl. Avaropita is the causal past participle passive of ava-rohu, used for the participle of the radical, avaruṇa. Vol. 2, p. 351 has sayyāsanavālāyita "lying on their beds and couches." This couplet was inadvertently omitted from the translation at vol. 2, p. 320.

3 Yena bodhi niringita. Vol. 2, p. 352 has yena vilambitāmbaram, "where hung the garment."

4 Literally "used", valaṇjita, Pali and BSk. part. of valaṇjati, a verb the etymology of which is obscure, but which is used in Pali in the two senses of (1) "to trace, track, travel (a road)"; (2) "to use, use up, spend." The P.E.D. gives the meaning "used" to the word in the present passage, though "used up" would be more in accord with the other examples of its usage which are there given. Senart gives only one MS. variant of this line, and in this valaṇjita appears as aca-raṇjano, so that without further MS. evidence it is impossible to judge what warrant there is for Senart's conjecture. He lists the word in his index but makes no comment on it in his notes. Perhaps, after all, the true reading is vilambita "hanging," or aca-raṇjita "glittering." The corresponding couplet in vol. 2, p. 352 has nothing remotely resembling valaṇjita. Edgerton (B.H.S.D.) does not mention the word.

---

Strings of pearls, brilliant adornments, earrings of gems, draperies 1 and signet-rings all turned towards the immovable bodhi tree.

All the inconceivable beings in the Buddha-field, wittingly or unwittingly, turned towards the immovable bodhi tree.

Cool winds, fragrant and delightful, blew 2 all around the Buddha-field of the Mighty One who had won enlightenment.

The love of an only son 3 and the constant obedience of one beloved by his parents were there. 4

All the devas in the Buddha-field, Nagas, men, Asuras, Kinnaras and Yakṣas gazed upon their Guide.

(277) Carrying censers they all stood there in happiness, and worshipped the Light of the world as he stood 5 on the bodhi throne.

With joined hands uplifted they adored and praised him in verse. They did honour to the Buddha as they stood near the bodhi throne.

All beheld him seated there, the light-bringing Saviour of the world; no one perceived him standing at a distance, even of a fathom's length.

No one in the world beheld the Buddha from behind, but all the quarters saw him face to face.

No one beheld the Guide of the world from the left or from the right, but all beheld the great Hero straight in front.

Forthwith incense was burnt in the Buddha-field and all the confines of the Buddha-fields were filled with its scent.

It is not possible to count all the koṭis who saw the glory of the Buddha as they stepped towards the bodhi tree.

All grasses, herbs and trees turned towards the bodhi tree of the great Seer.

---


2 Vāya, opt. (3 sg. for pl.) in aor. sense.

3 Literally, "in an only son," chāpurasmin. This couplet is not in vol. 2, and at first sight it appears foreign to the context, but presumably it expresses the atmosphere of love surrounding the bodhi tree or pervading the Buddha-field.

4 Literally "immediately followed," tadanantarām. This couplet is not in vol. 2, and at first sight it appears foreign to the context, but presumably it expresses the atmosphere of love surrounding the bodhi tree or pervading the Buddha-field.

5 It might be better to read pratiṇḍhiṁ here in agreement with the plural subject of the verb, as in the next couplet. The same suggestion applies to the corresponding couplet in vol. 2, p. 352.
Those, too, whose lives are no more to be re-compounded and are rid of karma that demands requital, the beloved of the Saviour of the world, will be enraptured.

(279) There will be rapture for those who, when they see Maitreya, 2 the Best of bipeds, will do him great honour.

There will be rapture for those who, seeing Simha, the great Nāga, the monument of the world, will do him great honour.

There will be rapture for those who, eager for knowledge of the Buddha, will do honour to Ketu, the Saviour of the world.

There will be rapture for those who, eager for knowledge of the Buddha, will do honour to the Buddha Pradyota.

There will be rapture for those who, seeing the Buddha Jyotin, the invincible, will do him great honour.

There will be rapture for those who, seeing Sunetra, the Light of the world, will revere him with adoring 8 worship.

There will be rapture for those who, seeing the two Saviours of the world, the Tathāgatas named Kusuma, will revere them.

There will be rapture for those who, seeing Meru, 4 perfect Buddha, best of bipeds, choicest of speakers, will revere him.

There will be rapture for those who, seeing Puṣpa, supreme Buddha, best of bipeds, will render him the highest worship.

Those, too, will be exultant who have revered the Sangha of the four Lords of men in this auspicious kalpa.

There will be terror for those who are greedy for gain and reputation, who rely on false knowledge and are avaricious, 6 when they hear this sūtra.

---

2. Better rendered as referring to Maitreya than as an adjective qualifying the present Buddha as in Vol. 2, p. 322. And similarly for Simha (lion), Ketu (banner), Jyotin (light-bringer), and Pradyota (light), that is, these epithets should be taken as names of future Buddhas.
5. I.e., the four Buddhas Krakucchanda, Konākamuni, Kāśyapa and Gotama. This couplet does not appear in Vol. 2.
6. Bakusūchā, "desiring much." Vol. 2, p. 355 (text) is different here, reading alpecham, which can only be for alpecham, "desiring little," and has to be taken as a neuter used adverbially to modify Wavesāna, "when they have heard the sātra with little desire." The context requires it to be taken in a bad sense, hence the translation "with little heed." (Vol. 2, p.232.)
(280) There will be happiness for those who, though they delight in society and dwell amid the crowd, have heeded seclusion with the Buddha.

Even the immoral, when they have heard the Buddha speaking thus, will turn to the Light of the world, and render him reverent regard.

There will be joy for the future gentle and blessed Bodhisattvas who have been proclaimed by the Buddha.

Those who will never lapse from knowledge of the Buddha will be blessed when they have heard this sūtra.

And those who are constant and humble, and are not scurrilous and loose of talk, but are kindly of speech, all will be glad when they hear of the beauty of the noble Conqueror.

Then at the end of the seven days the Exalted One rose up from his throne, surveyed the bodhi tree with a Nāga's look

1 Sāvanamayata. Vol. 2, p. 355 has na daumanamayata “no distress”.
5 Yeṣam... laddhā. Vol. 2, p. 356 has ye... laddhā “those who are... pure”.
6 Dhārayi, habitual aorist; sg. for pl. Vol. 2 has the aorist form dhāresi.
7 Luvjamā. Vol. 2 has luvaṃma.
8 Ānuḍhātha “not puffed up.” Vol. 2 has the truncated ānuḍhātha, which on Senart’s suggestion was restored as vrāṭānuḍhātha. See vol. 2 (trans.), p. 323.
9 Suskhilavāca. Senart leaves a lacuna at the corresponding place in vol. 2, the MSS. having viśiklavāca.
5 Jñānam. Vol. 2, p. 356 has urṣgam, as above.
8 See p. 35, n. 1.
But the Exalted One paid them no heed, since verily his heart was perfectly emancipated through the utter decay of every substrate of rebirth.

Then Māra’s daughters stepped to one side and recited their spells, saying, “Manifold is the desire of men; manifold is the desire of men.” Let us now fashion ourselves by means of our magic power into forms of what girls of fifteen or sixteen years look like, a hundred of them for each of us.” They did so and went up to Gotama the recluse and followed him as he walked up and down. “We would pay worship at thy feet, Lord,” said they. “We would pay worship at thy feet, O Sugata.” But the Exalted One paid them no heed, since verily his heart was perfectly emancipated through the utter decay of all substrates of rebirth.

Then Māra’s daughters stepped to one side. They recited their spells, saying, “Manifold is the desire of men; manifold is the desire of men. Let us now fashion ourselves by our magic power into forms of what women with one child or with two children look like, a hundred of them for each of us.” They did so and went up to Gotama the recluse (283) and followed him as he walked up and down. “We would pay worship at thy feet, Lord,” said they. “We would pay worship at thy feet, O Sugata.” But the Exalted One paid them no heed, since verily his heart was perfectly emancipated through the utter decay of all substrates of rebirth.

Then Māra’s daughters stepped to one side. They recited their spells, saying, “Manifold is the desire of men; manifold is the desire of men. Let us now fashion ourselves by our magic power into forms of what middle age women look like, a hundred of them for each of us.” They did so, and went up to the Exalted One and followed him as he walked up and down. “We would pay worship at thy feet, Lord,” said they.

The Exalted One replied to Māra’s daughter, Tantrī, in verse:

How does a monk live and apply himself in the world, who, having crossed the five floods is crossing the sixth? (284) How does a monk meditate and apply himself so that sensual thoughts are kept outside of him and gain no foothold in him?" The Exalted One replied to Māra’s daughter, Tantrī, in verse:

1 Mantrā. 2 Ucchicauc cando purusānām, repeated, would seem to be the actual words of a spell intended to achieve its object by a sort of sympathetic magic.

Abhinirmīśītā. There is no finite verb. The Mīhu. text is clumsily abridged here and in the repetitions below, even to the extent of ruining the syntax. We should expect to have first yam nūnām vayaṃ abhinirmīśeyama, “let us now fashion or conjure up.” The narrative would then be taken up by abhinirmīśaḥ “they did so (they conjured up),” as in S. 1. 124 ff.

The narrative would seem to be the part of a compound, the second element of which, whether or not it was the active participle, which the translation, “to gain a footing,” Senart seems to be right in asserting that the Mīhu. text is nearer the original tradition than is S. 1. 126 which reads aladdhāya lām ti. The form aladdhā is not easily explicable as an active participle, which the translation, “and catch him not,” at K.S. 1. 158 makes it to be. It is more reasonable to assume that aladdhā is the first part of a compound, the second element of which, whether or not it was gāthā or lost. The Critical Pali Dictionary takes aladdhā as equivalent to the active alabhāti, and adds that yam may stand for otāram “chance.” See also SA. 1. 187.
AFTER THE ENLIGHTENMENT

aware of true happiness, I thus cannot make friends with man; there can be no friendship between him and me.¹

Then Arati, Māra’s queen,² addressed the Exalted One in verse:

He who fares on with his groups and orders³ has cut off all craving. And many beings⁴ will make a resolve.⁵ Yea, he will surely pluck many men from the clutches of the king of death,⁶ and lead them to the sphere of the immutable and the griefless.

The Exalted One then replied to Māra’s daughters in verse:

You seek to dig through a mountain with your finger-nails. You chew iron with your teeth; you beat your heads against a hillside; you seek a footing in the abyss. What else, you wicked ones, is your pursuit of me because of your envy of the Buddha?

Māra’s daughters, thus perceiving that Gotama the recluse knew them, in their distress, dejection and remorse came to Māra, their father, and addressed him in verse:

This day, father, have I been beaten. This man cannot be led by passion. He has passed beyond my power, and hence I grieve me sore.

“Any other man, father, who was not free of attachment,

¹ Literally, “no friendship with him is found in me,” sākhyaṃ na samvidyate tela asme (loc. or gen. of aham).
² So called here, Māradevi. But at S. 1.127 this verse is put into the mouth of Raṅg, the last of the three daughters of Māra there mentioned.
³ Reading, on Miss Horner’s suggestion, ganaṣaṅgaḥacarī for ganaṣaṃpracarī of the text. The Pali has ganaṣaṅgaḥacarī “(goes) attended by his bands” (K.S. 1.150), but the Commentary (SA.1.182) quotes the line as ganaṣaṃgacarī (for -cāti), and interprets it by, gane ca sanghe carati “he fares in groups and orders.”
⁴ Reading sattōda for raktā, “defiled persons.”
⁵ Chandā hariṣyanti. The corresponding Pali pāda is addhā carissanti bāhā ca satīta, “yes, many many souls will go” (K.S. 1.159), which is better in that it continues the sentiment of the preceding pāda.
⁶ There is a lacuna here, but not necessarily of a word forming the construct of the genitive miṣyurjāḥko. The latter can well stand as gen. of separation after dīchetvā as maccurāṣṭa does after acchīja in the Pali (S. 1.127).

Then Māra’s daughter, Arati, addressed the Exalted One in verse:

Is it because thou art overwhelmed⁵ with grief that thou dost meditate in the wood, seeking to spend thy life in thought⁶? Hast thou insulted⁷ the villagers and canst not make friends with them? Else why dost thou not make friends with folk⁸?

The Exalted One replied to Arati, Māra’s daughter, in verse:

Nay, the whole root of grief have I dug out: all greed for life have I abandoned, and I shall win (285) the goal of my endeavour, the peace of my heart. Devoted to meditation,

¹ Aśīyā, BSk. for āśīyā, restored by Senart after the Pali form at S. 1.126, for anyāya of the MSS. See Edgerton, Gram. § 2. 15.
² Aśīrka, as in the second dhyāna.
³ Literally “does not remember slothfully” na saratī (BSk. and Pali = svaratī) nīham (BSk. and Pali = Sk. styāna).
⁴ Or, “composed”, prasabḍha BSk. = Pali passaddha.
⁵ Abhitvam. BSk. and Pali for abhītusya, Sk. abhītāraṇa from abhīturati. S. 1.126 has avatīṣa.
⁶ This pāda is difficult. Senart’s text is cīlāya jīvam abhīpārthhayanto, and he translates, “ne désirant la vie que pour le bûcher” (cīlā). But he has no faith in the correctness of the text. Nor will he allow that Windisch (Māra und Buddha) has succeeded in interpreting the equally obscure corresponding pāda at S. 1.126. The latter reads citām nu jīvam uṣa paṭhaḥyāna. K.S. 1.157, inexplicably expands this to mean “Art downcast at loss of wealth, or art thou wishing it were thine?” The Pali as it stands says no more than “Art old! Or longing with your heart (or mind)?” as Miss I. B. Horner, in a letter to the translator, renders it. At the same time, she calls attention to the v.1. jīna, when possibly the sense would be “art thou deprived of thought (or mind)” In any case, it is clear that the correct reading in the Mānu. should be some form of citā: two MSS. have citā ca (or ca). Reading citāya we would have the meaning “seeking a livelihood (? = to spend your life) for thought or by means of thought.”
⁷ Or “assaulted”, āsādya. S. 1.126 has āgum nu gāmasmin akāśi kīcī, “hast some misdeed in the village wrought?” (K.S. 1.158).
⁸ Kasmājājane na haroṣi sākhyaṃ. S. 1.126 is only slightly different: kasmā jānena na haroṣi sakkhiṃ. 

...
would, on seeing us in all our beauty (286) be overcome¹ and fall down in a swoon. The warm blood would be drained from his face, and he might die from his affliction, or suffer the loss of his senses. But Gotama the recluse, father, being an Arhan and rid of passion, hatred and folly, has proved superior.²

Then wicked Māra approached the Exalted One and stood to one side, and as he thus stood to one side he addressed the Exalted One in verse:

_Hither came in joyful anticipation, Tantrī, Aratī and Rati, but the great Hero swept them away as the wind sweeps away a fluttering tuft of cotton._

When he had recited this verse, wicked Māra, unhappy, dejected and remorose, forthwith disappeared.

---

**The Dharmalabdha Jātaka**

When the Exalted One had set rolling the excellent wheel of dharma, the monks said to him, "How was it that Māra's daughters came to the Exalted One desiring and seeking an opportunity to tempt him, but not succeeding in finding one left him alone?" The Exalted One replied, "Monks, that was not the first occasion they acted so. They did so on another occasion also." The monks asked, "Was there another occasion, Lord?" The Exalted One replied, "Yes, monks."
various ways, some with their beauty; (288) others with their voices; others with perfumes; others with sweet flavours, and others with their touch. There in your path they will conjure up various and divers desirable and lovely things; they will conjure up wares laid out for sale by the road-side. Wherever there is any desirable and lovely thing¹ do not look at it. None of you must covet it in any way. You must in no way lay hold of anything; you must in no way eat of anything. They will conjure up thousands of various kinds of flowering trees and fruit trees laden with intoxicating flowers and fruits, from the roots right up to the flowers heavy with clusters of leaves and fruits. But you must not touch any flower or any fruit. They will conjure up divers lotus-ponds, clear and bright, with cool water, and strewn with golden sands, covered with lotuses, and having pleasant strands for bathing. These, my friends, you must in no wise go near.² You must in no wise taste the water from the pools, or a red and white lotus, or a blue, red and white one, or a white one, or the fibrous stalk of a lotus. They will conjure up as well divers kinds of gems and precious stones. You must in no wise let greed for these arise in you. Whoever will let greed arise in him will never again return to Jambudvīpa; for thus will he pass from misfortune to disaster. But he who will turn away from everything in the dwelling-place of the ogresses will have a prosperous voyage and return successfully to his own land.³

When they should have acquired³ merit the traders would set out⁴ from Jambudvīpa for the great ocean, which was a source⁵ of wealth and treasures.

(289) Embarking on their ships and going down to the

---

¹ The concord is irregular here—Yatra nu so hocitkāmahalāyāṇam.
² Allipītānya, gerund. from alliṣṭeti, Pali alliṣṭetī.
³ Samudāṇeta, from samudāṇati Pali = BSk. samudāṇavati.
⁴ Pratikāmshu, aorist in potential meaning, for, on the analogy of the prose the metrical version should have begun with an account of the merchants deliberating and deciding that they would acquire merit, etc. The first two stanzas are really oratio obliqua, as is shown by the words svastāṇ punaragātā which, in the light of the story, cannot mean "they returned in safety," but rather "they would return, etc." Three other verbal forms in -ensūk in the same passage, below, are pure aorist.
⁵ Literally, "mine," skāra.

THE DHARMALABDHA JĀTAKA

sea they would gather treasures from the islands and return successfully.

Their merchant leader was a wise and prudent man, named Dharmalabāda, and he warned them, saying, "Traders, on the way we go are terrible ogresses who wield power through their magic and are well-versed in the art of illusion.

"The foolish simpleton who succumbs to their charms¹ will no more return to Jambudvīpa, his home. But he who will pay them no heed will successfully return to his home in Jambudvīpa."³

And so they went on the course that brought them to where the ogresses dwell. These sought to seduce the traders by means corresponding to the susceptibilities of each.³

With their beauty, their voices and their touch, with perfumes and sweet flavours, with many a varied pleasure, they sought to seduce the traders.

Thus the traders who were susceptible to beauty were seduced with beauty; those susceptible to sounds were seduced with charming songs and music; those susceptible to perfumes were seduced with charming perfumes of various kinds; those susceptible to sweet flavours were seduced with exquisite flavours of various kinds, and those susceptible to touch were seduced with contacts of various kinds.

Then all⁴ the five hundred traders said, "Why should we night and day (290) wear ourselves out in the pursuit of various occupations, when we can enjoy here such beauty, sound, perfume, flavour, and touch? Let us divert and enjoy ourselves here, and return no more to Jambudvīpa."³

They told their leader Dharmalabāda about it, saying to him, "Greet our friends, relations and kinsmen in Jambudvīpa for us, for we mean to stay and enjoy ourselves here."³ Their leader replied and said to them, "Friends, these women are not human beings, they are ogresses. I told you so from the start. For I said to you, 'To-morrow we shall reach..."
the dwelling-place of the ogresses, and they will try to seduce you¹ in many ways. But you must not covet anything there. If you wish to return to your own land in safety, do not let yourselves imagine that these ogresses are human beings, lest you all pass from misfortune to disaster." But though repeatedly warned by their leader Dharmalabdha, they did not heed him, because they were deluded by their folly.

The merchant-leader Dharmalabdha, with his own company, sailed on, and all² the things which the ogresses had conjured up vanished and seemed to have been just a dream. All the five hundred traders were devoured by five hundred ogresses, their bones alone being left.

When they had devoured the five hundred traders, the whole band of ogresses gathered together, and said, "Here is this merchant-leader Dharmalabdha repeatedly sailing this way. He wins wealth time after time and returns safely to his own land. He also prejudices³ men against coming this way lest, as he says, they be devoured by ogresses. Who has the power to seduce this Dharmalabdha and then devour him?" Then a certain ogress came in, whose wiles were many and who had seduced and devoured several hundreds of traders. (291) She was prevailed on by the ogresses to seduce Dharmalabdha. "He will then," said they, "be your meat." So she transformed herself into a young and beautiful woman, and followed close behind Dharmalabdha wherever he went. Now and again she would move up within the view of the merchant-leader. But he paid no heed to the woman.⁴

The merchant-leader in virtue of his merit⁵ came down to the sea-port carrying treasures of various kinds. He crossed the great ocean in safety and came to Jambudvipa. But the merchant-leader was reproved ² by the crowd, by the men as well as by the women. "Merchant," said they, "do not send this woman away after bringing her from that seaport town. This is your son, for he is like you."

The merchant-leader answered and said, "He is not my son, nor is she my wife. She is an ogress. Many hundreds of traders have been seduced by these ogresses and then devoured."

But the ogress said to the people, "This is just like those men who have gained their desire.⁴ When they are enamoured of a woman, then they talk about her hundreds of good qualities. (292) But when their passion is spent we are made to be Pitācaniṣ, and Rākṣasis, and reviled on the score of a hundred blemishes."

Thus did the ogress try to convince⁶ the people, and thus did the merchant-leader Dharmalabdha safely reach his home in Benares.

---

¹ Or, "by you ogresses," for yuṣmābhiṣ is plural.
² Upalabhayati (= — te) for ṛpālabhyati. See also on p. 295 (text).
³ Mālāḥi, see vol. 1, p. 308, n. 1.
⁴ Arthalabdha. Better, perhaps, is the reading arthalaḥdha of one MS., "greedy for wealth."
⁵ Female Piśācas. See Vol. 1, p. 74, n. 2.
⁶ Literally, "convinced", patīpayati, which, if the reading is correct, can only be the causative of pattiyaṃ (see Vol. 2, p. 105, n. 2). In view of the context Senart argues that the verb should be negatived. But the required sense is got by rendering "try to seduce." Cf. the frequent use of lobhavi in the same story in the sense of "try to seduce," and the causative force implicit in the present tense of many verbs in Greek and Latin.
The traders at once replied to the merchant-leader and said, "Why should we toil unceasingly night and day, when we have here and now attained the beautiful things we sought?"

"So, master, bid farewell for us to our kith and kin in Jambudvīpa; for it is here that we shall enjoy ourselves; thither we shall return no more."

The merchant-leader said,

"O my friends, have you lost your senses? If you act thus, before long you will become meat for ogresses. They will eat your skin, your fat and your flesh, and drink your blood. Glad will the ogresses be when they have won such a feast.

"He who will not do as I say will repent it afterwards." Thereupon other traders made haste to speak to the merchant-leader.

"Why," said they, "should we toil night and day without ceasing when we have here and now attained the beautiful things we sought?

"Master, bid farewell for us to our kith and kin in Jambudvīpa. For it is here that we shall enjoy ourselves; thither we shall return no more."

(293) Other traders again made haste to speak to the merchant-leader. "Why," said they, "should we toil night and day without ceasing when we have here and now got the sweet scents we sought?"

"Master, bid farewell for us to our kith and kin in Jambudvīpa, for it is here that we shall enjoy ourselves; thither we shall return no more."

Other traders again, thereupon made haste to speak to the merchant-leader. "Why," said they, "should we toil unceasingly night and day without ceasing, when we have here and now the sweet scents we sought?"

"O my friends, have you lost your senses or are you perverse? If you act so, you soon will become meat for ogresses. They will eat your skin, your fat and your flesh, and drink your blood. Glad will the ogresses be when they have won such a feast.

"If you do not as I say you will repent it afterwards." But still other traders made haste to speak to the merchant-leader.

"Why," said they, "should we toil night and day without ceasing when we have here and now the contacts we sought?"

(294) "Master, bid farewell for us to our kith and kin in Jambudvīpa, for it is here that we shall enjoy ourselves; thither we shall no more return."

The merchant-leader said:

"O my friends, now have you not lost your senses? If you act so, you will soon become meat for ogresses. They will eat your skin, your fat and your flesh, and drink your blood. Glad will the ogresses be when they have won such a feast. If you do not as I say, you will afterwards repent it."

Then the terrible ogresses quickly threw all the traders into their grim stronghold of iron.

Then they all came together and took counsel because that one merchant came time and again and safely sailed back across the sea, and they were not able to devour him.

---

1 The metrical version is resumed from where it was left off, but it breaks the continuity of the prose.
2 Gha!iima for gha!iima. The roots gha! and gha are frequently confused in our text. See e.g., vol. 3, p. 89, n. 5.
3 Literally, "is not your memory (or mindfulness) perverted," na smṛitir hoti asti utparasyāt.
4 Te mam adhigatā, corresponding to te no adhigatā "they are got of (= by) us", in the repetitions generally. While Senart admits that mam could well be emended into no, he is inclined to let it stand here for the reason that it appears elsewhere in our text as the genitive plural form of aham. See, e.g., on this same page of the text and p. 310 below. See Edgerton, Gram. § 20. 59.
5 Tam khalu vo na smaratha. This phrase differs, as is seen, from the form of the question elsewhere. For vo as nom. pl. cf. p. 82, n. 2. See also Edgerton, Gram. § 20. 44.
6 Tam khu.
7 Reading pratikṣipe for pratītiphe. If the latter is to stand, it must be taken in a causal sense, and is so explained by Edgerton, Gram. § 38. 24.
8 Tāvātā.
9 Tarata (sic), for tarata.
Now there was one ogress among them who was clever and cunning, and had seduced and devoured many a trader. And she spoke to all the other flesh-eating and pitiless ogresses. "I," said she, "will seduce him and he will be my meat."

So when the merchant crossed the sea, the ogress crossed with him, following behind him close on his heels. Said she to him, "Here is your little son; he will die of grief for you. So take him. Why should you forsake your own begotten son?"

Dharmalabdha replied:

"Deliver him to him whose wife you are, instead of saying he is the son of a childless man. You are not a human being. You are an ogress, though you cannot devour me."

But she went round the villages, towns, the kingdom and the provinces, saying to the people, "He, my husband, is forsaking me."

The people came together, both men and women, and reproved the man, saying, "Why do you desert your wife?"

The nobles, too, the brāhmans, the vaiśyas and the śūdras came together and reproved him, saying, "Why do you desert your wife?"

Dharmalabdha replied:

"My friends, she is not my wife; she is a terrible ogress. She is a cruel man-eater. Be assured of this."

Dharmalabdha in spite of being reproved by the crowd did not give way but persisted in saying, "This is not my son;
So the king took the woman into the women's quarters. When King Brahmadatta had dallied with her and enjoyed and amused himself with her, he lay down with her. Now the ogress had put the whole court to sleep. She and her son then devoured the king. When they had devoured the king she sent her son to the other ogresses to tell them to come quickly, for all the court was ready to be eaten. In an instant the son returned bringing the crowd of ogresses. And that night they devoured all the people of the court, both those within and those without (297), men, women and children, elephants and horses, and nothing but bones and skulls were left.

In the morning the counsellors went to the palace and saw that the doors were closed. The household priests, too, came, and the army officers, the town treasurers and councillors, and the community of traders with Dharmalabdha at their head, all came to give the morning's greetings as usual. They, too, saw that the palace doors were closed. The counsellors asked among themselves, "Why are the palace doors not open to-day? Usually the palace doors are open, the palace sprinkled and swept, and the appointed seats set out. We do not hear the sound of anyone, either of a woman or of a man, or of an elephant or horse. In all the spacious palace with its crowd of people we do not hear the sound of anyone."

But Dharmalabdha the merchant-leader said, "Gentlemen, you will no more hear any sound coming from the palace. That pitiless ogress who feeds on flesh and blood was admitted into the palace. And she has made great havoc there. Open these doors so that we may know what is toward in the palace."

The counsellors had a ladder brought, and they made some men scale it, bidding them to go and open the doors. When these men got up into the palace they saw the skulls of elephants and horses. And they told the crowd of people, saying, "The whole court has been devoured; there are only skulls left." They were then bidden to get down and open the doors. They got down then and opened the doors. The counsellors, army officers and town councillors (298) passed through the outer gate of the king's palace. In the elephants' enclosure they saw bones and skulls; in the horses' enclosure only skulls were left, and only the bones, too, were left of the grooms and keepers. On the outside the royal palace looked frightful and smelt foul like a cemetery.

They opened the inner doors of the royal palace and went inside. There again they saw that only the bones were left of the king and his queens. And thus the palace both within and without looked frightful and smelt foul like a cemetery.

Then the counsellors and town councillors called the people together and had the palace within and without sprinkled, swept and fumigated. They paid due honour to the remains of the king and his queens. From all parts around the city a troop of soldiers of the four arms: fighters on elephants, cavalry, charioteers and infantry were levied and drawn up. In this way the city and province were protected against the assault of any king.

The counsellors, town-councillors and the country people assembled to deliberate. They consulted among themselves, saying, "Friends, who of us here in Benares can become a king fit to protect this kingdom righteously?" And they all, counsellors, town-councillors and country people, reflected thus: "There is no fitting king for Benares other than Dharmalabdha, the merchant-leader. He is virtuous and vigilant. Not even Yakṣas and Rākṣasas can succeed in tempting him. For thrice has he crossed the great ocean, and every time he has had a prosperous voyage and returned in safety." So they set Dharmalabdha on the golden throne and anointed him king.

The Exalted One said, "It may be again, monks, that you will think that at that time (299) and on that occasion Dharmalabdha the merchant-leader was somebody else. You must not think that. And why? I, monks, at that time and on that occasion was the merchant-leader named

1 Śreṣṭhinaigamā.
2 Literally "to inquire after the comfortable night," sukharāṭiprīcchikā.
3 i.e., inside the palace or the grounds, so as to open the doors from within.

1 Bhārītya "in what is outside" or "shut off from" (the palace itself).
2 This is the first time in the story that the voyages he had made are definitely numbered.
Dharmalabdha. The chief ogress was Māra's daughter. Then, too, did she approach me, desiring and seeking an opportunity to tempt me. But she did not succeed. And this other time, too, when she approached me desiring and seeking an opportunity to tempt me did she fail to succeed."

When the king had heard\(^1\) from his chief ministers\(^2\) that Dharmalabdha would not acknowledge the woman he had brought from over the sea,

He immediately instructed his chief counsellors,\(^3\) saying to them, "If this man will not have the woman, take her into my women's quarters."

Conscious of the risk,\(^4\) she did not set about eating\(^5\) them herself,\(^6\) but sent her son to take the news to the other ogresses and to say, "I have devoured the king. Come hither at once to eat."\(^7\) Five terrible blood-drinking ogresses all came to the palace, and then returned\(^8\) the way they had come.\(^9\)

The Exalted One, the Master, calling to mind a former abode, a former birth, related this jātaka to his monks.

The Exalted One explained the meaning of it in a discussion of the (300) skandhas, the dhātus, the āyatanas and the ātman.\(^10\)

"When of yore," said he, "I lived in one of my lives in the round of rebirth that has no beginning or end, then was I Dharmalabdha, the prudent trader. The daughters of Māra were the ogresses. Thus understand this jātaka."

\(^1\) A resumption of the metrical version. As is seen the text is disjointed and fragmentary.

\(^2\) Mahāmātā, Pali mahāmattā.

\(^3\) Mahāmātya. Pali mahāmaccas.

\(^4\) Literally, "hindrance" or "obstacle," antarāya. Dharmalabdha might intervene or the intended victims might wake up.

\(^5\) Literally, "did not eat," na khāyi. For this verbal form, aor. 3 sg., cf. the past part. khāyita, p. 76, n. 3. See Edgerton, Gram. § 32. 23.

\(^6\) The text has sānam, genitive object of the verb. Senart suggests sānam, "herself." Whatever word is adopted, the other can be appropriately understood for purposes of translation.

\(^7\) Agacchatattave. For the termination, see p. 282, n. 5.

\(^8\) Reading parākhramensu for parākhramensu of the text.

\(^9\) Yathāgātaṃ.

\(^10\) See e.g., vol. 2, p. 90, n. 4.

VISITS TO NĀGA KINGS

Rid of old age and grief, the Exalted One told his monks of his many and infinite sufferings, of his long faring up and down in the past.

Here ends the Jātaka of Dharmalabdha the merchant-leader.

VISITS TO NĀGA KINGS

Now while the Exalted One was taking his long walk up and down, Kāla,\(^1\) the Nāga king, came to him. He bowed his head at the feet of the Exalted One, arranged his robe over one shoulder, raised his joined hands, and said, "Lord, former perfect Buddhas, the exalted Krakucchanda, Konākamuni and Kāśyapa, lodged in my abode. Well would it be if thou, Lord, would take pity on me and also lodge in my abode." And so the Exalted One spent the fourth week in joy and ease at the abode of the Nāga king Kāla. Then at the end of the fourth week the Exalted One left the abode of Kāla the Nāga king.

The Nāga king Mucilinda\(^2\) who also had shown respect to former Buddhas came to the Exalted One. Having bowed his head at his feet, he stood to one side with his joined hands raised and appealed to the Exalted One. "Lord," said he, "former perfect Buddhas, the exalted Krakucchanda, Konākamuni and Kāśyapa, lodged in my abode. Well would it be if thou, too, Lord, would take pity on me and lodge in my abode." And so the Exalted One spent the fifth week fasting in joy and ease at the abode of Mucilinda the Nāga king.

(301) Now in that week unseasonable rainy weather\(^3\) came on. For the whole week it rained night and day. But Mucilinda the Nāga king threw his coils seven fold\(^4\) around the Exalted One to form an envelope of half a yojana and

\(^1\) See vol. 2, pp. 249, 284, 354.

\(^2\) See p.

\(^3\) Vārdalika, not vārdalīka as it is quoted in P.E.D. s.v. vaddalīka. Late Sk. vārdāla.

\(^4\) Saptakuttam. Cf. the account of the same incident at V. i. 3.
covered him above with his broad hood. And so that the Exalted One should not be assailed by any poisonous or offensive smell the Nāga king named Muclinda emerged from his abode, threw his coils around him and covered him for seven days with his splendid well-shaped hood, and thus begat rich merit. The Nāga king Vinipāta also won merit, for he threw his huge coil around him for seven days.

THE GOATHERD’S BANYAN TREE

When the Exalted One, the perfect Buddha, was living his life of austerity on the banks of the river Nairañjana, he was seen by a goatherd. Now when the goatherd saw the Exalted One mortifying himself with these grim austerities faith arose in him. With serene heart he planted a young banyan tree for the Exalted One. When he had planted this young banyan tree, he went to the Exalted One, held out his joined hands, and said to him, “Lord, I planted this young banyan tree for the Exalted One, believing that when the banyan tree should have grown to its full size, the Exalted One would have achieved his aim. So, for my sake, be pleased to make use of this banyan tree.” The Exalted One silently intimated his assent to the goatherd.

When the goatherd perceived this silent assent he became glad, exultant, delighted, pleased, joyful and content. From time to time he would dig about and around the banyan tree, stake it and hoe around it. From time to time he would water and sprinkle it by pouring cool water on and around it. Thus the goatherd’s young banyan tree quickly grew to have great branches and to be a lovely and beautiful tree through the power of the Exalted One.

(302) And when the goatherd saw the young banyan tree grown into a lovely and beautiful tree with its branches spreading downwards and outwards, his heart became exceeding serene. In virtue of that serenity of heart and his root of merit, on the dissolution of his body he was reborn among the devas of Trāyastriṃśa as a deva named Nyagrodha possessing great majesty and power. Though he had been reborn there later than they, he excelled the other devas born before him in Trāyastriṃśa in the five deva attributes of length of life, complexion, happiness, dominion and retinue. As soon as he was reborn there this reflection occurred to him: “What fair karma did I contract and store up when I was a human being? As the maturing of what karma have I been reborn here in the world of the Trāyastriṃśa devas?”

Then the deva Nyagrodha, while he was thus pondering what his root of merit might be, saw the banyan tree which he had planted for the Exalted One on the banks of the river Nairañjana. And so, accompanied by several thousands of devas, the deva Nyagrodha, in his surpassing beauty irradiating the whole abode of Muclinda with a sublime radiance, came to the Exalted One, bowed his head at his feet and stood to one side. Arranging his robe over one shoulder and holding out his joined hands, he said to the Exalted One, “Lord, when I was a human being and a goatherd looking after my goats, I planted this banyan tree for the Exalted One. As a result of that root of merit, when I passed away

---

1 One would expect a different name here, for the action is more or less a repetition of the preceding one.
2 The verb, finite (parikṣipta) or participial (parikṣipta), is wanting.
3 Vinipāta. Edgerton (B.H.S.D.) would read instead vinipāta, “without quitting”, which would give the translation, “he (the Buddha) was enveloped (reading parikṣipta for ca pūnyam prasādām of Senart’s text) by the Nāga king without quitting (i.e., continuously), for he enveloped him for seven days.” Edgerton’s emendation, however, does not seem to take account of the yo sustam of the same two MSS, which give him parikṣipto. Further, as has already been remarked, the text clearly implies that more than one Nāga king contributed to the protection of the Buddha on this occasion. Now Muclinda appears in the Māhu. as one of a trio. See 3. 138, and 254 (text) where he, Rāhu and Vemacitrin are three Asuras. Muclinda on its second occurrence is clearly a mistake for another name (? Rāhu), and Vinipāta might well be a corruption (or another name) for Vemacitrin, Pali Vepacitāk. The whole passage is difficult reading.

---

1 Parihuddāletī, a conjecture of Senart’s, explained as a denominative of buddāla. In his note on the word he would favour dd instead of ṛ, in spite of the evidence of the MSS. Edgerton (B.H.S.D.) suggests “walls about,” as the MSS. have parikudeti, kūdyeti, denominative of kūḍa, “wall.”
2 Ajāpālāma. instr. for gen.
3 Olakhapralakha. For this story about the Goatherd’s Banyan-tree see also Beal: Romantic legend of the Buddha, pp. 192, 238.
4 Or, translated, Banyan.
5 Elsewhere numbered as ten. See e.g., vol. 1, p. 25: 2, pp. 183, 350.
from among men I was reborn among the deva hosts of Trayastrimśa. Well would it be if the Exalted One would take pity on me and make use of this banyan tree, so that thereby I may have a greater reward still."

The Exalted One silently intimated his assent to the deva. And the deva perceiving the Exalted One's silent assent, was glad, thrilled, exultant, joyful and content. He bowed his head at the Exalted One's feet, saluted him thrice from the right, and then departed.

TRAPUṢA AND BHALLIKA

After he had left the abode of Mucilinda the Nāga king, the Exalted One spent the sixth week fasting in joy and ease at the foot of the Goatherd's Banyan-tree. When this sixth week at the foot of the Goatherd's Banyan-tree was over, (303) he spent the seventh week fasting in joy and ease at a shrine of many devas in a thicket of kṣirikā trees. Thus the Exalted One fasted for seven weeks or forty-nine days.

In the north country is a town called Ukkala. Now it happened that two merchants of this town of Ukkala, by name Trapusa and Bhallika, who were rich, wealthy, opulent, virtuous, and possessing many attendants, were coming with five hundred loads along that way from the south. Of their luck-bringing oxen one bull was born under the constellation Sujātā,1 and another under the constellation Kīrtikā.2 And they were hence called Sujāta and Kirtika after the constellations. They went in front of the whole caravan drawing the leader's waggon. Wherever on the journey there was any danger, whether from a lion, tiger, leopard, rhinoceros, elephant, demon of the forest, flood or brigand, the bulls would refuse to go that way. The merchants thus knew there was danger there, and they would come together and go scouting in all directions.

Now the bulls Sujāta and Kirtika came to the thicket of kṣirikā trees. There in the thicket of kṣirikā trees they were stopped by the magic power of the dead relatives of the traders Trapusa and Bhallika who had become devas, and they could not go on. When they stopped all the men of the caravan became frightened and got ready to fight. But the relations who had become devas, standing in the air, raised a shout and made their noise heard. "Traders," they cried, "be not afraid. No danger threatens you. But the Exalted One, the Buddha, abides in the wood here, having appeared after a period of seven incalculable kalpas for the sake of the welfare and happiness of mankind, out of compassion for the world, for the benefit and welfare of the great multitude of devas and men. (304) And he has been fasting these seven weeks or forty-nine days. Serve him with food. Thus will your root of merit be infinite."

On hearing the words of the devas the traders Trapuṣa and Bhallika brought refreshment of honey mixed with ghee. And the devas went in front of the traders, saying, "Come, this way." Thus the traders were led by the devas into the presence of the Exalted One.

The traders, taking with them the refreshment of honey,
approached the Exalted One and said to him, “We pray thee, Lord, eat of this refreshment of honey as a favour to us.”

But then this thought occurred to the Exalted One: “Now did the perfect Buddhas of yore receive food in their bowls or in their hands? They took it in bowls.” As soon as this thought occurred to the Exalted One, the Four Guardians of the world came bearing four golden bowls and went up to him. But the Exalted One, on the score that bowls of precious metal were not suitable for a recluse, would not accept them. So they brought silver bowls and went up to the Exalted One. But these again the Exalted One would not accept, because they were of precious metal. In the same way they brought bowls of pearl, of beryl, crystal, white coral and ruby, but on the score that bowls of precious stones were not suitable for a recluse, the Exalted One would not accept them.

Finally they came to the Exalted One bringing bowls of stone. Then the thought occurred to the Exalted One: “If I accept a bowl of one Guardian of the world, misgiving will arise in the hearts of the other three.” So the Exalted One accepted all the four bowls of the Four Guardians. He touched them with his thumb and they became one bowl. But though the four bowls were thus become one bowl, four kōfīs of replicas of all the four bowls were to be seen.

Then the Exalted One partook of the refreshment of honey given him by the traders Trapusa and Bhallika.

(305) When the Exalted One had drunk the refreshment of honey which had been given him by the traders Trapusa and Bhallika and which was choice and exquisite, having good colour, smell, and taste, he pronounced a blessing on them:

Many a goodly quality the refreshing food was said to have. It was good of colour, smell and taste.

The first refreshment that Trapusa and Bhallika gave the Master was choice, exquisite, desirable and fitting.

The Supreme of men drank this drink of honey and ghee. By them was the Hero regaled as he came out of his seclusion, as he himself regaled devas, Gandharvas and men with the rain of dharma.

He bestowed a blessing on them, a blessing divine, bringing good luck and success. When they heard it they were glad, for it would prosper all their affairs.

Blessing be on your men and on your beasts; blessing be on you when you go your ways and when you return. Blessing be on you by night and by day; blessing be on you at noon-tide. Blessing be on you always; may no evil befall you.

May good luck stand on your right shoulder and on your left; may good luck cling to your every limb like a garland.

Good fortune and good luck be yours, traders; may it be well with you on whatever business you go to the regions of the east.

May the stars that stand over that region protect you, Krittikā, Rohiṇī, Mriga, Ārdrā, Punarvasu, the fair constellation Pūsya, and Asleṣā, the seventh.
These are seven glorious constellations which keep ward in the world; to them is assigned the eastern quarter in the region of the east.

May these watch over you abroad and at home. May the quarters be propitious to you. May no evil befall you. Return successful, guarded by these constellations.

In the region of the eastern quarter are eight young deva maidens, Nandollarā, Nandisenā, Nandini, Nandirakṣitā, Jayantī, Vijayantarī, Siddharthā and Aparājītā, whose sovereign lord is named Dhrītrāstra.

He is king and lord of the Gandharvas, and is protected by the devas. May he, too, watch over you abroad and at home.

May the quarters be propitious to you. May no evil befall you. Return successful, guarded by all the devas.

In the region of the eastern quarter is a shrine named Cāpala, which is always ablaze with splendour and where prayers are always answered. May it watch over you abroad and at home.

May the quarters be propitious to you. May no evil befall you. Return successful, guarded by all the shrines.

On whatever business you go to the south, may the constellations that stand in that quarter guard you—Maghā, the twin Pālgunī, Hastā, Cīrā, the fifth, Suātī and Viśākha—the southern quarter is theirs.

These are seven glorious constellations which keep ward in the world; to them is assigned the southern quarter in the regions of the south.

May these watch over you abroad and at home. May the quarters be propitious to you. May no evil befall you. Return successful, guarded by these constellations.

1 bhāmīye bhāmakama (instruct. for loc.) ca, literally, “in the district (and) at home.”

1 One of the “Four Great Kings.” See vol. I, p. 29, n. 3. The others are mentioned below, viz. Virūḍhaka, Virūpākṣa and Kuvera. As a “Great King” the last is generally known by his patronymic Vaśravaṇa (See, e.g., vol. 2, p. 153, n. 15).

2 This is probably mythical. At any rate it cannot be identical with the well-known Čāpala-cetiya near Vesālī, the capital of the Vajjis to the north of the Ganges. Lal. Vist. names it Ācāpala.

3 niyam satyopayācanaṁ, literally “which always has true prayer.”

In the region of the southern quarter are eight young deva maidens, Lakṣmatī, Śrīmatī, Yaśomati, Yaśodhrā, Śūbbeṣṭhītā, Suprabhātā, Suśūddhā and Śrīyākṣītā. May these, too, watch over you abroad and at home.

May the quarters be propitious to you. May no evil befall you. Return successful, guarded by these deva maidens.

Their lord and king is named Virūḍhaka. May this king and lord of the Kumbhāṇḍas, together with Yama, protect you.

May the quarters be propitious to you. May no evil befall you. Return successful, guarded by the Kumbhāṇḍas.

In the region of the southern quarter is a shrine named Abhipāsa, which is always ablaze with splendour and where prayers are always answered.

May this, too, watch over you abroad and at home. May the quarters be propitious to you. May no evil befall you. Return successful, safeguarded by the shrine.

On whatever business you go to the western quarter (308) may the constellations that stand in that quarter guard you: Anurādhā, Jyeṣṭhā, Mālā, steady and strong, the twin Aśādhas, Bhiji, and the seventh, Śravaṇā.

May these, too, watch over you abroad and at home. May the quarters be propitious to you. May no evil befall you. Return successful, guarded by these constellations.

In the region of the western quarter are eight young deva maidens, Ālambuṣā, Miśrakeśi, Aṛṣṭā, Suprabhāyāhā, ... 2 Kṛṣṇā, Śukrā and Draupadī. May these, too, watch over you and give you health and prosperity.

May the quarters be propitious to you. May no evil befall you. Return successful, guarded by these deva maidens.

Their lord and king is named Virūpākṣa. May he, the lord and king of Nāgas, together with Varuna, protect you. May he watch over you abroad and at home. May the quarters be propitious to you. May no evil befall you. Return successful, protected by all the Nāgas.

1 Otherwise unknown. The corresponding name in Lal. Vist. is Padma.

2 Lacuna, which Senart prefers to leave in his text rather than restore it after Lal. Vist.
May it, too, watch over you abroad and at home. May the quarters be propitious to you. May no evil befall you. Return successful, guarded by the Yakṣas and Rākṣasas.

Eight and twenty constellations, seven for each of the four quarters, (310) with the moon and sun making a full thirty.

Two and thirty deva maidens, eight for each of the four quarters. Four Great Kings, glorious guardians of the world, with blazing radiance guard the four quarters.

Eight recluses, eight brahmans, eight guardians of the provinces, eight devas with Indra, may these always watch over you.

Then the Exalted One gave them the three resorts of refuge. "Come," said he, "to the refuge of the Buddha, to the refuge of the dharma, to the future refuge of the Exalted One's community of disciples." And so they came to the refuge of the Buddha, of the dharma and of the Sangha.

Then they said, "We, Lord, are traders who range over many a country and kingdom. Well would it be if the Exalted One were to give us a relic which we could worship." With his own hand the Exalted One cut off some of the hair on his head and gave it them, saying, "Have a tope made for this hair!" He then cut his nails and gave them the parrings, saying, "Have a tope made for my nails. Stones will be provided you and do you set them up." So they erected

1 The allusion to the eight recluses, brahmans and nobles, which is found in Lal Vist. also, is obscure. As for the eight devas, Senart suggests that they consist of the "Four Great Kings" each attended by another deva. Thus Yama is mentioned with Virūḍhaka and Varuṇa with Virūḍhaka. To get Dhṛtarāṣṭra’s auxiliary deva Senart suggests that, at verse 10, p. 306, for devehi sa ca rakṣatāḥ we should read devendrena sa rakṣatāḥ. The latter reading is more reasonable on other grounds also, for the text makes a "Great King" to be protected by devas at the same time as he is invoked himself to protect human beings. In Lal Vist. Manibhadra is invoked with Kuvera, and Senart suggests that for rakṣatāḥ at verse 14, p. 399 should be substituted either this name or the name of a comparable deva.

2 I.e., Buddha, dharma and the Sangha. At V. 1, 4 they are said to come to only two refuges, that of the Buddha and that of dharma, the Sangha not being yet established. They are there thus said to be the first lay-disciples in the world using the two-word formula (devendrena). See I. B. Horner: Bk. of Disc., Vol. 4, p. 6.

3 Mam., gen. pl. See p. 61, n. 2.

4 "Will come," āgamitveynti.
a tope for the hair where the place named Keśasthālin now is. They erected a tope for his nails where the city named Vāluksa now is. At the place named Śilukṣa they set up the stones which the Exalted One by his magic power had thrown there with his own hands.¹

Then the Exalted One, after his fast of seven weeks or forty-nine days, drank (311) the refreshing drink of honey given by Trapusa and Bhallika. But then the bilious humour of the Exalted One overflowed.²

Then Śakra, lord of the devas, offered the Exalted One the fruit of the myrobalan tree,³ saying that it would ease⁴ the humours. The Exalted One partook of the myrobalan and he planted the stalk in that spot. And on that very same day it grew into a big myrobalan tree with wide-spreading branches and laden with flowers and fruit. This was the first of the trees that grew by the magic power of the Exalted One. The myrobalans which grew from this tree are to-day known as the Consecrated Myrobalan Wood.⁵

¹ These three places do not seem to be otherwise known. Rhys Davids, in Buddhist Birth Stories, p. 206, n. 2, has an interesting note on these relics, in the course of which he alludes to the claims of both the Burmese and the Singalese to be the modern possessors of them. He alludes also to the fact that the legend as given in f. is found in an ancient inscription on the great bell at Rangoon.

² See below, p. 313 (text).

³ Senart’s text here is pitana Bhagavato ca abhisyanādita. He takes the latter word as meaning “overflowed (with satisfaction),” i.e., “they (Trapusa and Bhallika) were overjoyed that the Buddha had drunk.” But the verb abhisyanaditī is also used of the “overflow” of the humours of the body. See, e.g., 3. 143, 144, 153, 154 and cf. FalI. Edgerton (B.H.S.D.) in calling attention to this wrong interpretation by Senart adds that the exact reading of the whole sentence is uncertain; possibly, he says, it should be tathā (so MSS.) abhisyanādita (impersonal), “over-exuberance of humours was caused.” But it may be suggested that for pitana, which is not readily construable, we should read pitilā or pitā and retain abhisyanādita, or else pitana abhisyanādita, “the bilious humour overflowed.” Hence the purgative harītaḥ given the Buddha by Śakra, so that there should be easing of the humours, dhāhānāṃ suṣkham bhavati (Senart, however, emends suṣkham (so MSS.) into mukham giving the sense, “so that the myrobalan tree should be the chief of relics” dhāhānāṃ).

⁴ Harītaḥ. FalI (also Sk.) harītaḥ, yellow myrobalan, Terminalia citrina or chebula. Used as a purgative.

⁵ Reading suṣkham for mukham. See preceding note.

¹ The story now turns back to relate some incidents which occurred during the austerities at Uruvilvā.

² Or “city-washerwoman or woman who hangs out clothes (to dry),” nagara-avalamblīka. This is the interpretation suggested by Edgerton (B.H.S.D.), who refers for confirmation to the statement below that the woman “hung out the robe on the branch of a tree,” where the verb used is olambitvī. In his Introduction, p. xxix, Senart himself translates the expression by “étendue de linge,” but in his note on the present passage he makes the less probable suggestion that avalamblīka is synonymous with veḷalambīka, “a musical instrument” (or its player). Against Edgerton’s interpretation is the fact mentioned later in the story that the robe needed washing!

³ The story now turns back to relate some incidents which occurred during the austerities at Uruvilvā.

⁴ Literally “hempen rags from the dust-heap,” śanapāṇāsukha. The details of this episode in Lal. Vist. 265 ff. differ somewhat. V. 1. 27 ff. does not say how the Buddha got the robe.

⁵ I.e., reflection brought back to her mind her own past life.
meritorious gift of mine has not yet been made use of by the Exalted One. If the Exalted One would graciously make use of that meritorious gift, then my reward would be still greater."

So, accompanied by a hundred thousand Apsarases and in the great majesty and splendour of the devas, she left her home in Trayastraśīma, took the hempen rag-robe from the branch of the tree, approached the Exalted One and said to him, "Lord, when I was a human being, with a heart full of faith I gave this hempen rag-robe to the Exalted One while he was practising his austerities, so that he should for my sake make use of it when he had achieved his purpose. As a result of that root of merit, when I passed away from among men I was reborn among the devas of the great majesty and splendour of the devas, she left her home in the extreme north-west of India. The second name may be adduced here cold as another example of a place-name of the same derivation. But possibly the explanation is that the stone was cast not where Trapusa and Bhallika were temporarily staying in the neighbourhood of Uruvilva, but to their permanent home, which according to the Mhau. was in the north.

But devas who appeared in the sky said to the Exalted One, "Lord, pray do not accept this hempen rag-robe. We will give the Exalted One special garments."

The Exalted One, however, would not accept the devas' gift of special garments.

When he had accepted the hempen rag-robe of Gava the public washer-woman, hundreds of thousands of devas in the sky waved their garments in honour of the Exalted One and shouted "ha! ha! hail! hail!" As he has renounced his universal sovereignty, are not our hearts glad that he has gotten him hempen rag-robe?"

Then the Exalted One wished to wash the hempen rag-robe. Water was needed, and Śakra, lord of the devas, with his own hands channelled out a stream. To this day the stream is called Pāṇīkhāṭā. A stone slab was needed on which to bleach the hempen rag-robe. Four stone slabs were provided by the Four Great Kings. On one stone slab the Exalted One bleached his hempen rag-robe. (313) On the second stone slab he dried it. By his magic power the Exalted One threw the third stone slab in front of Trapusa and Bhallika who dwelt in the town called Śilūka, and it was set up there as a monument. Even to this day there is a place in the kingdom of Gandhāra known as Śilā.

On the fourth stone slab the Exalted One sat down to darrn the hempen rag-robe. And this stone slab received the name of the Exalted One's Anusivana. Thus the Exalted One made use of all the four slabs, and so they became monuments in Jambudvīpa in the eyes of both devas and men.

When the Exalted One had washed and darned his hempen rag-robe, he went down to the river Pāṇīkhāṭā to bathe. When he had bathed the Exalted One proceeded to step out of the river. Now exalted Buddhas are untiring of body and of mind. But there was on the river-bank a beautiful and
lovely tree called Kakubha, with wide-spreading branches, in which dwelt a deva bearing the same name as the tree. And as he was coming out of the water the Exalted One spoke to the deva, saying, "Kakubha, lend me a hand." The deva, who wore fine and faultless earrings, held out his arms to the Exalted One, who grasped them and thus stepped out of the river Pāṇīkhāṭā. And as soon as he had withdrawn his hand from the deva Kakubha's arms, on the branch of the tree was seen the mark of the Exalted One's five fingers.

(When I attained enlightenment, when the good Kakubha extended his arms, while the stream Pāṇīkhāṭā was channelled out and when the stones were thrown down by the deva.)

Then the Exalted One went on to the Goatherd's Banyan-tree, and while staying (314) at the foot of the tree he reflected on the world. "Profound," said he, "is this dharma of mine to which I have awakened, abstruse, subtle, hard to understand, but no mere dialectic; it is intelligible only to the wise, and repugnant to the world in general. But this race of men delights in the things to which it clings, rejoices and exults in the things to which it clings, this is a matter hard to understand, namely, what antecedent condition is, what cause is, and what the arising of all things from a cause; the renunciation of all substrates of rebirth, the break-up of sensorial states by the previous stilling of the

---

2 Senart rightly prints this passage in brackets. It is obviously a fragment of another version of the episode, which would seem to resemble closely that in V. i. 28 f., where the Buddha recounts the incident of the rag-robe and of its washing, etc., to Uruvela-Kassapa. Bodhim has no verb governing it. Either a verb like phāsati has to be supplied or as Senart doubtfully suggests bodhim may be aorist meaning "I reached enlightenment."
3 The close verbal resemblance of the account of the events leading up to the first sermon as given in the Mahāvagga (V. i. 4 ff.) and the Mahāvastu, respectively, will be found analysed by E. Windisch: Die Komposition des Mahāvastu, p. 13 f. J. B. Horner: Bk. of Disc., p. 6, gives in a note the following Pali references to the Buddha's "Great Hesitation"—S. i. 136, D. 2. 36, M. 1. 107, and refers to notes on the subject in K. S. 1. 171, Dial. 2. 29, and Further Dial. 1. 118. See also Lal. Vist. 396 ff.
4 Abhissambuddha. The Pali texts have adhipatā.
5 Sarvālokāvipratyanika. This expression is absent from the Pali texts.
6 Ayam only in the Mīhu. The Pali texts have āyam pañjā.

---

FROM URUVILVĀ TO BENARES

samskāras, the destruction of craving, passionlessness, cessation, nirvana. And were I to teach the dharma to others and those others were not to understand, that would be a vexation for me. Let me then abide in silence on a mountain in the wilderness."

And on that occasion these verses were revealed to the Exalted One:

The Way up against the stream, profound and hard to see, passion's slaves will fail to see it. Enough then of the thought of preaching it.

With hard toil did I win it. Enough then of the thought of preaching it. For men who are consumed by sensual desires are carried down with the current."

Not long after his enlightenment the Exalted One was staying at Uruvilvā on the banks of the Nairāṭyāṇa, at the foot of the Goatherd's Banyan-tree. Now while the Exalted One was all alone in solitude and seclusion, the following thought and reflection occurred to him: "Since the dharma to which I have won is profound, abstruse, subtle, hard to understand, not won by speculation, no mere dialectic, intelligible only to the wise, and repugnant to the world in general, were I to teach it to others, those others would not understand. And that would be the greatest vexation to
me. Let me then abide (315) in silence all alone in a tract of wilderness."

But then Great Brahmā, becoming aware of this thought and reflection of the Exalted One’s, went to Śakra, lord of the devas, and said to him, “Friend Kośika,1 the Exalted One is turning his heart to inactivity rather than to setting the wheel of dharma rolling. Why should we not, friend Kośika, go to the Exalted One and implore him to set rolling the wheel of dharma?” “So be it, friend,” said Śakra, lord of the devas, in reply to Great Brahmā.2

Then Great Brahmā, Śakra, lord of the devas, the devas Suyāma, Sunirmīta, Vasāvartin,3 the Four Great Kings, the ten Yakṣa lords, and the ten Yakṣa chieftains accompanied by several hundred Yakṣas, at dawn of day came to the Exalted One, irradiating with their radiance the whole of the ground at the foot of the banyan-tree. They bowed their heads at his feet and stood to one side. And as they thus stood to one side, Great Brahmā said to Śakra, lord of the devas, “Friend Kośika, implore the Exalted One to set rolling the wheel of dharma.”

And Śakra, lord of the devas, arranging his robe over one shoulder, approached the Exalted One and addressed him in a verse.

Arise thou who art victorious in the fight. Fully laden art thou. Fare through the world free of debt. Teach dharma, O Sugata. Those who learn will grow.4

But the Exalted One kept silent. Then Great Brahmā, Śakra, lord of the devas, the devas Suyāma, Santusīta, Nirmīta, Vasāvartin, the Four Great Kings, the many hundreds of Yakṣas and the many hundreds of the Yakṣas’ retinue, perceiving the Exalted One’s unwillingness to set rolling the wheel of dharma, were pained and grieved. They bowed their heads at his feet, saluted him from the right, and forthwith disappeared.

There is also the following tradition concerning this:5

The Exalted One was staying at Uruvilvā on the banks of

1 For this appellation of Śakra (Indra), see vol. 2, p. 49, n. 4 and p. 60.
2 This incident of Śakra first appealing to the Buddha is common to the Mhūv. and Lal. Vist. (396), but is not found in the Pali accounts. Cf. S. 1. 233.
3 For these devas, see vol. 1, p. 163, n. 4.
4 This line is identical with one of the lines spoken in the Pali accounts by Brahmā (see below), with the exception that it has pariṇābhaṅgū (so read for -bhaño) instead of satkhādha, “caravan-leader.” Senart suggests that the former word should be emended into prajñābhaṅgū “wisdom-maker,” as in Lal. Vist. But the Mhūv. word may be retained on the ground that it is not unrelated in meaning to satkhādha, i.e., the successful merchant is one who has a “full-load,” and is also free of debt. Or else, pariṇābhaṅgū may be a corruption of an original paṇṇaṁbhaṅgū “one who has laid down his burden,” i.e., is saved or become an Arhan.

1 The Mhūv. and Lal. Vist. throughout this episode speak of Mahā-Brahmā only and there is nothing to imply that a particularly Great Brahmā is alluded to. D. 2. 36 is similar in this respect. But V. 1. 4 and M. 1. 169 speak of a particular Great Brahmā, viz., Sahampati, which name Rhys Davids (Dial. 2. 70) regards as a gloss. Lord Chalmers (Further Dial. 1, p. 118, n. 2) says, however, that “there is no justification for assigning seniority here to the Digha over the Majjhima and Vinaya.”
2 As in Lal. Vist. Great Brahmā here utters only one verse as compared with three in V. and M. and two in D. The second line is identical with the last of the Pali lines, with the exception that it has Sugata instead of Bhagavān.
3 Ajñātāro bhavissanti “the knowers will become,” corresponding to arñātāro bhavissanti of the Pali texts cited (add also S. 1. 234). The rendering is that adopted in I. B. Horner: Bh. of Disc. 4. 8 after Mrs. Rhys Davids: Manual, p. 82.
4 Literally, “This also is heard,” ethametam śrāyati, which corresponds to the expression “tatredam ucyate” so often used in vol. 1 to introduce variant versions of episodes.
the river Nairaśījā at the foot of the Goatherd’s Banyan-tree, not long after his enlightenment. Then at dawn Great Brahma approached the Exalted One. In his surpassing beauty he irradiated the whole of the ground at the foot of the Goatherd’s Banyan-tree with his radiance. He bowed at the Exalted One’s feet, and saluted him from the right. He then stood to one side and addressed the Exalted One in a verse.

_Arise thou who art victorious in the fight. Fully laden art thou. Fare through the world free of debt. O Sugata, teach dharma. Those who learn will grow._

But the Exalted One replied to Great Brahma in a verse:

_The Way up against the stream, profound and hard to see, passion’s slaves will fail to see it. Enough then, O Brahma, of the thought of preaching it._

(317) Then Great Brahma seeing the Exalted One’s refusal at the foot of the Goatherd’s Banyan-tree to set rolling the wheel of dharma, was pained and grieved. He bowed his head at the Exalted One’s feet, saluted him from the right, and forthwith disappeared.

There is further the following tradition:

Not long after his enlightenment the Exalted One was staying at Uruvilvā on the banks of the river Nairafijana, at the foot of the Goatherd’s Banyan-tree. Now at that time there had spread among the brāhmans and laymen of Magadha such wicked and wrong beliefs as that (there would come a time when) the wind would not blow, rivers not run, embryos not be born, birds not fly, fire not burn, moon and sun not rise, and the whole habitable world be stricken with darkness._1_ He saw beings who of a bad disposition and difficult to instruct and make pure; he saw beings who were of a good disposition and easy to instruct and make pure; he saw beings who were quick learners and beings who learnt only after a lengthy exposition. He saw three categories of beings, the category in which good results are necessarily entailed, that in which evil results are necessarily entailed, and that in which no result is entailed. Just as a man of vision, standing on the brink of a lotus-pool, could see with little difficulty blue, red and white lotuses, some in the water, others on the surface, and others growing up out of the water, so did the Exalted One with his incomparable Buddha-eye see the whole world as he surveyed it. Then this thought occurred to the Exalted One: "Whether I teach the dharma or whether I do not, the category of men in which evil results are necessarily entailed would not be able to understand it. Whether I teach the dharma or whether I do not, the category of men in which good

---

1. The Pali texts do not specify what the heresies which had arisen in Magadha were. _Lal. Vist._ describes them in the same terms as the _Māhu_.
4. Padaparama. Cf. Pali _id_ (Add J. 6. 131 to references in the two preceding notes). The three types of men referred to below are not enumerated in the Pali parallels to this passage.
5. The text has _vipallīscita_. The Pali texts already cited. The slight differences are common to the _Māhu_ and _Lal. Vist._
6. _Rājīyas_, _Bsk._ pl. of _rājī_, "heap". See vol. 1, p. 138, n. 5. _Lal. Vist._ also alludes to these categories, but the Pali parallels do not.
results are necessarily entailed will in any case get to know what I preach. The category of men in which no result is necessarily entailed will learn if I preach the dharma to them, but they will not know it if I do not preach it to them.”

So the Exalted One, taking into consideration the category of men in which no result is necessarily entailed, and being aware of those wicked and wrong beliefs which had arisen among the brāhmans and laymen of Magadha, aware of the entreaty of Great Brahma, aware of his own vow made seven incalculable kalpas ago, conceiving a great compassion for men and remembering that those majestic lords of devas and rulers of the world had come to him and implored him to set rolling the noble wheel of dharma, (319) granted Great Brahma’s request that he should do so. And on that occasion the Exalted One addressed Great Brahma in a verse:

I have opened the door of immortality, O Brahma. Let those who list to hear the Exalted One shed the faith that is based on a harmful idea. For already there has arisen in Magadha a doctrine that is impure, based on a harmful idea, and wrong.  

Then when the Exalted One had granted Great Brahma’s request that he should set rolling the incomparable wheel of dharma, the devas of earth raised a shout. “Behold, friends,” said they, “the Exalted One has granted Great Brahma’s request that he set rolling the incomparable wheel of dharma. This will confer welfare and happiness on mankind, compassion on the world, good, welfare and happiness on the great multitude and on devas and men. The hosts of the Asuras will wane, the hosts of the devas will wax.” And so on to at that time and on that occasion the shout rose up to reach Brahma’s world.

There is also the following tradition concerning this:

(320) At the moment that he set the wheel rolling, the Exalted One reflected on what kind of beings set rolling the noble wheel of dharma. “Those beings,” said he, “who have had association with former Buddhas set rolling the noble wheel of dharma. Now I have had association with former Buddhas, and therefore I am worthy to set rolling the noble wheel of dharma. Those beings who are endowed with peerless conduct set rolling the noble wheel of dharma. Now I am endowed with peerless conduct, and therefore I am worthy to set rolling the noble wheel of dharma. Those beings who are endowed with a peerless dwelling-place set rolling the noble wheel of dharma. Those beings who have the distinctive attributes set rolling the noble wheel of dharma. Those beings who have been able to pass away set rolling the noble wheel of dharma. Whatever beings have been able to descend into a womb; whatever beings

---

1 Literally, “gave him leave,” avahātamahārṣīya.
2 The sense of this verse as a whole is pretty much the same as that of the corresponding verse in the Pali texts (V. 17, D. 2. 39, M. 1. 169, S. 1. 138). There are, however, differences such as oral tradition in the course of time may be expected to have brought about. Words in the original are replaced by others of like sound. For example, the Pali line vihīmasasamba paguñām na bhāsim dharmam, “Thinking of fatigue I did not preach the correct dharma,” becomes in the Mhū, wihēnasamāṃ (a)praguno abhāsi dharma. As E. Lamotte (op. cit., vol. 1, p. 60, n. 1) points out praguo in the Mhū, line must be read (a) praguno. But the run of verse demands paguñām. With some variations the verse is also found at Lal. Vist. 400. The Pali version has the greater claim to represent the original tradition in that it makes more explicit the Buddha’s consent to teach the dharma, na bhāsim, “I did not preach,” implying that he is now ready to do so.

3 This exultation of the devas is absent from the Pali parallels, but appears in Lal. Vist.

4 I.e., according to the stock account of the devas’ exultation when a future Buddha was proclaimed. See vol. 1, passim.

5 Literally, “are endowed with former association,” pārayogasampāṇā. See vol. 2, p. 243, n. 2. This reflection of the Buddha’s is not found either in the Pali parallel texts or in Lal. Vist.

6 The corollary, “I am endowed, etc.” is omitted in the text from here on.

7 Avetikā, sc., buddhadharmā, the eighteen distinctive attributes of a Buddha. See Vol. 1, p. 39, n. 4.

8 Literally “are endowed with a passing-away” sc. from among the devas, cauti sampanna.

9 Garbhāsārāṇīsampanna.
have been able to stand in a womb; whatever beings have had such a birth; whatever beings are endowed with the characteristics; whatever beings are endowed with the lesser characteristics; whatever beings are endowed with merit, steadfastness and mindfulness; whatever beings are possessed of the current dharma; whatever beings are possessed of unimpaired dharma; whatever beings are pre-eminent in the world; whatever beings have the gift of investigating the world; whatever beings are endowed with the essence of being; whatever beings can with their perfect knowledge understand the sound conclusion that comes from sound premises, and the unsound conclusion that comes from unsound premises; whatever beings can with their perfect knowledge understand as it really is the way that leads everywhere and the way that leads here and there; whatever beings can with their perfect knowledge understand the various and several components of the world as they really are; whatever beings can with their perfect knowledge perfectly understand as it really is the diversity of the faculty of energy of other beings and individuals.—(all) these set rolling the wheel of dharma. Those who can, with their perfect knowledge, understand as they really are the freedom of the heart and the freedom through intuitive wisdom which are rid of the dśravas because of the decay of the dśravas; whatever beings are long-lived, have the right way of life, morality, concentration, emancipation, the knowledge of emancipation; have given up the world, have conceived the great compassion, have won enlightenment, are skilled in the ways of the heart, have the wonder-working power of magic, mind-reading and instruction, and are gifted with all good qualities of character; whatever beings have mastered the analysis of meaning, of reasons, of definitions, and of understanding; whatever beings have attained the noble five-fold concentration, the noble, great five-fold perfect concentration, (322) the noble, great perfect concentration of the five knowledges, the noble, great five-fold perfect concentration, (322) the noble, great perfect concentration of the five knowledges, and are endowed with strength, the faculties and magic; whatever beings are gifted with polite speech, with distinct and faultless speech which makes the meaning clear, and have the ability to answer questions; whatever beings have the power to transform the despondency of others into confidence, and to restrain by means of the dharma the malevolence of others; whatever beings have the power to bestow on others the gift of happiness—it is beings like these that set rolling the noble wheel of dharma. Whatever beings remember their various past abodes; whatever beings understand as they really are the freedom of the heart and the freedom through intuitive wisdom which are rid of the dśravas because of the decay of the dśravas; whatever beings are long-lived, have the right way of life, morality, concentration, emancipation, the knowledge of emancipation; have given up the world, have conceived the great compassion, have won enlightenment, are skilled in the ways of the heart, have the wonder-working power of magic, mind-reading and instruction, and are gifted with all good qualities of character; whatever beings have mastered the analysis of meaning, of reasons, of definitions, and of understanding; whatever beings have attained the noble five-fold concentration, the noble, great five-fold perfect concentration, (322) the noble, great perfect concentration of the five knowledges, and are endowed with strength, the faculties and magic; whatever beings are gifted with polite speech, with distinct and faultless speech which makes the meaning clear, and have the ability to answer questions; whatever beings have the power to transform the despondency of others into confidence, and to restrain by means of the dharma the malevolence of others; whatever beings have the power to bestow on others the gift of happiness—it is beings like these that set rolling the noble wheel of dharma. It is beings who are endowed with all the attributes of a Buddha that set rolling the noble wheel of dharma. And I, again, am endowed with all the attributes of a Buddha, and therefore I am worthy to set rolling the wheel of dharma.”

Then the Exalted One, aware that he had himself acquired such virtue, reflected: “What if I were now to set rolling...
the peerless wheel of dharma? But I wonder who is competent to understand this dharma of mine when I first preach it and not be annoyed with me at the preaching of it." He then said to himself, "Udraka Rāmaputra was, pure, of little defilement and with little dust in his eyes. He had gone far, proceeded far, and taught as his doctrine the dogma concerning the sphere of what is neither consciousness nor unconsciousness. But Udraka Rāmaputra has been dead seven days. His death is a great loss. Now what other man is there who is pure, of little defilement, with little dust in his eyes, who is competent to understand the dharma when it is first preached and would not be annoyed on hearing it? Arâra Kâlâma was pure, of little defilement, and with little dust in his eyes, and he would be competent to understand the dharma when it was first preached and would not be annoyed with me when he heard it. The loss of Arâra is great, for he has been dead these three days. What other man is there, then, who is pure, has little dust in his eyes, who is competent to understand this dharma of mine when it is first preached and will not be annoyed with me when he hears it?" He then thought to himself: "The good group of five are, pure of little defilement, and have little dust in their eyes. (323) They are competent to understand this dharma of mine when it is first preached and they will not be annoyed with me when they hear it. They accompanied me in days gone by when I was living my life of austerity. Now they are staying in Benares, in the Deer Park at Riśipatana. What if I were now to go to Benares, to the Deer Park at Riśipatana, and preach the dharma first to the good group of five?"

Then many of the powerful Siddhâvâsa devas approached the Exalted One, bowed their heads at his feet, and stood to one side. And as they thus stood to one side, they said to the Exalted One, "As is known and recognised by the pupils of the Exalted One, we, too, are able to perform the work of the Buddha when he heard it. The loss of Arâra is great, for he has been dead these three days. What other man is there, then, who is pure, has little dust in his eyes, who is competent to understand this dharma of mine when it is first preached and will not be annoyed with me when he hears it?" He then thought to himself: "The good group of five are, pure of little defilement, and have little dust in their eyes. (323) They are competent to understand this dharma of mine when it is first preached and they will not be annoyed with me when they hear it. They accompanied me in days gone by when I was living my life of austerity. Now they are staying in Benares, in the Deer Park at Riśipatana. What if I were now to go to Benares, to the Deer Park at Riśipatana, and preach the dharma first to the good group of five?"

1 Alparajaskajātiyo. The text omits alparaja, "of little defilement," here.
2 Paścâka bhadra-vaṣjgita. The group of five religious seekers, probably pupils of Arâra and Udraka, who had been Gotama's companions during his austeries, but who deserted him when he decided that asceticism was not the way. Why the group is described as bhadra is impossible to say. They are first alluded to, in exactly the same terms, both in the Mâhu. and Lal. Vist., on the occasion of their desertion of Gotama, so that there is some ground for supposing that bhadra is there used ironically in the sense of "fine." (See vol. 3 (trans.), p. 228). It has been rendered in a variety of other ways, "wealthy" (Rhys Davids and E. J. Thomas), "de bonne caste" (Foucaux) and "die schöne Gruppe bildet" (Pischel). On the whole it would seem safer to give bhadra here the general, if vague, sense of "good." (See E. J. Thomas: Life of Buddha, p. 80, 91; Mrs. Rhys Davids: Manual, p. 62 f., and J.R.A.S., 1922, pp. 103 ff.; and D.P.N.) The Pali texts do not describe them as bhadra, but call them simply paścâkṣegita bhikkha (V. 1. 8; M. 1. 171), although they were not yet "monks" in the Buddhist sense. The Pali expression bhadra-vaṣjgita is applied to a totally different group of thirty (not five), who were converted and ordained by the Buddha on a later occasion (V. 1. 23. See E. J. Thomas, op. cit., p. 31, n. 2, where the rendering of bhadra by "good standing" is shown to have the support of the Commentaries. Miss Horner, in a letter, suggests that bhadra applied to the five is due to contamination from the group of thirty (not five).
One various and divers wonders of magic. As the Exalted One goes from the bodhi-tree to Benares to set rolling the peerless wheel of dharma in the Deer Park at Riśipatana, we will see to it that the whole way from the bodhi-tree to Benares is made level, even, like the palm of the hand, with an awning stretched over it, and is bordered with bright cloth, draped with festoons of fine cloth, sprinkled and swept, made fragrant with incense, scattered with heaps of flowers, strewn with golden sand and with powder of celestial pearls, crystal, white coral and ruby. And there, Lord, on the way from the bodhi-tree to Benares we will create rows of celestial palm-trees. . . \(^1\) bright and beautiful, made of the seven precious substances, gold, silver, pearl, beryl, crystal, white coral and ruby. There too, Lord, on the left and on the right of the way we will create celestial sunshades and celestial banners. We will create celestial gabled buildings, bright and attractive, \(^3\) their beds strewn with golden sands, with pools of fragrant blue, red and white lotuses and shaded by flourishing trees, mango, rose-apple, lakau, \(^4\) bread-fruit, coconut, pālavatā, \(^5\) bhavya \(^6\) and pomegranate. There too, Lord, on the way from the bodhi-tree to Benares we will create celestial sunshades and celestial banners. We will create celestial gabled buildings, bright and beautiful, made of the seven precious substances, gold, silver, pearl, beryl, crystal, white coral and ruby. As the Exalted One moves on, these will move on; when he stops, they will stop. In front of him the Vārṣavālāhaka devas \(^7\) will scatter celestial flowers; gently, gently will the devas throw them down."

Thus when the Exalted One set out from the bodhi-tree to the Deer Park at Riśipatana in Benares, to set rolling the peerless wheel of dharma, the way had been made ready

---

\(^1\) There is here what must be regarded as a抄yist's error, for four adjectives ačkā, samā, sahātā and suhkapānītā are applied to the palm-trees, which are properly only applicable to streams and are so applied immediately below.

\(^2\) Acha P.E.D. relates it to root rīc and compares Sī. rīka, "bald." "bare" and Vedic rikṣa, "bright." M.W., however, derives it a + chad, "not covered," "not shaded.

\(^3\) Sukhopanitī "where one is led to pleasure." The corresponding adjective et p. 288 (text) is suhkapānītī.

\(^4\) See vol. 1, p. 205 (trans.).

\(^5\) Ibid.

\(^6\) Ibid.

\(^7\) The rain-making class of the Vahālakāyika or "Cloud" devas. See D.P.N.

---

For him by the Śuddhāvāsa devas. They created a great army of the four arms, warriors on elephants, cavalry, charioteers and infantry, and escorted the Exalted One as he went to Benares. All the lords and kings of the Suvarṇas, \(^1\) whether born of eggs, or of the womb, or spontaneously, or of moisture, by their magic power created a great army of the four arms and escorted the Exalted One as he went on his way. Also all the Nāga lords and kings, whether born of eggs, or of the womb, or spontaneously, or from moisture, by means of their magic power created a great army of the four arms and escorted the Exalted One as he went to Benares. The Čāturmahārajīka devas, the Trāyāstrimśa devas, the Yāma devas, the Tusīta devas, the Nīrāmarati devas, the Paranirmatāvasavartin devas, and the devas of Brāhma's world, by means of their magic power created a great army of the four arms and escorted the Exalted One as he went to Kāśi.

And so the Exalted One, honoured and escorted by a great host of several hundreds, several thousands, several hundreds of thousands went from Uruvilva to Gayā and from Gayā to Aparagaya. \(^8\)

At Aparagaya there was a Nāga king named Sudarśana, and he invited the Exalted One (325) to lodge and eat with him at Aparagaya. \(^9\) When the Exalted One had lodged and eaten at the home of Sudarśana, the Nāga king, he went on to Vaśīlā. At Vaśīlā there was a brāhmaṇ named Nadin, and he was said to be of those who put faith in the sound "hum, hum." As the Exalted One was walking on he

---

3. This incident at this point is peculiar to the Mhuv. In Lal. Vist, 406, it occurs after the meeting with Upaka.
4. Huhunkajātikā "was said to be a Huhunkajātikā." Hardy, quoted by Mrs. Rhys Davids in J.P.T.S., 1901, p. 42, says that huhunka is apparently the designation of a class of brahmins uttering and putting their confidence in the sound hum. Dr. E. H. Johnstone also thinks it may refer to confidence in ritual-syllables. See F. L. Woodward: Verses of Uplīṣṭa, p. 3, n. 1 and the references there and in I. B. Horner, op. cit., p. 3, n. 3. According to P.E.D. huhunkajātikā means "one who has a grumbly nature." Cf. DA. and UDA, cited in Verses of Uplīṣṭa, 1c. But in the Mhuv. the brāhmaṇ utters the sound "hum," before the Buddha speaks a word at which he can carp.

In V. 1, 2, cf. Ud. 3, this incident takes place earlier, namely, when the Buddha was staying near the Goatherd's Banyan-tree. The Mhuv. alone gives the brāhmaṇ a name.
turned his left side to him and cried “hum-hum.” The Exalted One in that circumstance, on that occasion, for that reason and at that time made this solemn utterance:

The brāhman who is outside the state of evil, who does not cry “hum-hum,” who is free of impurity, whose self is under control, who is rid of the āśravas and who is in his last bodily existence, it is that brāhman who can rightfully proclaim the religion of Brahmā.

At Vaśālā a certain householder invited the Exalted One to lodge and eat with him. And after the Exalted One had lodged and eaten there he left Vaśālā and came to a place called Cundadvula.

And Upaka, the Naked Ascetic, saw the Exalted One when he was still some way off. Seeing him coming he went to meet him, and exchanged friendly and courteous greetings with him. He then stood to one side. As he thus stood to one side, Upaka, the Naked Ascetic, said to the Exalted One, “Very clear is the complexion of the exalted Gotama, very clear and very bright; very serene is his countenance.”

Like as, when a ripe palm-nut has just fallen from the tree, the stalk which supported it is very clear and bright with a golden sheen, just so is the complexion of Gotama the Exalted One very clear and bright and his countenance very serene. To-day, when this had been said, the Exalted One replied to Upaka, the Naked Ascetic, “Yes, Upaka, I have attained immortality and the Way that leads to immortality.”

When this had been said, Upaka, the Naked Ascetic, asked the Exalted One, “Does Gotama, the Exalted One, claim to have no teacher?” And the Exalted One replied to Upaka, the Naked Ascetic, in a verse:

All-conquering and all-knowing am I, in all things undefiled. Omniscient am I, freed through the decay of craving.

Having won the higher knowledge, whom should I follow?

When this had been said, Upaka, the Naked Ascetic, asked the Exalted One, “Does Gotama, the Exalted One, claim that he is an Arhan?” And the Exalted One replied to Upaka, the Naked Ascetic, in a verse:

I am an Arhan in the world; I am supreme in the

1 Apasanyikaroti. See P.E.D., s.v. apasavya; also Edgerton (B.H.S.D.).
2 Huhun-it karoti.
3 Bāhùlañcudadharma. Bāhùlañcud is a “traditional and fanciful etymology of brāhmadeva.” (F. L. Woodward, op. cit., p. 4, n. 3.).
4 Nishaktā. Pali nisaktā.
5 Literally “speak the brahma-speech,” brahmādeva vadeya. I. B. Horner, op. cit., p. 4, n. 3; quotes Pā. 958 = UdA. 53 as saying that this means he can rightly say “I am a brāhman.” She also refers to Mrs. Rhys Davids: Manual p. 85, where brahmādeva is rendered “Brahma-faith.”
6 This incident again is peculiar to the Mhu.
7 Vīśa, past part. of vasiya. Cf. Pali vutha.
8 A village near Benares, but on the other side of the river. A variant Pali form of the name is Cundadhila (D.P.N.). The Pali texts and Lal. Vist. do not specify the exact spot where the Buddha met Upaka.
9 Ajīvaka, literally “man of the livelihood.” For their beliefs and practices see Rhys Davids: Buddhist India, p. 145; D.P.N.; and A. L. Basham: History and Doctrines of the Ajīvitas.
10 Unlike the Pali texts and Lal. Vist. the Mhu. does not allude to the Buddha’s indriyāni, “faculties or organs of sense.”
11 Bandhanañcudāraya. Cf. Lal. Vist., which has two other similes at this point. The Pali parallel passages have none.

1 This allusion to immortality is not found either in Lal. Vist. or in the Pali texts.
2 Or “where” kahim.
3 This verse is practically identical, word for word, with the corresponding verse at V. 1, 8 and M. 1, 17. Cf. also Dh. 333.
4 For ahām as the subject of āddhālam the Pali texts have sayam, i.e. having gained the higher knowledge “myself.”
5 In Pali this verse and the following one form a continuous whole with the first two, containing the answers to a series of questions asked in the prose. In the Mhu. and Lal. Vist. the questions are given one by one with a verse in reply to each.
6 Evamukha, “when this was spoken,” omitted in the translation of the rest of this dialogue.
7 In Pali this verse appears as the second in the whole series and is not a reply to a specific question about Gotama’s Arhatship. However, the fifth verse in Pali is introduced by a question in the form of a statement, yathā . . . pariññāṇā arahā asa anāthañjito, “according to what you claim arahā asi (You are an Arhan) as it is not set for the purpose of being the victor of the unending.” But there is also the reading arahā asi (You are an Arhan) as at Kos. 286, and cf. PsS. S. 249 f. (I. B. Horner: op. cit., p. 12, n. 3). In the Mhu., as also in Lal. Vist., this verse has been transferred to form the answer to an additional question, it would seem as though the question was suggested by the statement in the original verse, the second in the Pali series.
world. In the world of devas and of men none equal to me can be found.

Upaka, the Naked Ascetic, then asked the Exalted One, "Does Gotama, the Exalted One, claim that he is a Conqueror?" And the Exalted One replied to Upaka, the Naked Ascetic, in verse:

They are, like me, Conquerors, who have achieved the destruction of the āsravas. Evil things have I overcome, and hence, O Upaka, am I a Conqueror.

As the beauty of the lotus is not besmirched by the marshy soil so am I not besmirched by the world. Therefore, O Upaka, I am a Conqueror. I have won the higher knowledge that was to be won; I have declared the truth that was to be proclaimed; I have renounced what was to be renounced. Therefore, O Upaka, I am a Conqueror.

Upaka, the Naked Ascetic, then asked the Exalted One, "Whither is Gotama, the Exalted One, going?" And the Exalted One replied to Upaka, the Naked Ascetic, in verse:

I go to see Benares to beat the drum of immortality. I go to set rolling in the world the wheel of dharma that may not be rolled back.

The dharma that I have won to is passionless, tranquil and blest. This shall I promulgate for the weal of every creature.

The perfect Buddhas that have been, those yet to come, and those that now are, the dispellers of the sorrows of the multitude, all have taught, will teach and do teach dharma to men, for such is the obligation of Buddhas.

1 This corresponds to the question introducing the fifth verse in Pali. Literally, "watery land," anūpa, a BSk. variant of Sk. anāpa, which is also the predominant form in Pali, from anu + āpa (See P.E.D.). Cf. B.H.S.D.

2 This simile and the following verse are not found either in the Pali texts or in Lal. Vist. This verse, with some variations, corresponds to the fourth in the Pali series. The two following verses have nothing corresponding to them in the Pali or in Lal. Vist.

3 Literally "set rolling," pravartiyāyāmi.

4 The text has the present, deśeti, only, but it is necessary in translation to repeat the verb in the other two tenses.

5 Dharmatā.

FROM URUVILVĀ TO BENARES 319

Devas in the sky recited a verse:

Whosoever, having seen that he was such a driver of tameable men, should shun the Great Seer, would be as one who should with hands and feet spurn great good luck.

At Cundavāila there was a Yaksha named Cunda, and he invited the Exalted One to lodge and eat at his abode. When the Exalted One had lodged for one night at the abode of Cunda, the Yaksha, and had duly eaten, he went on to Lohitavastukā near Sārathipura. At Lohitavastukā there was a Nāga king named Kamaṇḍalūka, who (328) invited the Exalted One to lodge and eat at his abode. When the Exalted One had lodged there for one night and had duly eaten, he went on to Gandhapura. At Gandhapura there dwelt a Yaksha named Kandha, who invited the Exalted One to lodge and eat at his abode. When the Exalted One had lodged there for one night and had duly eaten, he went on to Sārathipura. At Sārathipura the Exalted One was invited to lodge and eat with a certain householder. When the Exalted One had lodged there for one night and had duly eaten, he went on to Gandhapura. The ferryman said, "How can I have the fare for crossing when the shining metal means no more to me than a clod of earth and when I have dispensed with silver and gold?" But the ferryman said, "If you give me the fare for crossing, you shall cross; if you do not give it, you shall not cross."
The Exalted One replied:

"The swan on the banks of the Narmada\(^1\) does not ask leave of the ferryman, but crosses by its own abundant strength."

And with the words, the Buddha passed over like a king of swans: the Great Sage crossed the stream and stood on the further bank of the Ganges.

After he had crossed the Ganges the Exalted One came to Benares. He stayed at Sankhamedhi\(^2\) and at the proper time went to Benares to beg for alms.

For Buddhas are not unpunctual\(^3\) in their lives, but go the rounds of a village for alms at the proper time. Worldly leanings are strong in\(^4\) those who do their rounds at improper times. Therefore Buddhas do not go round at improper times.

At Rishipatana were staying the good group of five,\(^5\) namely Ajñata Kaundinya, Aśvakin, Bhadra, (329) Vāspa and Mahānāma. And when the Exalted One had made his alms-round in Benares and had duly eaten, he came to Rishipatana. He was then seen by the good group of five, who, espying him when he was still some way off, resolved on a course of action.\(^6\) "Here," said they, "comes Gotama the recluse, who is a profligate, living in abundance, and has strayed from his striving. No one is to rise up to greet him." But when the Exalted One came up, they felt ill at ease in their places. Just as when birds in their nests or on the branches of trees, scorched by fire burning beneath them, fly off, so did the good group of five feel ill at ease in their seats when they saw the Exalted One coming, and rise up and go to meet him.\(^7\) "Come, venerable Gotama," said they, "hail and welcome to the venerable Gotama." But the Exalted One replied to them, "O monks of the good group, your vow is broken. But, O monks of the good group, do not address\(^8\) the Tathāgata as 'venerable.'"

When the Exalted One had proclaimed them to be his disciples every mark of the heretic, every badge, every sign disappeared from their persons. They were seen to have the three robes, sūbhāka\(^3\) bowls, their hair in its natural state, and their deportment established, just like those of monks who had been ordained a hundred years.\(^4\) Such was the ordination into the religious life and the admission into monkhood of the good group of five.

At that place there was a lotus-pond named Buddhavihārī. The Buddha bathed there, for exalted Buddhas know\(^6\) . . . Then the Exalted One reflected: "On what spot of earth did former perfect Buddhas set rolling the wheel of dharma?"

And as soon as this thought occurred to the Exalted One that spot of earth on which he stood sank down.\(^8\) (330) The Exalted One again reflected: "Now did former perfect Buddhas set rolling the wheel of dharma as they walked or as they stood still, as they sat down or as they lay down?"

And as soon as this thought occurred to the Exalted One there appeared in Rishipatana five seats.\(^7\) The good group of

---

\(^1\) Pali Nāmādā, the modern Nerbudda.
\(^2\) This place is not mentioned in the Pali texts and Lal. Vist.
\(^3\) Literally, 'dwell in,' 'vassanti,' unless we read va (= eva) santi 'are.'
\(^4\) See p. 313, n. 2. From this point the Mahāvastu and the Mahāvagga,
V. 1. 6 ff. are closely parallel. For a detailed comparison of the two texts, with references to Lal. Vist., see Windisch, op. cit., p. 19 ff.
\(^5\) Corresponding to the Pali Aññā (or Aññā) - Konāḍa, Bhaddiya, Vappa, Mahānāma, Assaji (V. 1. 12 ff.). Lal. Vist., 408, mentions only Ajñātakahundinya by name, and elsewhere, 245 ff., mentions the supposed etymology of his name see V. 1. 12 and as a group. For the supposed etymology of his name see I. B. Horner, op. cit., 18, n. 4.
\(^6\) Kriyādharma karoti. Lal. Vist. 407 has kriyādhamkham abāra. V. 1. 8 has saṁśāmanītaṁ saṁśāpadesu, 'they agreed among themselves.'

---

The text has pradhānavibhrānto. Pradhāna is, of course, the BSk. form of Sk. pradhāna, Pali padhāna. But vibhrānto, 'heroic;' can hardly be correct, as it would give the compound a sense contrary to what is demanded by the context. The right reading is evidently vibhrānto corresponding to the Pali vibhānto in the same expression, i.e., the participle of vibhrāmati; or we could restore the synonymous vibhrājato (ni-khrami) as at Lal. Vist. 407.

---

\(^1\) This simile is also given in Lal. Vist. 408, but not in the Pali texts, not even at J. 1. 68.
\(^2\) Samācārāta vādāna. Cf. p. 178, n. 1. Lal. Vist. 409 uses the verb samūḍačarati here, as also does V. 1. 9 and M. 1. 171.
\(^3\) See p. 67, n. 3.
\(^4\) This detail is given at Lal. Vist. 409, but not in the Pali texts. For similar passages in the Mhv. see vol. 2, 234: vol. 3, 65, 92 (text).
\(^5\) There must be a lacuna here, if that is, the words jñānātā ca buddhā bhagavanto are in place. Possibly they form the beginning of a stock description of the Buddha's knowledge of due times for various actions. Lal. Vist. 410, mentions the bathing but does not give a name to the pool, merely describing it as bahuvistambha, which is suspiciously like the proper name of it in our text.
\(^6\) The miraculous answer to the Buddha's question is different in Lal. Vist. 410. All these details are absent from the Pali accounts.
\(^7\) I. e., one for each of the Buddhas of the halpa, including the future Buddha Maitreya. But immediately below the Buddha is made to allude to the later doctrine that a thousand Buddhas appear in a bhadrakalpa, a doctrine which Lal. Vist. would seem to refer to when it speaks of the thousand seats which appeared when former Buddhas preached the dharma.
five asked the Exalted One, "Lord, whose are these five seats?" 1

The Exalted One replied, "Monks, this is an auspicious kalpa, which is named Puspika, and in an auspicious kalpa a thousand Buddhas must arise. Three have come and gone. I am the fourth. Krakutsanda had a radiance extending nine yojanas, Konākāmunī one extending two yojanas, and Kāśyapa one extending four yojanas. I, Sarvasiddhārtha, have a radiance of one fathom. Ajita will have one of twelve yojanas, Siddhārtha one of twenty, Maitreyā one of twelve, Maitriyāsa one of eighteen; Sarvaprabha one of ten, Prithivipāsa one of twelve, Atisirya one of four, Abhibhiyasa one of one. ... and he who will be named Vairocanaprabha one of ten.

Thus have I heard. 2 On one occasion the Exalted One

1 Lacuna in text.
2 Bhadra-kalpa. According to the more usual doctrine only five Buddhas appeared in such a kalpa. See B.H.S.D. and D.P.N.
3 It is strange to find two Buddhas of the same name juxtaposed. Perhaps the reading of MS.M. should be adopted here. This runs sa sarvabhūthā na astayoyanaprabho, which could be interpreted as a parenthesis correcting some other tradition. "It is not a radiance of eight yojanas that this Sarvabhūthā (will have)."
4 Lacuna.
5 It is to be noted that the course of the narrative hitherto followed in our text breaks off here, and the story takes a fresh start with the insertion of an independent sutra (sutta), identical to all intents and purposes with the Dhamma-cakka-pavattana-sutta as found in S. 5. 420 ff., which purports to give both the historical occasion and the content of the First Sermon. In the Mahāvagga (V. 1. 10 ff.) the sermon takes its place in the narrative immediately after the account of the events which led up to it. In Lal. Vist. (416 ff.) also, the sermon is part of the consecutive narrative, although it is preceded by an account, peculiar to this text, of the many prodigies which intervened upon the Buddha's decision to preach the dharma.
6 Sam. 3. 297 which explains by gāmavāśānaṃ sāntako, "belonging to village dwellers." She herself suggests a boorish.
8 This and the rest of the description of the first extreme is also, with slight differences, given in Lal. Vist., but not in the Pali texts.
9 Nirvīdhā, Bsk. Pali, nibbidā; Sk. nirvīdā.
10 Literally, "in" (loc. case).
11 Pratīcopā āwambuddhā. In the Pali texts, however, instead of tathāgata-sutta depending on dharmavinay (not in the Pali), we have tathāgata-sutta, instr., to be construed with the past part. abhisambuddhā, i.e. the course to which the Tathāgata has fully awakened. Lal. Vist. differs greatly here from both the Mkeu. and the Pali texts.
12 Here we have tathāgata-sutta abhisambuddhā. See preceding note.

was staying in Benares, in the Deer Park at Rījivadana. 1 There (331) the Exalted One addressed the venerable five monks, saying, "Monks. "Lord," said they in reply. Then the Exalted One said to the monks, "There are these two extremes to which a man who has gone forth to the religious life is liable. 2 What two? There is the addiction to sensual enjoyment among the pleasures of sense, which is loutish, 3 common, 4 un-Aryan, profitless, not conducing 5 to brahma-life in the future, to disgust with the world, 6 to passionlessness, to cessation, to the state of a recluse, to enlightenment, and to nirvana. Then there is addiction to mortification of the self, which is evil, un-Aryan, and profitless.

These, monks, are the two extremes to which a man who has taken up the religious life is liable. Avoiding these two extremes, monks, by 7 the Tathāgata's Aryan dharma and discipline is the middle course, which is the way of the Buddhas, 8 and confers insight, conduces to calm, to disgust with the world, to passionlessness, to cessation, to the state of a recluse, to enlightenment, and to nirvana.

"And what, monks, is this middle course fully awakened to by the Tathāgata 9 in his Aryan dharma and Discipline, which

1 See Vol. 1, p. 37 n.
2 All this is expressed in the text by the three words doñāma pravajītasya antau, "there are these two extremes of (= for) one who has gone forth."
3 The Pali texts have dou 'me antañ pabhajitena na savibbā, "these two extremes are not to be followed by one who has gone forth." Lal. Vist., 416, says doñāma pravajītaya vābhāma. "these two extremes beset one who has gone forth."
4 I. B. Horner, op. cit., 15, n. 3, cites the interesting remark of MA. 1. 104—"the Way does not lead to, does not approach these sides, it is freed from these sides, therefore it is called the middle course."
5 The reader is referred to the rest of Miss Horner's notes on this passage and also to Mrs. Rhys Davids: Manual, p. 109. E. J. Thomas, op. cit., p. 92 gives a translation of the sutta from S. 5, 420.
6 Grāmaya, "belonging to the village." Miss I. B. Horner cites S.A. 3. 297 which explains by gāmavāśānaṃ sāntako, "belonging to village dwellers."
8 This and the rest of the description of the first extreme is also, with slight differences, given in Lal. Vist., but not in the Pali texts.
9 Pratīcopā āwambuddhā. In the Pali texts, however, instead of tathāgata-sutta depending on dharmavinay (not in the Pali), we have tathāgata-sutta, instr., to be construed with the past part. abhisambuddhā, i.e. the course to which the Tathāgata has fully awakened. Lal. Vist. differs greatly here from both the Mkeu. and the Pali texts.
10 Here we have tathāgata-sutta abhisambuddhā. See preceding note.
confers insight and knowledge and conduces to calm, to
disgust with the world, to passionlessness, to cessation, to
the state of a recluse, to enlightenment, and to nirvana?
It is the Aryan eightfold Way, that is to say, right belief, right
purpose, right endeavour, right action, right living, right speech,
right mindfulness, right concentration. This, monks, is the
middle course fully awakened to by the Tathāgata in his Aryan
dharma and discipline, which confers insight and conduces to
calm, to disgust with the world, to passionlessness, to cessation,
to the state of a recluse, to enlightenment, and to nirvana.

"Now, monks, there are these four Aryan truths.1 What
four? They are the Aryan truth of ill, the Aryan truth of
the uprising of ill, the Aryan truth of the stopping of ill, and
the Aryan truth of the course that leads to the stopping of ill.
(332) And what, monks, is the Aryan truth of ill? It is this,
namely, that birth is ill, old age is ill, disease is ill, death is ill,
association with what is not dear is ill, separation from what
is dear is ill, failure to get what one wants and seeks is ill,
body is ill, feeling is ill, perception is ill, the saṃskāras are ill,
consciousness is ill, in a word all the five skandhas of grasping
at material things are ill.2 This, monks, is the Aryan truth of ill.

"Then what is the Aryan truth of the uprising of ill? That
it is the craving which leads to further existence3 and which
is bound up with the passion for pleasure, finding delight in this
and that—this, monks, is the Aryan truth of the uprising of ill.4

"Then what is the Aryan truth of the stopping of ill? That it
is the utter extinction of this craving which is bound up with
the passion for pleasure, finding delight in this and that; it is passion-
lessness, cessation, self-sacrifice, renunciation, and surrender.5

1 Or " thinking"—iti. The Māhu. and Lal. Vist. do not here add
āryasatyam to correspond to the ariyasaccam of the Pali texts.

2 Yoniso manasikāra, so also Lal. Vist. 417. But the words do not appear in the Pali texts.

3 Literally " among things, etc.", locative case. It would make for
simplicity here if yoniso manasikāra could be taken with idam dukhham iti,
thus, " by whole-hearted attention to (the truth that) this is ill" there
arose in me concerning things unheard of before, etc." But the position of the two words after purve anusvastrehi dharmehi seems to be
against this interpretation.

4 Bhāri, BSk. also at Lal. Vist. 417. Pali bhāri.

5 Medhā. Not in the first series.


7 Iti. This rendering is more suitable here, especially as each truth
is the Aryan truth of the stopping of ill.

Then what is the Aryan truth of the stopping of ill? That it is the Aryan eightfold Way, namely,
right belief, right purpose, right speech, right action, right living, right endeavour, right mindfulness and right concentration—this, monks, is the Aryan truth of the course that leads to
the stopping of ill.

"From the truth1 ' This is ill,' by whole-hearted attention6 to things unheard of before, there arose in me knowledge,
vision, understanding, wisdom, intelligence and insight, and
light appeared.

"From the truth ' This is the uprising of ill,' by whole-
hearted attention to things unheard of before, there arose in
me knowledge, vision, understanding, wisdom, intelligence,
sagacity and insight, and light appeared.

"From the truth ' This is the stopping of ill,' by whole-
hearted attention to things unheard of before, there arose in me
knowledge, vision, understanding, wisdom, intelligence,
sagacity (333) and insight, and light appeared.

"From the truth ' This is the course that leads to the
stopping of ill,' by whole-hearted attention to things unheard of
before, there arose in me knowledge, and so on to8 light
appeared.

At the thought7 that this Aryan truth of ill must be
thoroughly known,9 by whole-hearted attention to things
unheard of before, there arose in me knowledge and so on to
light appeared.

1 As in Lal. Vist., 417. The Pali texts go straight on to the definition
of each of the truths, without explicitly saying that they are four.

2 The Pali texts do not name the five skandhas, as is done here and in

3 Punnārkharīka, Pali pannābharīka.

4 The Māhu. and Lal. Vist. 417 do not add the further definition of
fīrgād (laṅkā), namely, kāmanyatā bhavatiyaṁ viśvabhavaṁ gataṁ given at V. 1. 10
and S. 5. 421.

5 The phraseology here differs from that in the Pali texts. It has fīrgādaya
... aṣeṣakārya " the utter extinction of craving," amplified by the explanatory
substantives viśvād virode, etc. The Pali has laṅkāya ... aṣeṣavārd-
ghanirode, i.e., " the utter and passionless stopping of craving," followed
by the other substantives governing the genitive laṅkāyā. Lal. Vist. 417
is similar to the Māhu., but adds two adjectives in further qualification of
fīrgād namely, janēka and nīvarthā.
At the thought that this which is the Aryan truth of the upbringing of ill must be given up, by whole-hearted attention to things unheard of before there arose in me knowledge and so on to light appeared.

At the thought that this which is the Aryan truth of the stopping of ill has been realised, by whole-hearted attention to things unheard of before, there arose in me knowledge and so on to light appeared.

At the thought that this which is the Aryan truth of the course leading to the stopping of ill has been made-to-become, by whole-hearted attention to things unheard of before, there arose in me knowledge and so on to light appeared.

And, monks, as long as I did not with perfect insight fully know these four truths, which are three-fold and of twelve modes, as they really are, so long could I not claim to be thoroughly awakened to the supreme perfect enlightenment; knowledge then came to me, and I realised an unshakeable freedom of heart. But when, did with perfect insight fully know these four truths, which are three-fold and of twelve modes, as they really are, then was I aware that I had awakened to the supreme perfect enlightenment; knowledge then came to me, and I realised unshakeable freedom of heart, and freedom through intuitive wisdom.

1 i.e., "craving," triṣṇā, which is the Aryan truth of the upbringing of ill. The translation follows I. B. Horner, op. cit., p. 17. A too literal rendering would give "the Aryan truth of the upbringing of ill must be given up." The same is the case with the Pali texts (V. 1. 11 and S. 5. 432). Mr. Rhys Davids (K.S. 5, p. 358 n.) would, accordingly, omit ariyasaṅcāra in this particular sentence.

2 Abhyājñāṣājaṃ, a regular Sk. aorist, a form unusual in the Mhuv.
3 In the Pali texts and in Lal. Vist. 418 the statement of each of the four truths is followed by two amplifications. Thus, of the first it is said that it "was to be known" and then that it "was known." The second (that is the "craving") was "to be given up" and "was given up"; the third was "to be realised" and "was realised," and the fourth was "to be made-to-become" and "was made-to-become." The Mhuv., however, omits four of these amplifications, which in their totality make three stages or "folds" for each truth, or twelve "modes" in all. Triṣṭāpaṭarājaṃ and dāsadalākāhaṃ appear in our text as though they were in apposition to cataclysmasutam. But they are really adjectives, and in the Pali texts they qualify mahadajñānaṃ, i.e., "the vision of knowledge of (literally 'in'-śmesa catvāra ariyasaṁcāra) these four truths" (so also in Lal Vist.). It would seem as though in the Mhuv. the word jñānadarājaṃ has been accidentally omitted, or it may be that the formula was too well known to need particular care about its correct statement. These two adjectives came afterwards to be applied to the dharmachakra itself. See Mhuv., passim.

1 Vāyākaraṇa, Pali veyākaraṇa, "called at D.A. 130 a sutta (discourse) without verses." (I. B. Horner, op. cit., 17, n. 4.) The Mhuv. has veyākaraṇa (loc.) only, where the Pali texts have the loc. absolute veyākaranasannītābhāṣāṃ.

2 The text, of course, repeats the whole statement. The Pali texts here have no allusion to the conversion of the devas.

4 Or "flash, make manifest." The text has spīhurati, but it may be better to read, with one MS., spīhurati, which serves for a causal stem for spīhurati and is thus a more appropriate form to use with the cognate accusative dihāma. It is also the reading in the parallel passage at 1. 240 and 2. 162. The expression is not found in the parallel passage at 1. 41.

Thus did the Exalted One speak while he was staying in Benares in the Deer Park at Rājivadana. And at this discourse the venerable Ajñātakaunḍinya acquired the unimpaired and unblemished pure dharma-insight into things, (334) as did also eighteen kośis of devas. Then did this great earth quake violently. In six ways, like a fallen leaf it trembled and shook. The eastern extremity rose, the western sank; the western extremity rose, the eastern sank; the southern extremity rose, the northern sank; the northern extremity rose, the southern sank; the centre sank, the extremities rose; the extremities sank, the centre rose. Then there appeared in the world an infinite radiance, surpassing the splendour of devas, of Nāgas and of Yaśas. And the regions between the worlds, regions of darkness wrapped in darkness, regions of blackness wrapped in blackness, gloomy regions, unfathomed, never before fathomed, where the moon and sun, powerful and majestic though they be, with all their brilliance cannot make their brilliance prevail, with all their light cannot spread their light—these regions were suffused with that radiance. Some beings who had been reborn in those regions were able to see one another in the light of that radiance, and they exclaimed, "Lo, other beings have been reborn here. Lo, other beings have been reborn here." For that moment, for that instant all beings were lapped in entire well-being, even those who had been reborn in the great hell of Avīci.
twelve-fold¹ and which cannot be rolled² in accordance with dharma³ by any recluse or brāhman or deva, by Māra or by any one else in the world again. This will be for the welfare and happiness of mankind, out of compassion for the world, for the benefit, welfare and happiness of the great multitude of devas and men. The hosts of the Asuras will wane; the hosts of the devas will wax.”

(335) When they had heard the shout of the devas of earth, the Caturmahārājika devas raised a shout and made the noise of it heard. And so did the devas of earth, the Yāma devas, the Tuṣita devas, the Nirmānarati devas, and the devas of Brahmā’s world. “Behold, friends,” cried they, “in Benares, in the Deer Park at Rṣīvadana, the Exalted One has set rolling the incomparable wheel of dharma which is thrice-revolved and twelve-fold, and which cannot be rolled in accordance with dharma by any recluse or brāhman or deva, by Māra or by anyone else in the world again. This will be for the welfare and happiness of mankind, out of compassion for the world, for the benefit, welfare and happiness of the great multitude of devas and men. The hosts of the Asuras will wane; the hosts of the devas will wax.”

The venerable good group of five were elated and they applauded the words of the Exalted One. The Exalted One, fully enlightened and having realised the aim he had set himself, was staying in Benares, teaching devas and men.⁴ And he addressed the venerable good group of five, saying, “Monks, body is not the self; feeling is not the self; perception is not the self; the ānubhava are not the self; consciousness is not the self. If, monks, the body were the self, it would not be liable to affliction and ill, and one could⁵ say at will in regard to the body, “Let my body become thus; let my body not become thus.” But since the body is not the self, therefore, monks, it is liable to affliction and ill, and one cannot⁶ say at will, “Let my body become thus; let my body not become thus.”

“If this feeling, monks, were the self, it would not be liable⁷ to affliction and ill and one could say at will⁸ in regard to the feeling, “Let my feeling become thus; let not my feeling become thus.” But inasmuch, monks, (336) as feeling is not the self, it is liable to affliction and ill, and one cannot say at will, “Let my feeling become thus; let not my feeling become thus.”

“If, monks, this perception were the self, it would not be liable⁹ to affliction and ill, and one could say at will⁹ in regard to perception, “Let my perception become thus, let not my perception become thus.” But inasmuch, monks, as perception is not the self, therefore it is liable to affliction and ill, and one cannot say at will in regard to perception, “Let my perception become thus.”¹⁰

However, it has all the marks of a sūtra which was current at the time of the compilation of our text, either separate, or already as much a part of a collection of sūtras as the corresponding Pali sutta was part of the Samyutta Nīkāya (S. 3. 66 ff.). This second utterance as such is not found in Lal. Vist., being replaced there (418 ff.) by a number of traditional (hence introduced by the words tatvedanucayato) gāthās more or less on the same subject. As Windisch, op. cit., p. 24, points out, however, these gāthās are not without some relation to the text of the Mahāvagga.

¹ Tripurārūpam dedaśādhāram, which, as has been seen (p. 326, n. 3) are really applicable to jhānaarājana or knowledge of the four truths. When applied to dharmakāram they have to be rendered in slightly different terms.

² Aparaśāyam. The Pali texts have appaśāyatiyam, “not to be rolled back.”

³ Saha dharmena. Although in the text put at the end of the sentence this phrase must be taken adverbially with aparāśayam, in accordance with the previous occurrences been construed in translation with the following clauses.

⁴ See vol. 1. 33 (= 39 trans.), 277 (= 330) and Vol. 2. 133 (= 132). In the present passage, however, it is definitely final as it is in Lal. Vist. 104. It does not occur in the Pali versions of this formula, but is found in Nett. 169 which was current at the time of being replaced there (418 ff.) by a number of traditional (hence introduced by the words tatvedanucayato) gāthās more or less on the same subject. As Windisch, op. cit., p. 24, points out, however, these gāthās are not without some relation to the text of the Mahāvagga.

⁵ In V. 1. 12 and S. 3. 66, the arguments in support of each thesis immediately follow the statement of it.

⁶ The text has ṛidhiyyāca (ṛidhiyyā-ca) ṛūpe hāmakāriḥākatā. Senart renders the latter compound by “la libre production de” or “la libre disposition sur,” i.e., “the free power (‘to say’ being implied in the following words, in spite of the absence of it)” would thrive (ṛidhiyyāt, potential of ṛidhiyyāt). The Pali texts have simply labbetha “you could say.” Edgerton (B.H.S.D.) renders “one could make what he pleased in regard to his form” (ṛidhiyyāt, indicative here in accordance with the sense.

⁷ Reading samavarteta, potential, (as in preceding paragraph) for the indic. saṃvartati.

⁸ Ṛidhiyyāt (for ṛidhiyyāt see Edgerton, Gram. § 29. 42.) hāmakāriḥākatā.

⁹ The text has bhavati, which must be considered an error for saṃvarteta.

¹⁰ Ṛidhiyyāt, indic., instead of the regular potential ṛidhiyyāt.

¹ The negative clause is omitted in the text.
The venerable good group of five were elated, and they applauded the words of the Exalted One.

The Exalted One, perfectly enlightened and having achieved the aim he had set himself, was staying in Benares, in the Deer Park at Rśivadana. And there the Exalted One addressed the monks, saying, “If you think of it, monks, from what source do grief, lamentation, ill, despair and tribulation spring? Whence do they have their birth and origin?”

When this had been said, the venerable good group of five replied to the Exalted One, “Coming-to-be, Lord, is the source of things; coming-to-be is their conduit; coming-to-be is their cause; coming-to-be is their mainstay.” Well would it be if the Exalted One explained to the monks the meaning of this. The monks hearing it and grasping it from the lips of the Exalted One will hold it to be the truth.

When this had been said, the Exalted One replied to the good group of five, saying, “Monks, grief, lamentation, ill, despair and tribulation have their source in body; body is their birth and origin. They have their source in feeling, in perception, in the saṃskāras and in consciousness; these are their birth and origin.

“If you think of it, monks, is body permanent or impermanent?” “Surely it is impermanent, Lord.” Thus did the Exalted One speak when he was staying in Benares, in the Deer Park at Rśivadana. And while this discourse was being delivered the heart of the venerable Ajñātakaṇḍaṇīya was rid of the dūras, grasping no more at existence, and the four other monks, Āsvāki, Bhadrika, Vāspa and Mahānāma, won the unimpaired and unblemished pure dharma-insight into things, as also did thirty kośis of devas.

The three words, saṃskāra bhikṣavaḥ ābādhāya, at the beginning of this sentence are obviously out of place.

Saṃvaratā, indic. where the pot. saṃvaralīyas would be rightly expected.

Singular.

Saṃvaratī, indic. again for the pot.

Riddhyet, pot. according to the first conjugation.

Ika, “here”.

Amāpādaya, “without grasping” or “clinging to” (existence).
science, and its perishableness, then the āśravas which arise because of body, the vexations and troubles, feverish and baneful, involving other existences in the future, birth, old age and death, will stop. When body\(^1\) is stopped, the āśravas arise no more, nor the vexations and troubles, feverish and baneful, involving other existences in the future, nor birth, old age and death.

“If you think of it, monks, are feeling, perception, the saṃskāras and consciousness permanent or impermanent?” “Surely they are impermanent, Lord.” “Well said, monks. Now when you have recognised the impermanence of consciousness, its instability, its frailty, its changeableness, its evanescence and its perishableness, then the āśravas which arise because of consciousness, the vexations and troubles, feverish and baneful, involving other existences in the future, birth, old age and death, will stop, suppressed, eliminated\(^3\) and brought to an end.\(^4\) When these are stopped, then the āśravas which arise from consciousness, the vexations and troubles, feverish and baneful, involving other existences in the future, birth, old age and death, will be stopped, suppressed, eliminated and brought to an end.\(^4\) Thus: whatever is body, internal or external, gross or fine, base or choice, far or near, past, future or present, all these are not mine, they are not I, they are not my self. Thus must you look on things as they really are in the light of perfect knowledge.”

Thus did the Exalted One speak when he was staying in Benares, in the Deer Park at Rājagriha.\(^2\) And while this discourse was being delivered the venerable Ājīvika Kauṇḍinya attained mastery of the powers.\(^3\) The hearts of the four other monks, (339) Āsāki, Bhadrīka, Vāspa and Mahānāma were rid of the āśravas, grasping no more at existence, and five kośas of devas won the unimpaired, unblemished pure dharma-insight into things.

The venerable good group of five were elated and they applauded the words of the Exalted One.

The Exalted One, perfectly enlightened and having achieved the aim he had set himself, was staying in Benares, in the Deer Park at Rājagriha. Now on that occasion three monks went into Benares to beg for alms. Then the Exalted One, controlling with his own heart the hearts of those monks, exhorted and instructed them, saying, “Thus act with your minds; thus direct your minds; think these thoughts. Live, monks, with the self and no other as your island;\(^4\) live with the self and no other as your haven; live with the dharma as your island, with the dharma and no other as your haven. Then, monks, those living with the self and no other as their island, with the dharma as their island, with the dharma and no other as their haven, must carefully investigate the source from whence grief, lamentation, ill, despair and tribulation arise, their birth and their origin.”

---

\(^1\) The text has teṣaṃ nirodhāti “from the stopping of these,” where teṣaṃ can, grammatically, only refer to the plural antecedent āśravas. But the sentence goes on to add na uṣṭpadye āśravas, i.e., as the text stands the argument is that the knowledge of the impermanence of the body brings about the cessation of the āśravas and that from the cessation of these the āśravas do not arise. It seems imperative, therefore, that teṣaṃ be changed into taṣya, i.e. taṣya rūpasya. The argument then runs: “when one realises the impermanence of body the āśravas which arise because of body will stop. When that (sc. body) stops the āśravas do not arise.” That the recognition or realisation of the impermanence of the skandhas leads automatically to their destruction is a well-known Buddhist doctrine. See, e.g., S. 3. 60, 131 f.; A. 2. 45, 99; 4. 153.

\(^2\) The discourse is abridged here by limiting the argument to the last thesis.

\(^3\) Prāhānam gacchanti “go to an abandonment.”

\(^4\) Asṭam (gacchanti) “set, disappear, vanish.” Cf. rūppasa ... viṇñāpaṇasa atīhaṃgamō, S. 2. 26 f.

\(^5\) Teṣaṃ is correct here, for the reference is to the last four skandhas.

\(^6\) And, of course, because of the other skandhas.

---

\(^1\) This sūtra on the impermanence of the skandhas has a closer resemblance to the latter half of the Atadīpa-sutta of S. 2. 42 than to the discourse on the same subject in the Mahāvagga (V. 1. 14) and the Pañcasūtra at S. 5. 66. The first part of the Atadīpasūtra is given in the following sūtra of the Mānu. But S. locates the delivery of it at Sāvatthī. It should be noted also that each of the sūtras into which the “second sermon” is divided in the Mānu, has an allusion to the effect the preaching of it had on the five monks. The Pali texts, having only two separate discourses, refer to them only twice.

\(^2\) I.e., the balīn of an ārya-dīna. See vol. 1, p. 43 n. 2.

\(^3\) Adhiṣṭhāyīya, from adhiṣṭhītā, with the implication that the control was supernatural. See B.H.S.D. s.v. adhiṣṭhītā.

When this had been said, the monks replied to the Exalted One, “Coming-to-be, Lord, is the source of things; coming-to-be is their conduit; coming-to-be is their cause; coming-to-be is their mainstay. Well would it be if the Exalted One explained to the monks the meaning of this. The monks hearing it and catching it from the lips of the Exalted One will hold it to be the truth.”

Then the Exalted One said to the monks, “Grief, lamentation, ill, despair and tribulation have their source in body; body is their birth and origin.

“If you think of it, monks, is body permanent or impermanent?” “Surely it is impermanent, Lord.” “Well said, monks. Now when you have recognised the impermanence of body, its weakness, its frailty, its changeableness, its evanescence (340) and its perishableness, then the āśraivas which arise because of body, the vexations and troubles, feverish and baneful, involving other existences in the future, birth, old age and death, are stopped.

“If you think of it, monks, are feeling, perception, the samskāras and consciousness permanent or impermanent?” “Surely they are impermanent, Lord.” “Well said, monks. Now when you have recognised the impermanence of consciousness, its weakness and its frailty, the āśraivas etc., are stopped, suppressed, eliminated and brought to an end. When these are stopped the āśraivas arise no more, and the vexations and troubles, feverish and baneful, involving other existences in the future, birth, old age and death, are stopped. For consciousness is the source of the āśraivas, the vexations and troubles, feverish and baneful, involving other existences in the future, birth, old age and death; consciousness is their birth and origin.

“Therefore, monks, you must teach yourselves thus on

---

1 This is a repetition of the preceding sūtra.
2 In the text the answer refers to consciousness (vijñāna) only and the argument goes on to deal with the impermanence of this last one of the four skandhas. But, of course, the same answer and argument apply to all the four.
3 The whole of the antecedent clause, ye vijñānapratyayā utpadyani āśraivas, etc., is omitted in the text. Just so much of it is given in translation to make the argument intelligible.
4 Sc. the four particular skandhas mentioned in this paragraph.
It rocked on the right hand, it rocked on the left, it rocked on the left and the right. There was something thrilling in this quaking, something beautiful, joyful, amiable, exhilarating, refreshing, cheerful, assuring, gladdening, causing no misgiving nor fear. For while this great earth quaked, it destroyed no life whatever, whether animal or plant. And through the power of the Exalted One an infinite radiance was shed in the world, surpassing the splendour of devas, Nāgas and Yakṣas. And the regions between the worlds, regions wrapped in darkness, regions of blackness wrapped in blackness, gloomy regions, impenetrable, never before penetrated, where the moon and sun, splendid and powerful though they be, with all their brilliance cannot make their brilliance prevail, with all their light cannot spread their light,—these regions became suffused with this radiance.

---

1 Abhidhyāyati in the text. This is Senart's restoration, but he is, of course, hard put to it to fit this verb, which normally means "to covet," into the context. It is impossible to conceive how any of its figurative developments could produce the sense required here. Senart can only ask "marque-t-il un mouvement, un soubresaut violent?" Emendation seems clearly to be called for, and it is suggested that the right reading is some compound of vyāth, the root which actually appears in the BSk. and Pali vedhatā and its compounds in the preceding sentence. The MSS. vary between abhiv- and adhiv-; neither abhivyati nor adhivyati seems, however, to be known to the dictionaries. One MS. reads adhivyati. Edgerton (B.H.S.D.), explains the verb abhidhyāyati as a compound of dhāyati, from Pali jāhāyati, the verb which, in its causative form, is used in our text for "to create." (See 1. 126, 302, 304, 357; 2. 78, 174). The "burning" of the earth, however, is not usually a part of the stock account of earthquakes in our text. Just at the point where this verb occurs we are generally told of the rising and sinking of the earth in the various quarters. Besides, the "burning" would seem to be particularly out of place here, for express mention of the earthquake.

2 This gives only three ways of quaking, instead of the six alluded to (ṣaṅghākāraṁ). Also, there is a variation from the stock description of these earthquakes.


4 Nirvāpaṇīya. So B.H.S.D.

5 Reading praśasaṇāya (see Vol. I, p. 164, n. 2) for praśadaniya.

6 T rasăm viṣ śākaram, corresponding to jangamaṁ śākaram uro of the corresponding passage at 1. 207 (text). Cf. trasahāliṁ (3. 380) and Pali rasahāliṁ.

7 Aghā asambhāta asambhūtaṁ pārṇā. Asambhāta here is taken as the past participle pass. of a-sambhūta, a special form of sambhūta in the sense of "to reach", "to be able to". (See Vol. I, p. 35, n. 3). The corresponding phrase in the parallel passage at 1. 41 is aghā asamvīdāta asamvīdātipārṇā "dark regions unknown, unknown before," at 1. 240 it is aghā ahasambhūtaṁ pārṇā "dark regions produced of yore from dark regions" (Trans. p. 106) "eternal darkness"). At 2. 162 it is aghā asamvīdātipārṇā as in the first example. See Vol. I, p. 35, n. 2.

---

No Mahānāma, in that world yonder a Conqueror, a Śākyan sage, sets rolling the wheel of dharma. It is the sound of his voice that goes forth.

He shouts through countless thousands of worlds and the sound of the voice of the nobly intelligent One is heard both far and near.

Such is his majesty that the perfect Buddha, who fulfils...
The voice with which the Tathāgata, Arhan and perfect Buddha was endowed when, in Benares, in the Deer Park at Rishivadana, he set rolling the thrice-revolved and twelve-fold peerless wheel of dharma, had sixty qualities.

The voice of the Tathāgata was deep, awe-inspiring, understandable, reaching the heart, amiable, charming, irresistible, flowing, agreeable, faultless, unbroken, even, unblemished, like the sound of a chariot-wheel, like the roar and rumble of a thunder-cloud, like the soughing of the wind, like the patter of rain, like the voice of a deva, like the voice of Brahman, pleasant, unspoil’d, not confused, moderate, not excessive, firm, significant, truthful, glorious, like the voice of a curlew, a sparrow, a cuckoo, resonant, like the voice of a bud, a lion, an elephant, a steer, a thoroughbred horse, like the voice of a curlew, a sparrow, a cuckoo, resonant, lovely, a voice of understanding, constant, a voice full of understanding and gentleness, a voice with a wide range, full of native goodness, truthful in every detail, full of the native root of goodness, full of real ease, thrilling, like the sound of a stringed instrument, of song, of music, of the drum, a man’s voice, a superb voice, like the sound of the kettle-drum, a rumble of a thunder-cloud, like the soughing of the wind.

The voice of the Tathāgata permeates all quarters; nowhere is it obstructed. The voice then, that the Tathāgata was endowed with when, in Benares, he set rolling the thrice-revolved and twelve-fold wheel of dharma, had these sixty qualities.

Then on that occasion Great Brahman extolled the Exalted One in his presence in these fitting verses.

1. The eulogy of Brahman’s actually begins with the 7th stanza.
2. The text has bhūmījā, “earthborn”, only. It is not clear what phenomenon is referred to here.
3. Literally “with outstretched limb”. This simile would seem to confirm the explanation in the B.H.S.D. of gajāvaseṣa at line 1. 216 ( = 2. 19) as meaning “elephant’s trunk” and equivalent to AMg. gajāvaseṣa. The translation (Vol. 1, p. 172 and 2, p. 17) unfortunately has followed Senart’s misinterpretation of āvasaṇa as meaning “the vapour of the elephant’s breathing.”
4. Literally “that the dharma-body of the Lion-man had appeared.”

The episode of Duspasaha ends abruptly here, and seems to have been related only in order to introduce the following description of the Buddha’s voice.

1. Literally, “rolls out” pravarteti; keeping up the metaphor of rolling the wheel of dharma.
2. The episode of Duspasaha ends abruptly here, and seems to have been related only in order to introduce the following description of the Buddha’s voice.
3. This list of qualities is comparable, but far from identical, with the list in 1. 170–2 (134–6, trans.).
4. Aparātiṣṭhitya. BSk., cf. Div. aparātiṣṭhik and Pali appatiṣṭhīya, grd. of apa- pari- tri (See P.E.D.) B.H.S.D. gives it the meaning of “not repellent”.
5. Aprābhāra, Senart’s restoration of apabhāra and paṇḍhāra of the MSS. Cf. Pali apabhāra, “not slanting or sloping” (P.E.D). The B.H.S.D. prints the word with a a and says of it, “Perhaps level, even, without descents or drops?” Pali apabhāra is used of a body of water having even or smooth banks, without steep slopes.” The corresponding adjective in Vol. 1. 171 would seem to be anamanta “not bending” (“even” (even”, trans. p. 135). Perhaps it would better be tender both words more literally, thus, “not bending”, “not sloping”, “not prone to” (sc. hastiness).
6. Ajñānayavasara.

1. Literally “rolls out”, pravarteti; keeping up the metaphor of rolling the wheel of dharma.
2. The episode of Duspasaha ends abruptly here, and seems to have been related only in order to introduce the following description of the Buddha’s voice.
3. This list of qualities is comparable, but far from identical, with the list in 1. 170–2 (134–6, trans.).
4. Aparātiṣṭhitya. BSk., cf. Div. aparātiṣṭhik and Pali appatiṣṭhīya, grd. of apa- pari- tri (See P.E.D.) B.H.S.D. gives it the meaning of “not repellent”.
5. Aprābhāra, Senart’s restoration of apabhāra and paṇḍhāra of the MSS. Cf. Pali apabhāra, “not slanting or sloping” (P.E.D). The B.H.S.D. prints the word with a a and says of it, “Perhaps level, even, without descents or drops?” Pali apabhāra is used of a body of water having even or smooth banks, without steep slopes.” The corresponding adjective in Vol. 1. 171 would seem to be anamanta “not bending” (“even”, trans. p. 135). Perhaps it would better be tender both words more literally, thus, “not bending”, “not sloping”, “not prone to” (sc. hastiness).
6. Ajñānayavasara.

1. Literally “rolls out”, pravarteti; keeping up the metaphor of rolling the wheel of dharma.
2. The episode of Duspasaha ends abruptly here, and seems to have been related only in order to introduce the following description of the Buddha’s voice.
3. This list of qualities is comparable, but far from identical, with the list in 1. 170–2 (134–6, trans.).
4. Aparātiṣṭhitya. BSk., cf. Div. aparātiṣṭhik and Pali appatiṣṭhīya, grd. of apa- pari- tri (See P.E.D.) B.H.S.D. gives it the meaning of “not repellent”.
5. Aprābhāra, Senart’s restoration of apabhāra and paṇḍhāra of the MSS. Cf. Pali apabhāra, “not slanting or sloping” (P.E.D). The B.H.S.D. prints the word with a a and says of it, “Perhaps level, even, without descents or drops?” Pali apabhāra is used of a body of water having even or smooth banks, without steep slopes.” The corresponding adjective in Vol. 1. 171 would seem to be anamanta “not bending” (“even”, trans. p. 135). Perhaps it would better be tender both words more literally, thus, “not bending”, “not sloping”, “not prone to” (sc. hastiness).
6. Ajñānayavasara.
THE MAHĀVASTU

"O Gotama, thou dost hurl thy thunderbolt as thou sittest here, and makest to tremble the three thousandfold world that is full of precious stones and surrounded by an ocean of Buddhas."

"O Best of men, when thou dost hurl thy consummate weapon, the ten quarters all around are visibly shaken.

"Uprooting the errors lurking in the thicket of false belief he shines as a king of Nāgas, a foremost Lord of men, a lion-hearted Conqueror.

"Like a fearless lion lying in his mountain lair, filling all his foes with fear, shines forth the lion-hearted Conqueror.

"Smiting Māra's troops, routing Māra's ranks, scattering them with thy right hand, thou dost raise thy Conqueror's banner."

The wealth-bearing earth quaked to the rattling of its many precious stones, for it rises up when it remembers that speaking voice.

Devas standing in Meru's sky from all sides showered wreaths on the Sage, the supreme being whose radiance is golden."

(345) Sumanas, with devotion in my heart, my joined hands raised and doing obeisance, I have come hither because I have heard of the wheel of dharma.

When the Exalted One first delivered the sūtra of "setting the wheel of dharma rolling," Ājñāta Kaunḍinya and eighteen kotis of devas were converted. And the devas went to their own homes carrying the tidings to the deva worlds.

"There is no safety in the skandhas, but torment and great fear. There is no freedom in them: they are worthless." This does Gotama declare.

Enough talk of faith, sir? With an insight into the meaning of truth, go to salute the Buddha who makes hate and fear things of the past.

Senart admits that the text here is "infinitely problematic". In the translation "devas" has been taken to be implied in omugagamanamārīti. Dhātum is unusual if not unique in the sense of "being", and it would seem to be necessary to emend dhātum uthāmanam into satītām uthānam (in apposition to munim), unless we actually have here a unique example of dhātu = satīta. (Cf. the compound satītdhātu, which, however, according to B.H.S.D., means "a number of beings," and is not an abstract compound equivalent to the simple concrete satīta.) Senart takes dhātum as being for lokadhātum, and explains the accusative as being dependent on samantā (= samantād), "from all sides of the world." But then it would be difficult to explain the adjective uthānam "supreme" as qualifying (lokad)dhātum. In the text the verb abhiramennu has no secondary object to denote with what "they bestowed the sāga". Uthānam has, therefore, been tentatively emended into uthānam "wreaths", although this word is not found elsewhere in our text in this connexion. Alternatively, we might suggest uthānam "upper garments". Cf. Vol. 2, p. 24-5 (text) where we read of devas taking off their upper garments (uttariya there) and waving them in honour of the Buddha.

Presumably one of the devas alluded to in the preceding verse. But as we have here only a fragment of a longer narrative the allusion must remain obscure, just as is to Mahānāma in the same passage, above p. 337. An alternative interpretation would be to take sumana as an adjective and understand all the verses from the ending of the eulogy onwards as being Great Brahmā's description of the scene at the turning of the wheel. This verse would then read, "with devotion in my heart; and glad, etc., I have come hither after hearing of the wheel of dharma."

Śrāvastī, adjetival here as at Sn. 1031, with compositional i for i, for the more usual prājñālīkītī.

Prajñātī, with bent or bowed senses, i.e., body.

Arocetā, pr. part. of arocayati, aroceti, Bsk. and Pali, "to tell, announce."

Lit. "they (the skandhas) are not freed," anūpārika.

Bhāvat, nom. for voc.

Abhiramatha, pl. for sg.
Thirty koṭis of devas then came to Riśivadana, and they were converted when the second sūtra of "setting the wheel of dharma rolling" was delivered. They then went to their own homes bearing the tidings. On hearing these fifty, koṭis of devas came, and they were converted when the Exalted One delivered the sūtra of "setting the wheel of dharma rolling" the third time. They then went to their own homes bearing the tidings to the deva worlds. Then a deva of Tuṣita, named Śikharaṇhara, recited these verses of praise before the Exalted One at Riśivadana.¹

Hail to thee, hail to thy beauty. Thy radiance extends a full fathom. Hail to thy profitable, successful and charming speech. (346) Hail to thee who art devoted to aversion from the world and art endowed with the virtue of absolute non-attachment.² Hail to the Four Truths. O Sage, it is the truth that thou dost proclaim.

Hail to thee. The devas and Gandharvas imbibe thy sweet song. Hail to thee. Thou hast set rolling the matchless wheel that may not be rolled back.

---

² But the compiler in quoting these verses from some source or other, did not begin his quotation at quite the appropriate place. Inadvertently he has started off with verses in which it is Brahmā and not Śikharaṇhara that eulogises the Buddha, but he immediately recollects himself, after giving only half a sloka of the verse introducing Brahmā’s words. This line is omitted from the translation. In vol. I, p. 174 these verses of Śikharaṇhara are spoken in praise of the Buddha’s voice.

³ This line is difficult. The text reads sādhakā arisāmyogak sarvasandhi-guṇāveteṣaḥ. Senart combines the two compounds into one word, taking the initial a to negate the whole. He renders "le détachement de la personnalité dont les chaînes sont faites de tous les liens des naissances accumulées." He comments, however, "l'expédient est, même pour ce style, beaucoup trop violent pour que j'y aie grande confiance." It is perhaps better to make a slight emendation and read (for sarvasandhi-) sarvasandhi-, that is, "every non-attachment." The expression then approximates to sarvasandhānāṃ ... asandhi, "emancipation of all states of being." In Lāṇ. 160. 11 (quoted in B.H.S.D, s.v. sandhi) where asandhi is expressly the synonym of parimocana. This suggested emendation has been adopted in translating. The corresponding words in vol. I, p. 174 are, of course, modified to suit their application to nāsa.

---

In all the world there is none thy equal in form, in beauty and in birth, in deportment, in energy, in meditation, nor yet in knowledge.

O valiant Sage, this day at thy first teaching eighteen koṭis of devas were led to the first fruition.

At thy second teaching, O valiant Friend, thirty koṭis more of devas were led to the first fruition.

At thy third teaching fifty koṭis more of devas were converted and saved from states of woe.

At thy fourth teaching eighty koṭis more of devas were led to the fruit of winning the stream and saved from spheres of ill.

Hence is there none like thee in love, O Man supreme, so merciful with compassion, O fearless, valiant Man.

O joy! Thou wert born a boon to the world, O tiger-like Man, to confer blessings on all beings, O long-living great Sage.⁴

A short while ago thou wert born the son of a king, O bull-like Man, to be a guide of the lost, to give sight to the blind.⁵

May the teacher who is now with us never disappear.⁶

(347) May thy stability have no limit, O Guide of the world. By thy majesty, O Self-becoming One, states of desolation are brought to an end.⁷ Through thee, O Man supreme, heaven is made completely full.⁸

Thanks to thee, O valiant Man supreme, he who belongs to the class of people whose wrong-doing is fixed in its consequences achieves the class where no consequences are entailed.¹⁰

---

¹ Reading āsane, here and in the immediate sequel, for āsane of the text. The former is the reading at 1. 174.
² Vol. I, p. 174 has krīḍā dala "ten (koṭis) were thrilled ", for astidala.⁶ This has inadvertently become "third " in the translation of Vol. I, p. 138.
³ The passage at 1. 175 here speaks of Bodhisattvas, with a corresponding modification of language.
⁴ Acirasya. Vol. I, 175 has atirasya, "a very long while ago ".
⁵ Andhānam nayanāma dadā. Vol. I, 175 has ārtānāma nayanāndanam.
⁸ Nirākāra "having no (free) space". This seems to confirm the correctness of Senart’s restoration of the MS. anohātā at 1. 175 into anohātā "having no sufficient space," Pali anohāsa. Cf. B.H.S.D.
Thanks to thee, O thou that art extolled of Suras, he who belongs to the class where actions entail no consequences achieves the class where righteousness is fixed in its consequences. O Man of light, thanks to thee, the steadfast dispenser of darkness, the growth of wondrous states is won.

Whilst thou speakest of these true states, O beloved of men, the worlds of men and of Indra extol thy voice, O great Sage.

Thus with gladsome hearts did the hosts of devas laud the beneficent One who is endowed with boundless virtue, the Caravan-leader, the Man Supreme.

**Ājñāta Kaundinya**

The monks asked the Exalted One, "Lord, as a maturing of what karma was the venerable Ājñāta Kaundinya the first of all to learn the dharma?" The Exalted One replied, "Monks, he made a vow long ago to be so."

Once upon a time, monks, long ago, in the city of Rājagriha, a Pratyekabuddha, who suffered from biliousness, sought shelter in a potter's shed. The potter took him in and cured him of his biliousness. Then the Pratyekabuddhas attending on that Pratyekabuddha who suffered from biliousness came to the potter's shed to inquire after his health. The potter then made a vow, saying, "By this root of merit, which I have acquired in doing this service and tendence to you, may I be the first of all to learn the dharma when it is proclaimed by exalted Buddha. May I not crave for gain and honour. May I crave only for a solitary bed and seat and content with any kind of almsman's bowl. May I lay aside my body amid the cascades and forest glades, dying all alone."

The Exalted One said, "It may be again, monks, that you will think that at that time and on that occasion, that potter in the city of Rājagriha was somebody else. But you must not think that. And why? This elder here, Ājñāta Kaundinya, was at that time and on that occasion the potter in the city of Rājagriha. For that he gave shelter to the Pratyekabuddha who was suffering from a bilious affection and tended him, and then made a vow, saying, 'As you learned the dharma first of all and these others afterwards, so may I, too, be the first to learn the dharma when it is proclaimed by an exalted Buddha,' as a maturing of that karma Ājñāta Kaundinya has been the first to learn the dharma; afterwards the others did so.

Through the root of merit which is acquired by service of food, shelter and sustenance, may I foregather with the Best of men.

As you were the first to learn the dharma and were followed by these others, so may I be the first to learn it when it is proclaimed by a Conqueror.

---

3. Reading priimānasā, as at 1. 176, for priimānasam.
4. Sārthavaṇa. Vol. 1. 176 has samstanarāna "worthy of praise."
5. "That was his vow" etasya eṣa (for eṣam) prayidhānam.
6. Bhrigava, properly a patronymic from Bhrigu. It is not clear how this word came to have the meaning "potter," examples of the similar usage of the corresponding Pali bhaggava are referred to in D.P.N. (s.v.), to which Miss I. B. Horner, in a letter, adds M. 2. 52. The P.E.D. is obviously wrong in saying that the one passage in which it occurs in Pali is J. 3. 381–2, where it is an epithet of, rather than a synonym for "potter." In other Pali passages it is a synonym, as it is here in the Mvn. According to Kern, Toev., the Sk. form in this meaning also occurs at Mbh. 1. 190. 47 and Saddhp. 191 f. See P.E.D., also B.H.S.D. for BSk. references. It is possible that potters were so named because Bhrigu was the mythical discoverer of fire which became the means for the development of so many arts and crafts.

---

1. Prānta. See Vol. 1, p. 119, n. 3.
2. Literally, "may the laying aside of my body be that of one who dies all alone," etasya mṛitabhaṭṭasya larvianikhepanam bhaveya. For larvianikhepana cf. Pali dehanikhepana (Vism. 236). B.H.S.D. does not notice this use of nikhepana (= nikhēpana). Edgerton there (s.v.) says that nikhēpana at vol. 2, p. 237 means "subjugation" or "conqueror." The translation (2 p. 270), however, has rendered it "renouncing," this interpretation being based on the radical sense of nikhēp, "to throw down," "lay aside," etc.
3. Part of a metrical version of the same tale.
The monks said to the Exalted One, "The Lord made renunciation of self, of son, of wife, of wealth and of kingdom, and when he had awakened to the incomparable perfect enlightenment, he made the venerable to share in a great blessing." The Exalted One replied, "Monks, this was not the first time that I made Äjñāta Kauṇḍinya to share in a great blessing. I did so on another occasion also." The monks asked, "Was there another occasion, Lord?" The Exalted One replied, "Yes, monks."

Once upon a time, long ago, there was a king of the Kośalas who was virtuous, mighty, powerful, and wealthy and had a great army. His realm was prosperous, rich, peaceful, well supplied with food, and thickly peopled with happy subjects. Violence, brawling and rioting were quelled and robbers held in check. The kingdom was busy with trade, and governed with justice. The fair renown of that king was spread in all directions. He was a sovereign honoured for his generosity and liberality. He was intent on doing kindness to others and had his gaze on the world beyond. Thus he was styled "the Just."

My wishes few, may I be content to earn my living with any kind of bowl. My heart fortified with calm and ease, may I not covet gain and honour.

In the lonely forest and on the mountains haunted by herds of deer, there, when my time is come, may I lay aside my body. (349) Whether honoured or unhonoured, life and consciousness pass away like vapour. Who can find pleasure in a dead body that is but dust of the earth?

Here ends the Jātaka of Äjñāta Kauṇḍinya.

Now a worldly king of the Kāsīs had designs to invade the kingdom of the Kośalas. He equipped a strong force of the four arms, warriors on elephants, cavalry, charioteers and infantry, and invaded the land of the Kośalas. But the counsellors and troops of the king of the Kośalas (350) defeated the king of the Kāsīs and all his army was completely routed and broken up. He came again with a greater army of the four arms, but again he went away defeated. Again and again did the king of the Kāsīs invade the territory of the Kośalas with a four-fold army. Thus many thousands of people, exposed to one another's knives, arrows, swords and axes, fell into misfortune and ruin.

The heart of the just, compassionate and considerate king of the Kośalas was moved when he saw these thousands of people fallen into misfortune and ruin, his kingdom invaded, men destroyed because of another's greed for a kingdom, and such wrong perpetrated. Moved by this consideration, he left his kingdom, and all alone he went to the southern country disguised as an unknown man. He said to himself, "There, by some means or other I shall manage to gain a living for myself."

And as he went on his way, tired with the journey and scorched by the hot wind, he sat down to rest in the cool shade of a banyan tree. There came along on his way from the southern sea to Kośala a certain sea-faring trader, whose ship had sunk with the loss of all the cargo. He had heard that the king of the Kośalas was just, compassionate and devoted to helping others, and that he had relieved thousands of people who had lost their wealth and given them material assistance. He thought the merchant, "will give me, too, some money which will enable me to ply my trade again and recover from this disaster."

Thus, with his hopes on the king of the Kośalas, he came in due course from the southern country and reached the place where the king was. He came upon him under the banyan tree. The king questioned the merchant, saying, "Can it be
that you are not weary or sick, good brother? Rest awhile. The shade of this banyan tree is cool, for you are tired with your journey." The merchant replied, "Good brother, a blessing on you, but I will go on." The king said, "Whither are you bound in such hurry that you do not wish to rest?" The merchant replied, "Kind sir, (351) I am a sea-faring merchant from a certain place. Having plentiful resources I left my native place and crossed the great ocean in a well-fitted vessel, taking with me wares of various kinds to sell among the seaboard towns. But in mid-ocean my wealth-laden vessel sank. By clinging to a plank I escaped from the sea with my life, but lost everything else. And now I go to the king of the Kosalas to get money wherewith to ply my trade again, and recover from disaster. In this hope I have travelled far."

But when the king of the Kosalas heard the merchant speaking thus, he began to weep and shed tears. The merchant asked him, "Kind sir, why do you weep?" The king replied, "I weep because you, a shipwrecked man, have come to me from afar in the hope that the king of the Kosalas will give you material assistance wherewith to ply your trade again and recover from your disaster. But that kingdom of mine has been invaded by the king of the Kasîs, and I have come, bereft of everything, to this southern land thinking perhaps you have come from afar through hearing about me, because report of me has brought you here. But when the king of the Kosalas heard the merchant speaking thus, he began to weep and shed tears. The merchant asked him, "Kind sir, why do you weep?" The king replied, "I weep because you, a shipwrecked man, have come to me from afar in the hope that the king of the Kosalas will give you material assistance wherewith to ply your trade again and recover from your disaster. But that kingdom of mine has been invaded by the king of the Kasîs, and I have come, bereft of everything, to this southern land thinking perhaps you have come from afar through hearing about me, because report of me has brought you here. But"...
is brave and well-trained. How comes he then to have been caught and to be brought in by you?" And when the merchant had related all that led up to his coming, the king of the Kāśis was amazed, and he said, "It is not right for me to deprive such a righteous king of his kingdom." He consecrated the king of the Kośalas to his throne once more. He then left for his own kingdom, while the king of the Kośalas bestowed a large amount of riches on the merchant.

It may be again, monks, that you will think that at that time and on that occasion the king of the Kośalas was somebody else. He was not somebody else, for I at that time, monks, was the king of the Kośalas. It must not be thought, either, that the merchant was somebody else, for at that time Ajñāta Kauṇḍinya was he. Then also did I make renunciation of my self and bestow great wealth\(^1\) on him. And now, too, after I have made hundreds of painful self-sacrifices and awakened to the supreme perfect enlightenment, have I made him share in a great blessing.

Here ends the Jātaka of Ajñāta Kauṇḍinya.

THE FIVE MONKS

The monks said to the Exalted One, "This good group of five monks\(^2\) were once adherents of another sect, but they were turned away from these paths of false belief, raised them up out of fear and dismay, out of the ocean of recurrent birth, and established them on the firm ground of peace, happiness, calm, fearlessness and nirvana." The Exalted One replied, "Monks, that was not the only time that the good group of five were led by me across the ocean of recurrent birth. There was another occasion, also, when I, through sacrifice of my own self, saved them from the great

---

1. \( \text{Ariha.} \) Here referring to the \text{dhanashandha} conferred on the merchant. The same word is used for the moral or spiritual benefit (blessing) conferred by the Buddha on Ajñāta Kauṇḍinya.

2. See p. 313, n. 2.
And he with his weapon cut his own throat, for he knew that the sea cannot brook a dead body for a single night.

And so, monks, the sea quickly cast up his dead body on to dry land. The five merchants also by the force of the sea were cast up on shore along with the corpse.

Then did this great earth shake violently, and a loud shout was raised by all the powers of nature. The deva of the sea replied, “This is the Bodhisattva, who was sailing across the sea with other merchants when their ship was wrecked by a monster fish. Those merchants who had previously practised religion were saved from the sea by the Bodhisattva’s self-sacrifice and enabled to reach dry land. (355) But we were living in slothfulness in that we did not notice that such are the arduous deeds performed by Bodhisattvas for the benefit of all beings.”

Once upon a time, long ago, while the Most Eloquent One was faring onwards in his quest of enlightenment, he happened to cross the delightful ocean, the haunt of a monster fish. Then in mid-ocean his ship was wrecked by the monster fish. The wise merchant, though he had lost his wealth, swam about in the sea.

When he saw the other merchants helpless, shiftless and in dire straits, he began to think of a way whereby he could succour them in their sorry plight.

And this reflection came to him; “I have heard it said that the sea, in which this monster fish lives, will not brook a dead body for a single night.

“I will then sacrifice myself that the merchants may not perish in the sea.” Thus spoke he to himself, conscious of the firm resolution of one who had reached perfection of thought and conduct.

And that great compassion, which was solicitous of man’s welfare and which he had acquired during the course of his long career, inspired the disposition of his heart. To the group of merchants he said, “I am going to sacrifice myself. Do you hold on to my body, for the deva of the sea will not keep a dead body for a single night.”

He took a sharp weapon and made an end of his own life. Soon all the merchants were cast up on the shore.

The earth, with its mountains, cities and towns, its rocks and its forest glades, violently shook. (356) The ocean, the strong-holds of the Dānavas, and the lairs of the serpents trembled. “What is this?” So did men and the devas of mountain and forest, and serpents ask one another... Then did the disconsolate deva of the sea make answer.

“This Most Eloquent One,” said she, “this most select of elephants, while he fared on in quest of enlightenment, was crossing the briny ocean. But in my heedlessness was not aware of it.

“And he, the Best of Men, was shipwrecked, but he achieved his quest in the sea. For he sacrificed his own dear self for the sake of the deliverance of other men.”

---

1 Bhajate, from bhaj, “to share”. So, doubtfully, Senart. The context would certainly seem to require a historical present here. Edgerton (Gram. § 31. 20), however, explains the verb as an example of a future formation with h for sy, and with ending of 1st sg. mid. for 3rd, and he translates “will take possession of”.

2 Cittasandhāna. Cf. Divy. 286, and Pali santāna. Edgerton (B.H.S.D.) adduces BSk. instances where santāna alone is used as a synonym for the whole compound.

3 Nairāyaśī Simano... ātram. But the lacuna makes the exact sense of nivartati here doubtful.


5 Lacuna.

6 Gajasatvasīto, literally, “the essence of an elephant’s being.” Probably the idea behind the expression is that the Buddha is as select among men as the elephant is among beasts, and it was so paraphrased, rather loosely, in Vol. I, p. 166 and Vol. 2, p. 12, of this translation.

7 Pariṇāpāta. This verb is commonly used in both BSk. and Pali in the sense of “to accomplish fully,” but always with an object in the accusative. Edgerton (B.H.S.D.), therefore, argues that here the verb can only be taken in its literal sense of “to fill up,” and he considers that Senart is at fault in emending sāgaram of the MSS. into sāgare. Edgerton renders “the noble man filled the sea,” but it is difficult to see how this can be an expression for “giving his life to it.” It seems more reasonable to assume that the object of pariṇāpāta, “accomplish,” is to be supplied from bodhaya caranto of the preceding stanza. This “faring after enlightenment” must have been present in the mind of the poet, and in thought he could easily supply the substantive corresponding to this participial phrase, viz., bodhicārīm, a substantive which actually occurs as object of pariṇāpāta in an example cited by Edgerton from Bhadra carita, 22.
"Because of his virtue, the earth, with the sea and Mount Meru, quakes, and the strongholds of the Guhyakas and Dānavas and the lairs of serpents tremble.

"How can any being requite the Choice Beings as they fare onwards in quest of enlightenment, not to speak of when they have won omniscience?

"If a man becomes an adherent of the Conqueror's teaching with his whole being, to that extent he can requite him who is the most select of elephants.

The Exalted One said, "It may be again, monks, that you will think that at that time and on that occasion the merchant-leader was somebody else. You must not think so. And that because it was I, monks, who was that merchant-leader. Those five merchants were none other than this good group of five monks. Through my self-sacrifice they were then rescued from the sea and landed in safety on the sea-shore. And now, too, have they, through my self-sacrifice, been led across the ocean of recurrent birth and set firmly in nirvana.

Here ends the Jātaka of the Good Group of Five.

The monks said to the Exalted One, "Dharma has been taught by the Lord to an assembly of devas and men." (357) The Exalted One replied, "This, monks, is not the first time that I have taught the dharma to an assembly of devas and men." The monks asked, "Was there another occasion, Lord?" The Exalted One replied, "Yes, monks."

Once upon a time, monks, long ago, in the city of Benares, in the province of Kāśi, there reigned a king named Kalabha, who was savage, cruel and violent. On one occasion, while the women of his court were sauntering in the park, he started playing a water-game with them in the lotus-pool. They trampled the lotuses as they played and sported and amused themselves, until he and the women became tired with the sport. The king fell asleep and the women scattered about the park.

Then by means of his magic the seer Kṣāntivāda came from the continent of Uttarakuru and sat down in the park. He was seen by the women as they strolled about the park, and they, beholding in him a seer of great gifts, sat down around him with faith in their hearts, and said to him, "Teach us the dharma." So the seer gave them a discourse on charity, morality, heaven and merit, and he explained to them the peril, the degradation and the defilement of sensual pleasures, and the benefit and purification that comes from renouncing the world. The noble seer explained to them the path of the ten moralities, from which springs well-being in the world for devas and men, which is bright and the fruit of which is happiness.

Thus did the women of the court sit round the seer wrapt in attention. Then the king woke up and failed to see the women. He was angered, and unsheathing his sword he went on foot to search for them. And he saw those women of the court sitting in front of the seer. When he saw the latter he was still more violently enraged because he had looked on the whole of his harem. In his anger and malevolence, he asked the seer, "Who are you?" The seer replied, (358) "I am a preacher of forbearance, your majesty."
king was still more enraged and said, "If you are a preacher of forbearance, stretch forth a finger." The king did so. With his sword the king lopped off the seer's finger, and from it there flowed milk, just as a mother's milk flows from her breasts out of love for her offspring. In the same way all the benevolent seer's five fingers of each hand were lopped off one by one, and from each one milk flowed.

The king asked again, "What do you preach, sir?" Even then did the seer display his forbearance, and he replied, "I am a preacher of forbearance, your majesty." Then his hand was chopped off, and again did milk flow.

Again the king asked, "What do you preach, sir?" Even then did the seer display his forbearance, and he said, "I am a preacher of forbearance, your majesty." Then the king chopped off his other hand, beginning with the fingers and ending at the wrist, and always did the milk flow when each part was cut off.

Again the king asked, "What do you preach, sir?" The seer even then displayed his forbearance, and said, "I am a preacher of forbearance, your majesty." Then his feet were cut off, beginning at the toes and ending at the knees. Again the king asked, "What do you preach, sir?" Even then the seer displayed his forbearance and said, "I am a preacher of forbearance, your majesty." One of his ears was then cut off, and again milk flowed from the cut-off ear.

Again the king asked, "What do you preach, sir?" Even then the seer displayed his forbearance (359), and said "I am a preacher of forbearance, your majesty." His other ear was then cut off, and from it there flowed the milk of one who was incorrupt of heart.

Again the king asked the seer, "What do you preach, sir?" Even then did the seer display his forbearance, and he said "I am a preacher of forbearance, your majesty." His nose was then cut off, and from it there flowed the milk of one who was incorrupt of heart.

Again the king asked the seer, "What do you preach, sir?" Even then did the seer display his forbearance, and he said, "I am a preacher of forbearance, your majesty. If you cut up my body into a hundred fragments and throw it away in a hundred pieces, even then, still incorrupt of heart, I would not give up my forbearance."

When the seer had been thus mutilated, devas, Nāgas and Yakṣas were perturbed, demons made a loud outcry, and beings knew a fearful trembling. People of town and country, seeing the great fear of the demons and hearing the noise of those who cried out, fell at the feet of the seer and implored his forgiveness.

O Great Brahmā, be wroth with him who lopped off your hands, your feet, your ears and nose. May it be well with other men.

The seer replied:

I'll not be wroth even with him who lopped off my hands, my feet, my ears and nose, much less with the rest of men.

The devas, Nāgas, Yakṣas and Gandharvas said, "Let us urge this seer to see to it that the kingdom, realm and dominion of King Kalabha do not prosper." Let his rich country be laid waste with fire and his realm destroyed, since they have harmed the seer, the harmless Kṣāntivādin.

(360) Let this city be laid waste with fire and be made an abode of death, since they have harmed the seer, the harmless Kṣāntivādin.

Let this king be burnt, together with his counsellors and his court, since they have harmed the seer, the harmless Kṣāntivādin.

Townsmen and countrymen seeing the great perturbation of the demons were terrified, and falling at the seer's feet, they implored him:

O Great Brahmā be wroth with him who lopped off your hands, your feet, your ears and nose. May it be well with other men.
hands, your feet, your ears and nose. Let it be well with the rest of men.

But the seer replied:

Be not afraid that any harm will come to you. For not even with him who lopped off my hands, my feet, my ears and nose will I be wroth, much less with other men. But the king will have to reap the fruit of the deed he has done.

To the devas, Nāgas, Yakṣas and Gandharvas the seer said:

The deva will not send rain in due season. The seeds that are sown will not grow, because they will be burnt by the heat and destroyed by the wind.

Thus there was in times past a seer, a shining light with his forbearance. Him as he stood firm in his forbearance did the king of Kāshi slay.

Bitter was the ripened fruit of this cruel deed since, as you know, that king of Kāshi was consigned to hell.

(361) So be forbearing, as Kṣaṇivādin the seer was. For though his limbs were cut off he was not wroth with any man.

And so Kalabha the king of Kāshi was burnt with fire and he was reborn in the great hell of Avīci.

In Hastināpura there was a king named Arjuna, who, when he saw some good men, put questions to them, saying

1 Text has the present tense.
2 Kṣaṇītya, instr. case.
3 It would seem to be obvious that the fragmentary adhivasā (followed by a lacuna) of Senart's text is part of the adjective adhivasaka or of the corresponding verb adhivasayati. The adjective, though known in Pali, is not elsewhere found in BSk and is not listed in B.H.S.D. But the verb adhivasayati in both languages has the sense of "to endure" as well as that of "to consent".
4 Cf. the Pali Sarabhanga-jātaka, Faub. 522, (J. 5. 125 ff). Sarabhanga is a noted sage in the Mahābhārata also, but the stories there told of him are different from the Buddhist ones.
5 This note is incorrect in implying that this city is identical with the Hastināpura of the Mahābhārata. It is indentical with the Hastinapura of the Mahābhārata.
6 Identical with Arjuna Kārtavirya of Sanskrit epic. See B.H.S.D. and D.P.N.
The king said to him, "Train my hundred young princes in the skill of archery, and I will give you abundant wealth."

Thus the teacher of archery taught the skill of archery. And Yajñadatta, the priest's son, also learnt the art along with the princes. They were trained in the whole art, but Yajñadatta distinguished himself in it above all the others.

When they had completed their training they gave an exhibition to the public in the presence of the king and his court. The hundred princes shot their arrows at Yajñadatta, but he with his sabre cut down all the arrows aimed at him before they reached his body. All the king's company marvelled at Yajñadatta. Thus did he get his name of Sarabhanga.1

To the north of Benares, on the slopes of the Himalayas, there was a hermitage named Sāhañjani.2 It was well-supplied with roots, leaves, flowers and fruits and had good crops of kodrava,3 śyāmaka,4 hemp, rice,5 vegetables and lily-roots. It was made pleasant by several thousands of trees which were laden with flowers and fruits, and it was well provided with water for drinking. There dwelt a seer named Kāśyapa with a company of five hundred, all of whom had won the five super-knowledges, achieved the four meditations and had great magic and power.

Sarabhanga, the priest's son, went to the hermitage Sāhañjani and took up the religious life of a seer under the seer Kāśyapa. He became known and renowned among men and devas as a young man living the brahma-life, devoted to severe austerity, and as a great Nāga.1

(363) Then he went to the southern country. In the country of the Asmakas6 is the river Godāvari, on the banks of which he established a hermitage named Kapiththaka7 and dwelt there.

The seer Kāśyapa had a pupil named Vatsa,4 who lived in a hermitage on the banks of the Ganges, on the slopes of the Himalayas, with a company of five hundred all of whom possessed the five super-knowledges, were masters of the four meditations, were rid of the passion for sensual pleasures, lived on what they could glean, and were of great power.

Now Vatsa the seer became ill with flatulence. Unable to endure the cold of the Himalayas he went to the southern country, to a city called Govardhana. There a king named Daṇḍakin8 was ruling. He was unjust, a king of unrighteousness. He had gone wrong in his beliefs, was greedy for worldly pleasures, foolish, perverse in his views, disrespectful of mother and father, unkind to recluse and brāhmaṇ, cruel, merciless and violent. When he saw Vatsa the seer he had him trampled8 in the mud, innocent, harmless and inoffensive though he was.

The chief counsellor of that kingdom was named Vighuṣṭa.7 He quickly dug out the seer alive from the heap of mud. He then fell at his feet and craved his forgiveness. "Lord," said he, "I do not approve of the violence committed by the king. May your reverence be pleased to pardon me." The seer replied, "Counsellor, leave the kingdom at once. In seven days I shall be dead, and when I am dead there will be in this kingdom a great and terrible calamity."

---

1 An honorific term, applied also to the Buddha and to Arhans.
2 Pali Assaka, one of the sixteen Mahājanapadas mentioned in the Anguttara Nikāya (A. 1. 213; 4. 253, 256, 260). See D.P.N.
3 Pali Kapiththavana.
4 Pali Kiavaccha or Vacchachya.
5 In J. 3. 134 and elsewhere his city is called Kumbhavatī.
6 Abramāti, caus. of abramati. See B.H.S.D.
7 Replaced in J. by an unnamed commander-in-chief, senāpati. But the details of the story generally vary considerably in the two texts.
And when he had heard this from Vatsa the seer, the councillor, with his sons and wife, his retinue and his relatives, left the kingdom of King Daṇḍakin and went to another kingdom.

When the seventh night was past, Vatsa the seer died. Immediately on his death there was a great commotion among the demons, who on that night reduced the city and kingdom to ashes.

Kāśyapa the seer was performing a sacrifice between the Ganges and the Jumna. Thither there flocked ninety-eight thousand ascetics (364) all possessing the five super-knowledges, masters of the four meditations, and having great magic and power.

In the country of the Kalingas was a city named Dantapura, where there was a king named Uggata. When he saw the terrible and frightful calamity which had overcome those cruel kings he went to Sañjīyantī to visit the seers. In Sañjīyantī the king was named Bhimaratha. He, too, was terrified and perturbed on seeing the dreadful sight of the destruction of those kings, and he asked the king of the Kalingas, "Whither are you going?"

The latter replied "I am going to visit the seers."

In Hastināpura there reigned a king named Aṣṭamaka. And he, too, terrified and perturbed on seeing the dreadful calamity which had befallen those four cruel kings, set out to visit the seers. Śakra, lord of the devas, also, on seeing the calamity which had befallen those unjust, unrighteous, heretical, merciless, cruel and violent kings, came in the great pomp of devas to visit the seers.

On the slopes of the Himalayas there were five hundred seers who lived on roots and fruits, were content with what

---

1 Sudhāhalākhā, interpreted here as a dvandva or copulative compound. Lākhā (also lākha) is Sk. rākṣa, Pali lākha, "coarse" "poor", especially applied to food and clothing, but also used in a mental or moral sense. On the analogy of lākha in the expression lākhdhākimukthakā at 2. 313 (text), where he assumes it is a substantive meaning "evil", Edgerton (B.H.S.D.) renders suddhalākhā "purified from evil", but adds in parenthesis "does it really refer to their diet? improbably, but they are mālaphalākhā in the preceding line; possibly then, 'of pure and coarse food'. But lākhdhākimukthakā can well be rendered "being of gross disposition" (see vol. 2, p. 293).

2 For the ending -āvo see p. 335, n. 4.

3 Sañjīyantī. For the ending -āvo see p. 335, n. 4.

4 So in J.

5 In J. they go to visit one seer only, viz., Sarabhanga.

6 So in J.

7 Aṣṭamaka in J. His capital is not named there.

8 A metrical version of the tale.

9 Literally "were seen", pāṣyuntā. But Edgerton (Gram. p. 220 and §37.256) does not list this particular occurrence of this form among the inflexional forms derived from pālyati.

---

Sarabhanga 363

they could glean, were ascetic, pure though poor, well-controlled, sternly austere, and sublime.

One seer was there who was styled Vatsa. He became ill with flatulence and, unable to endure the cold of the Himalayas, he left the forest and went down to the king's city.

Now in that city was the king named Daṇḍakin, a man of unrighteous life, intent on violence, who had irrationally adopted a wrong belief. (365) He trampled that seer in the mud.

But the king had a chief councillor in his state, named Vighuṣṭa, and he raised up the seer and said to him, "This pleases me not. So deign to forgive me, O holy man."

Vatsa the seer replied to the councillor, "Go hence, lest evil fortune be yours. For when seven nights are past a fearful calamity will befall."

When the seer was dead, there was a great commotion among the demons, and in a single night they reduced to ashes that king's realm, his wealth and his might.

Then did the ascetic Sarabhanga speak to the assembled seers, "Not seemingly was this thing which Daṇḍakin did. Let us go and do honour to Vatsa."

Then, also, did Aṣṭamaka and King Bhimaratha and
Udgata, the king of Kalinga, excitedly and eagerly says: "Let us go to visit the seers and ask them how this may be."¹

And so in gladness and excitement the three lords of men came into the presence of the seers, (366) in fine array, wearing ornaments and earrings, and carrying swords inlaid with pearl and beryl.

The seers said to them:

O king, tell the seer² who you are, and how do they know you in the world of men?

The kings replied:

We are Astamaka and King Bhimaratha and this is Udgata the king of Kalinga. We have come hither to visit seers who are well-controlled, wishful to ask a question of them.

The seers asked Indra as he stood in the air:

In the sky you stand upheld by the air and radiant as the moon of fifteen days. We ask you, O deva of great power, how do they know you² in the world of men?

Sakra replied:

The devas know me³ as husband of Śacī.⁴ In the world of men they call me Maghavan. Here I am come, a deva of great might,⁵ to visit the seers who are well-controlled.

(367) The seers said:

He who is the Razer of cities,⁶ Lord of demons, Sovereign of devas, king of the Three-and-Thirty, and Vanquisher of the Asuras, has come hither seeking leave to ask a question.⁷

¹ The subject of this inquiry is alluded to as though it had already been mentioned, which is not the case in our text. In J. 5. 135, the question which exercised the minds of the kings was the destiny of the cruel kings who had ill-treated the seers.

² Sc. Sarabhanga, the chief of them.

³ Ti = te acc. sg. of 2nd. pers. pron. See Edgerton, Gram., § 20. 16.

⁴ Mi = me. Cf. preceding note and reference.

⁵ J. has Stjampati for Sacipati.

⁶ Reading the nom., deva mahānubhavaḥ, for the voc.


⁸ In J. 5. 139 this stanza is recited by Anusissa, one of Sarabhanga’s disciples.

[Sakra said:]

Ye seers who’re here assembled, your fame we’ve heard from far.² To you, O seers who’re well-controlled, we have come to bow before you, O masters,³ with trusting hearts. He⁴ is in all the world the best of men.

The seer⁵ said:

The odour of seers who are far advanced⁶ is wafted abroad, blown about⁷ by the wind. Keep off from here, O Sakra, stay where you are.⁸ This odour cannot be endured by devas.

Sakra said:

Yea, the odour of seers who are far advanced is wafted abroad, blown about by the wind, but it is sweet and pleasant, and is not disagreeable to me.⁹

The seers said:¹⁰

This seer, the noble Sarabhanga, is well-trained and free

¹ Sakra aha. This must be supplied, since this stanza can only be assigned to Sakra, as the parallel one is in J. 5. 138. The plural forms misled Senart to assign it to the kings.

² Literally “from far you have been heard by (of) us”, dārū śrutā ma, where ma is gen. pl. of 1st pers. pron. Cf. Edgerton, Gram. § 20. 16.

³ Reading dhyā for dāya which Senart has printed as first element of the compound dhyāprasanmacitā, where, however, it is inconstruable.

⁴ Ayam, referring presumably to Sarabhanga. But ayam is suspect as Sarabhanga, as in this stanza he is not in general welcoming all the seers in general. There has been no allusion as yet, in the metrical version, that is, to Sarabhanga, their master.

⁵ Anusissa according to J. 5. 138.

⁶ Literally “been made to become for long”, cirahāvitānāṁ. J. has cirahākhāṭiṁ, which J. trans. (5. 74), paraphrases “aged”! With piṣṭhāṁ gandhās, “the odour of seers”, Miss I. B. Horner, in a letter, compares the Pali expressions śīdhi (Miln. 19; J. 3. 142) and sataṁ gandho (Dh. 54).

⁷ Erīta. “Pali id. to eretī, Sk. ērī to ēravī, which takes the preverb ē only in the Veda, and no ērīa ppp. seems recorded even there” (B.H.S.D.).

⁸ Literally “sit down”, niṣīda, but this verb sounds strange following a command to go away, and the reading is, therefore, doubtful. J. 5. 138 reads ito parakhuma sahasanēta, “Go away hence, O thousand-eyed one.”

⁹ In J. 5. 139 Sakra’s reply contains six pādas, and there are in the MSS. of the Mhuv. some isolated words which indicate that originally there were six here also.

¹⁰ In J. 140 the seers recite this stanza in reply to two stanzas of Anusissa in the first of which he informs them that Sakra is present, and in the second asks them who is competent to reply to his questions. The Mhuv., however, has transferred the first stanza to an earlier part of the narrative (see p. 367, text).
from lust, (368), an enlightened teacher¹ and well-disciplined, let him then answer the questions.

[Anuśīṣya said to Sarabhanga]²:

O Son of Vaśiṣṭha,³ the good seers beg that you answer these questions. For this is the rule among men, O wise one, that the task should be his who has come to old age.⁴

Sarabhanga said:

Now I give you leave to ask whatever question it is in your heart to ask. So do you speak, and I will answer your questions. For I have true knowledge of this world and the next.

The king then asked⁵:

With regard to those who have been and gone,⁶ Daṇḍakīn, Nālikera, Arjuna and King Kalabhā, tell me the bourne of those men of wicked deeds. Where were they reborn for that they had done harm to seers?

Sarabhanga replied:

With regard to those who have been and gone, Daṇḍakīn, Nālikera, Arjuna and King Kalabhā, understand what the bourne of these men of wicked deeds was, (369) and where the violators of seers were reborn.

¹ Reading ācārya buddho for ācārya budhō. J. 5. 140 has ācāriyaputalo, “teacher’s son”, a way of saying “a teacher born and bred”.
² Supplied from the prose of J. 5. 140, where the seers prevail upon Anuśīṣya (= Sk. Anuśīṣya) to approach Sarabhanga and ask him to answer the questions. Senart, however, prints ṛṣayogahansaḥ in brackets, thus assigning the stanzas to the seers.
³ A conventional term of address, especially to a seer, see vol. I, p. 32, n. 2.
⁴ There seems little doubt that the Mhav. text here is corrupt. It reads Eko hi dhamma manushejaya paṇḍite yam vṛṣṭamāndhānati tasya bhāro. Senart renders this, “car tel est le privilège du sage parmi les hommes: il porte à son choix les fruits de tout arbre, c’est à dire, tu es prêt d’avance à resoudre n’importe quelle question”. He comments on this, “c’est une façon de dire bien contournée.” It is worse than that. Not only do the words dhamma paṇḍite form a strange expression for “the privilege of a seer,” but the use of bhāro in the sense of “fruit” is unusual and forced. The two pādas become intelligible if we emend vṛṣṭamāṇdhaṇaḥ into vṛṣṭham (or vṛṣṭham) aṣcathāṁ an in the corresponding Pali (J. 5. 140). It then only remains to read paṇḍita, voc. sg. for the loc. paṇḍita to reach the rendering given above.
⁵ In J. 5. 141, it is Sakka who first puts his questions, later giving way to the kings to ask theirs.
⁶ Yathā abhād ? “as to how he (and the rest) was (and is no more).” Cf. J. 5. 143 yathā abhā, explained by the Com. as yo nāma abhā.

For that Daṇḍakīn trampled the seer in the mud, he with his wealth and his realm was utterly destroyed. He fell into the hell Kakkhula where bodies¹ become fiery embers.² Arjuna fell headlong into the hell Saktiśīla for that he had violated Angīrassa Gautama,³ the ascetic seer who had so long lived the brahma-life.

And as for Nālikera who violated the self-controlled religious men after inviting them to eat and drink with him, in the other world dogs attack him and devour him as he lies writhing on the ground.

Kalabhā who mutilated that religious man, the seer Kyāntivādin, the harmless recluse, fell into Avici, the fiery, scorching, terrible hell.

He who has heard of hells like these and seen whole kingdoms stricken down will deal justly with recluse and brāhmaṇ, and acting thus he will gain the heavenly place.

The kings said:

You have answered⁴ what I asked you. Now I ask you another question and do you reply to it.

(370) What, I ask you,⁵ can a man kill without feeling remorse? What do seers recommend that men should put away?

Sarabhanga replied:

One may kill anger and never repent it. Seers recommend that one should put away jealousy. One should bear with rude speech no matter who utters it. Good men say that this power of forbearance is hard to overcome.⁶

The kings said:

It may be possible to bear with the rude speech of two

² Reading śphulingajātā, for jātā which would give “nets of embers.”
³ Called Gautama simply in the prose version.
⁴ Literally “you have overcome”, abhāhāvati. But Senart rightly doubts the correctness of the reading.
⁵ So, for su = svād, interrogative particle. According to Senart the form so corresponds to the metrically lengthened sa of the parallel Pali verse, J. 5. 141. Cf. B.H.S.D. It may be added here that in J. this and the following questions are asked by Sakka (Śakra).
⁶ The Mhav. does not contain the question to which these last two sentences form the answer. For the question see J. 5. 141.
men, that of a superior and that of an equal. But how may one bear with the speech of an inferior? Tell me this, O Kauṇḍinya.1

Śarabhanga replied:

Men bear with the speech of a superior because of fear, and with the speech of an equal to avoid a quarrel. But when a man bears with the speech of an inferior, good men say that this is forbearance at its strongest.

And how can you be sure about a man who is outwardly well-behaved2 that he is a superior, an equal or an inferior? Good men may present a rough exterior. (371) Therefore one should bear with the speech of all and sundry.

Not even a great royal army can win so great an advantage in a fight as the good man wins by forbearance. Enmities3 are quelled4 by forbearing men.

The kings5 said:

We are gratified5 at your well-spoken reply. Now I ask you another question and do you tell me the answer. What kind6 of man do you call a moral man? What kind of man do you call a wise man? What kind of man do you call a good man? What kind of man is it whom fortune never deserts?

Śarabhanga replied:

Whoso is self-controlled in act and word and thought, does no wickedness, nor does unkindness to anyone in the world, such a man do I call a moral man.

---

1 The clan name of Śarabhanga.
2 There is a difficult word here, catuchannarūpam. Senart believes that his reading is supported by the Com. on the corresponding Pali catumathārūpam (J. 5. 142) which explains it, cātūḥ sīyapadhātī paṭiccānrasadbhāvam. That is to say, catuchannarūpam may allude to a man who is “clothed” in the “four” departments, or is perfect to all outward appearance.
3 Vīpasamati, "Mindful for Sk. vy-ūpa-lam" (B.H.S.D.). J. 5. 143 has here upasamati = vīpasamati.
4 Again it is Sakka, not the kings, who in J. 5. 146 asks this question.
5 Anumodayāno, if it is to stand, is causal in middle or passive sense.
6 The text here has throughout katuvidham "how many kinds of?" The sense is obviously "what kind of?" and the corresponding Pali (J. 5. 140) has accordingly kathamūḍham. But Senart says that the MS. reading is too certain to admit of emendation.

---

1 Or "set out to", prayed.
2 Or 'temporal', kālāyata. J. 5. 146 is very different here. It has kālābhajam (v.l. gatam) aitapadām vihācati "prompt with good word in season to advise" (J. trans.).
3 The text here has a lacuna representing the first element of a compound ending in viḍham. The apparatus affords no clue to restoration and the corresponding páda in J. is entirely different.
5 Anumodayaṁa. See p. 308, n. 2.
6 Prajñopaka, literally "associates of wisdom". Upaga, variant upaga "pertaining to", here probably used, as B.H.S.D. suggests, by analogy with kuloṣṭha, said of a monk "belonging to a certain family."
7 Reading mrityo, corresponding to Pali maccia of J. 5. 148 for the text manye, "methinks", etc., which is out of place in a question, though less so in the reply on the next page. But in both places the correction mrityo is called for, especially as a nominative subject to bhuti is required.
(373) Sarabhanga replied:

By consorting with the old, the wise, the learned, questioning them and holding fast to their replies, harking to and heedng their good words, by such conduct a mortal man becomes wise.

The wise man perceives the truth concerning the pleasures of the senses, that they are ill, impermanent and liable to change. Perceiving this he shuns desire as one of the things of terror, one of the things that is like to destroy him.

Thus freed from passion, all hatred quite removed, he will diligently promote the growth of love, and living thus with loving heart, kindly and compassionate, he will pass on to the heavenly place.

Such were the verses recited by the good man by way of giving his eloquent replies. Whoso will live in perfect accordance with these, will escape beyond the range of the King of Death.

Brahma, Indra and the Three-and-Thirty devas were delighted at these eloquent words. The glorious beings were greatly stirred, and taking reverential leave repaired in ecstasy to the city of the devas.

Of great profit thus was the coming of Asamaka, Bhimaratha (374) and Udgata the king of Kalinga. For to them all there came a riddance from the passion for sensual pleasures.

The kings said:

Even so, O knower of other men’s hearts, we one and all have won riddance of the passion for pleasures of sense.

---

1 Literally “make opportunity”, okasa harohi. Here and in the next stanza okasa is Senart’s emendation, influenced by okasa of J. 5. 150, for ekhamya of the MSS. Edgerton, however, in B.H.S.D. (s.v. ekhamya) is of opinion that the latter word should stand, and should even be regarded as the right and original word of J. also. The sense, then is “make absolute assurance that we may attain, etc.” But it is a debatable point whether this gives a sense more appropriate to the context.

2 Literally “fill your body with”, pharati kiyam. Pharati = Pali id., Sk. sparati, sapharati.

3. In J. 5. 151 these verses are recited by the Master himself to sum up the teaching of the Jataka, just before he identifies the birth.

4. In J. 5. 148 has pharati dosam, “he will expel sin.”

5. In J. 5. 150, this stanza is spoken by the Great Being (Bodhisattva) i.e. Sarabhanga, and comes before the summing up by the Master.
and Śāriputra was Aśṭaka. The powerful Maudgalyāyana was Bhimaratha, and I was Sarabhanga. Thus understand this Jātaka.

Then, too, did I preach the dharma to a congregation of devas and men, just as I have now done also.

Here ends the Jātaka of Sarabhanga.

THE THIRTY MONKS

At Benares thirty boon companions went out to a park. The mother of one of them was dead and had been reborn among the devas. She had mastered the dharma at the time the wheel of dharma was set rolling, and she now remembered her son. Because of her love for her son, she loved all his companions as much as she did him.

Now in Benares there was a courtesan named Kāśikā. And why was Kāśikā the courtesan so called? As a maturing of good karma she came to have a lovely body, so that her fee was the whole of a thousand pieces of money. That was why she was called Kāśikā. Upārdhakāśikā was Kāśikā’s sister, and she also like Kāśikā, as a maturing of former karma came to have a lovely body. But she had only one eye, and that a red one. For that reason her fee was half a thousand pieces of money.

The boon companions said to Kāśikā, “Come and serve us.” But she, under the control of that deva, refused to go and

1 Aśṭamaka in the story.
2 Gośthika, in this sense BSk., but not Pali, corresponds to AMg. goṣṭhīya, -iga (B.H.S.D.). In the Pali texts it is these and not the five monks already mentioned (p. 313) who are designated bhaddavaggiya "the good group" or "group of high standing." See I. B. Horner, Bh. of Disc. 4, p. 31, n. 2, for references to Pali commentaries on the meaning of this term. But the account of their conversion as given in the Mhu. differs considerably from that at V. 1. 23f.
3 Literally "she was worth", kamati, cf. Pali khamati.
4 Kāśikāhāmi. For this sense of kāśi see B.H.S.D., where Edgerton refers to the same meaning given the Pali kāsī by the Com. on V. 1. 28f. See also Miss I. B. Horner’s long note on the same passage in Bh. of Disc. 4, p. 398. Cf. D.P.N. s.v. Addhakhāsi.
5 Upasthānakāsi. Cf. p. 37 (text).
6 Addhikāsi. See p. 333, n. 1.
7 I.e., the deceased mother of one of the young men.

Pūrṇa the Son of Maitrāyāṇi

(377) The Exalted One was staying in Benares teaching devas and men, and so on.

Now another group of thirty men happened to be going along the road not far from Rṣivadana. The Exalted One, in order to do them a kindness, sat down by the roadside. When they saw the Exalted One they advanced to bow at

1 Cf. Dh. 146.
2 Balavasibhiiva. See vol. 1, p. 43, n. 2.
3 Literally "describing the occasion in detail," vistareṇa nidanāṃ kriyā, i.e., as such occasions are generally described.
his feet. Then the Exalted One converted them all to the state of having control over the powers, initiated them with the formula of "Come, monks," and ordained them. Such was the initiation, ordination and admission into monkhood of these venerable thirty men.

The Exalted One was staying in Benares, in the Deer Park at Rśīvadana, teaching devas and men, and so on.

Now in the land of the Kośalas there was a village named Dronavastuka, where there lived a certain brāhmaṇa, who was rich, wealthy, opulent, having great possessions and property, money, treasuries and granaries, abundance of gold, silver and other resources, a large number of female and male slaves and servants, elephants, horses, goats and sheep. This rich brāhmaṇa had a brāhmaṇa wife, named Maitrāyaṇī, who was gracious, lovely, distinguished of mien, and endowed with the flower of beauty to perfection. Maitrāyaṇī had a young son named Pūrṇa, who was gracious and handsome, of fresh beauty, virtuous and dignified. He had rendered service to former Buddhas, had broken his bonds, had knowledge of the Aryan truths, and was in his last existence. Pūrṇa had heard that King Suddhodana had a son named Maitrayaṇī.1 This rich brāhmaṇa had a young son named Pūrṇa, who was gracious and handsome, of fresh beauty, virtuous and dignified. He had rendered service to former Buddhas, had broken his bonds, had knowledge of the Aryan truths, and was in his last existence. Pūrṇa had heard that King Suddhodana had a son named Maitrayaṇī. He had a young son named Pūrṇa, who was gracious and handsome, of fresh beauty, virtuous and dignified. He had rendered service to former Buddhas, had broken his bonds, had knowledge of the Aryan truths, and was in his last existence.

King Suddhodana had a son named Dronavastuka, where there lived a certain brāhmaṇa, who was rich, wealthy, opulent, having great possessions and property, money, treasuries and granaries, abundance of gold, silver and other resources, a large number of female and male slaves and servants, elephants, horses, goats and sheep. This rich brāhmaṇa had a brāhmaṇa wife, named Maitrāyaṇī, who was gracious, lovely, distinguished of mien, and endowed with the flower of beauty to perfection. Maitrāyaṇī had a young son named Pūrṇa, who was gracious and handsome, of fresh beauty, virtuous and dignified. He had rendered service to former Buddhas, had broken his bonds, had knowledge of the Aryan truths, and was in his last existence. Pūrṇa had heard that King Suddhodana had a son named Maitrayaṇī. He had a young son named Pūrṇa, who was gracious and handsome, of fresh beauty, virtuous and dignified. He had rendered service to former Buddhas, had broken his bonds, had knowledge of the Aryan truths, and was in his last existence.

When the Exalted One left home, Pūrṇa also on the same day left home and went to a retreat in the Himalayas. He there embraced the religious life of a seer, achieved the four meditations, attained the five super-knowledges and became a seer of great magic and power. He had twenty-nine young seers as pupils, all of whom were masters of the six Vedāṅgas, had achieved the four meditations, attained the five super-knowledges and possessed great magic and power. He said to his pupils, "A Buddha has appeared in the world. He is staying in Benares, in the Deer Park at Rśīvadana, teaching men the dharma which is fair in the beginning, in the middle and in the end, profitable, well-articulated and absolutely perfect, and he reveals to them the perfectly pure and clean brahma-life.

"All the skandhas are without refuge: they are afire, full of terrors and untrustworthy are they, without substance," so does Gotama proclaim.

1 A paraphrase of vihāṣṭaladdo vihāṣṭakārtirikero. The first compound is easily explained, "the renown of whom is proclaimed." But the second is difficult. Does it imply a fame that is proclaimed in writing, rekhā being = lokhā "writing"? Even so, the compound is hard to construe, "having the writing of a proclaimed renown." Senart lists the compound in his index, but has no note on it. Neither is it given in B.H.S.D.
2 Alluding to Asita, whose proclamation of the Buddha is described in the same terms. See vol. 2, p. 33 (text). The four grounds on which the proclamation is based are explained on p. 43 (text) as consisting of four qualities of the thirty-two marks. The translation of the former passage (2. p. 30) is to be emended, as Asita is there "proclaiming" (vihāra) the Buddha on four grounds (caturki kārane) not "explaining" (vihārita) what the four grounds were. The wrong rendering of ekāṭhāna, there, is due to this mistaken interpretation.
3 See, e.g., vol. 1, p. 364.
4 i.e., "Six limbs" of the Vedas, or the six subjects, and the corresponding works dealing with each, which comprised the study of the Vedas. See Suyājana.
"Let us then, young men, go to Benares, to the Deer Park at Rṣivadana, (379) to see Gotama, the Exalted One. For it is good to see such Tathāgatas, Arhans and perfect Buddhas and to worship1 them." "So be it," said the young men in answer to Pūrṇa. [And they came and saw Gotama]2 the Exalted One as he revealed the brahma-life. They saw that he was endowed with the thirty-two marks of a Great Man and with the eighty lesser characteristics; that his body was radiant; that he was gifted with the eighteen special attributes of a Buddha;3 that he was strong4 with the ten powers of a Buddha; that he was endowed with the thirty-two marks of a Great Man and the eighty lesser characteristics; that his body was radiant; that his faculties and mind were turned inwards and that his mind was the perfection of consummate restraint and self-control; that his faculties were turned inwards and that his mind was under control, as he had attained its true state. He was transparent as a pool, unmottled by either the yellow or the red. They beheld him, his mind became exceeding serene. He stood erect like a sacrificial pillar in the state of having mastery over the powers. And when he had attained that state he addressed the Exalted One in these seemly verses:

(380) Glad am I, O kinsman of the sun,5 that when thou wast in Tuṣita thou didst become an elephant, snow-white like Hima's summit, and didst enter a womb for the last time.

Glad am I, O kinsman of the sun, that thy mother and thy father in this world were both of comely form, and wast born in the family of a great king.

Glad am I, O kinsman of the sun, that thou didst come down and expose thyself to the world of life but wast untouched by aught of it, nor defiled by gall, blood and phlegm.

Glad am I, O kinsman of the sun, that those who saw thy golden beauty felt perfect joy of heart, like that of snakes when they follow a crimson thread.

Glad am I, O kinsman of the sun, that thou madest the earth to tremble when thou wast born for the sake of the welfare of men, and that after being born thou didst take seven strides.

Glad am I, O kinsman of the sun, that when thou wast born, O Sage, Guhyaka lords held up a sunshade and fans on both sides of thee.

Glad am I, O kinsman of the sun, that as soon as thou wast born there sprang up two wells of water, the one warm and the other cold.

Glad am I, O kinsman of the sun, that thou didst go forth from home renouncing the pleasures of men, the seven treasures and the four continents.

Glad am I, O kinsman of the sun, that, leaving thy queen and thy folk and renouncing the seven fair treasures, thou didst make an end of birth and death.

(381) Glad am I, O kinsman of the sun, that a great...

1 Reading paryūpāsanāya for paryūpāsanā of the text.
2 Lacuna in text.
4 From this point several of the adjectives are nom. case, as though the construction of the sentence was overlooked. Before the end of the passage the acc. is restored.
5 See p. 67, n. 2.
6 See p. 67, n. 3.

1 Literally "it is agreeable to me," priyā me.
2 Literally "of the family or clan of the thousand-rayed one," daśāda-raṁśaṁgaṇaṁ.
3 Phaniḥ ānugatā va rāhastutram. The simile is obscure.
radiance uprose when the Exalted One’s heart won deliverance, O Hero, and men became entirely happy.

Glad am I, O kinsman of the sun, that this noble congregation, calm and perfectly joyful, has to-day been converted by the Conqueror. O Vanquisher of thy foes, thou dost near thy destiny.

Glad am I, O kinsman of the sun, that thy vow thou madest of yore has now come to pass, O Saviour of the world. Thy vow and its fulfilment have prospered.

Glad am I, O kinsman of the sun, that thy cry of “In all the habitations of men there is none equal to me” permeated the ten quarters. Thou hast reached the highest sphere in accordance with thy nature.

All hail! Happy and whole is the Exalted One. This task of thine doth prosper. All hail! By thee has Namuci been overcome and all his host. All hail! this world and the world beyond are known to thee.

All hail! Sahampati entreated thee. All hail! Thou didst assent, O Hero. All hail! Thou didst set rolling the wheel of dharma with its twelve parts.

All hail! Thou didst cry out with a lion’s roar. All hail! There is no one anywhere to gainsay thee. All hail! The dharma has been attained by the Conqueror. All hail! There is no envy of thee, O Noble One.

All hail! I have the deva-eye. All hail! I have the superhuman ear. In the Himalayas I saw Māra. All hail! Now I have seen thine encounter with him.

(382) Here I have won the five super-knowledges. All hail! Here is the docility of pupils. All hail! We do not associate with evil.

All hail! We know the king of dharma.

All hail! We are come to the refuge. All hail! We have understood the Four Truths. All hail! We have assurance in thy dharma. All hail! We have attained unto mastery.

Thus then in the presence of the Exalted One, on the road mentioned, in Benares, in the Deer Park did the venerable Pūrṇa rejoice and exult at having attained the dharma.

Here ends the story of Pūrṇa the son of Maitrāyaṇi.

The Exalted One, perfectly enlightened and having realised the aim he had set himself, was staying in Benares, in the Deer Park at Rājivadana, teaching devas and men, and so on.

In the land of the Avantis there was a town called Markaṭa where there lived a wealthy brāhmaṇa, who was the household priest and tutor of King Ujjhebhaka Toṇehāraka. He was rich and opulent, having great possessions and property, money, treasuries and granaries, abundance of gold and silver and other resources, a large number of female and male slaves and servants, elephants, horses, goats and sheep. He belonged to the Kātyāyanaka clan, and had two sons, one named Nalaka and the other Uttara.

Uttara was the elder. Nalaka, the younger, was clever, skilful, intelligent, of quick understanding and keen wit. Their uncle was named Asita, a seer who dwelt in a hermitage among the forest dwellers.
in the Vindhyas, in the land of the Avantis, with a company of five hundred pupils. He lived on wild roots and fruits and on gleanings, and taught the five hundred young men to recite the mantras and the Vedas.

(383) Uttara went there and studied the Vedas. When he had recited them, he came to his father and before him and other brāhmans proficient in the Vedas he underwent an examination. And while he was being examined Nālaka picked up all the Vedas. And when he had thus heard the Vedas recited by his brother, he, too, was examined before his father and the brāhmans who were proficient in the Vedas. They were amazed, and exclaimed, "Behold the intelligence of this young man."

His parents then told him that a Buddha had appeared in the world, and said to him, "Go and take up the religious life." So he went to the Vindhyas and embraced the religious life of a seer in the hermitage of his uncle, Asita the seer. By devoting himself all the time to endeavour, effort, exertion and vigilance, he achieved the four meditations and attained the five super-knowledges.

Now the Exalted One had awakened to the supreme perfect enlightenment and had set rolling the noble wheel of dharma. He was staying in Benares, in the Deer Park at Rishivadana, living a life of service to devas and men and enabling hundreds of thousands of beings to attain immortality. Then Asita the seer said to his pupil, "A Buddha has appeared in the world. Go east and take up the religious life." So he left the seer's retreat and in due course reached Benares.

In Benares there lived six self-styled teachers, Kāśyapa Pūraṇa, Maskarin Gosālikāputra, Ajīta Keśakambalin, Kakuda Kātyāyana, Sañjaya Vēraṭikāputra and Nirgrantha Jāṭiīputra. Nālaka went to these six self-styled teachers, but they did not satisfy his mind.

Now there are four great treasures, the "shell" in Benares, the "lotus" in Mithilā, the pingala in Kalinga and the.

elapata in Takṣaśilā.1 Just then the monthly festival in honour of the "shell" was being held. To it there came as guests the Nāga kings, the guardians of treasures. (384) There the Nāga king Elapatra posed questions, saying that whoever could answer them would be given his daughter and a thousand pieces of gold.2

Through being sovereign of what is a man a king? How does he become a slave of passion?3 How does he become free of passion? And how does he come to be called a weakling?

The Exalted One replied:

A man is a king when he is sovereign in relation to the six senses.4 When he is excited by his senses5 he becomes

---

1. See vol. 2, p. 27, n. 3.
2. Auyuyoga dels. Here not exactly "passed an examination," as Edgerton (B.H.S.D.) has it. Cf. n. 3.
3. I.e., while he was reciting the Vedas.
4. I.e., by listening to his brother. See next sentence.
5. Sātāravratītā. For pratijñā, Pali pratīñā, see B.H.S.D. and P.E.D.
the slave of passion. When he is not excited he becomes rid of passion. He who is excited is said to be a weakling.

Elapatra asked:

By what is the weakling carried away? What does the wise man shake off? How does a man come to have freedom from bondage? This I ask thee: do thou tell me.

The Exalted One replied:

The weakling is carried away by the ties of attachment. The wise man shakes off his bondage. He who is not tied by any bond is said to have freedom from bondage.

Elapatra asked:

Buddha, Buddha, art thou called. Is this a dream or is it as it does appear? Speak and dispel my doubt.

A deva replied:

Here you have beheld face to face the Great Hero who abides in the Deer Park, like a lion in a mountain cave, proclaiming the best of dharmas.

(385) Verily, after a long time we now shall see the body of the nobly wise Buddha bright with the starlike marks. Verily, after a long time we now shall hear the speech that sounds like Brahmā’s voice, proclaiming what is impermanent, ill and without self, and annihilating all the vices.

Hearing the fresh sound of this Brahmā-like voice, we shall win deliverance from false sects by drawing near to the Valiant Man.

Now that we have beheld the great Seer who lives for the sake of the world’s welfare, the greatly glorious Kāśyapa, who has insight into the good, who is the root of all that

1 Reading candram to for camariva (= “like the deer.”).
2 Although the MSS do not indicate it, Senart is right in saying that there is a lacuna here. The context requires a sentence to express the result of the actions denoted by the two participles. Instead it abruptly goes on to speak of what happens to those who pursue a different line of conduct.
3 A lacuna representing the subject of the sentence, which the MSS give as the inexplicable śabālīkā.
4 Sāteṣi, BSk. and Pali, “to destroy”, “cut”.
5 There would seem to be here an omission of some verses in which the luckless man (or men) in hell is made to pray for release. Senart rightly points out the impropriety of these words in the mouth of a deva, and he would assign the words to Elapatra. But it seems better to regard the whole passage as entirely independent of the tale of Elapatra. See p. 352, n. 3.
6 A deva, agreeing with Senart, that sounds like Brahmā’s voice, proclaiming what is impermanent, ill and without self, and annihilating all the vices.
7 See p. 382, n. 3.
8 Lacuna.
9 This verse is obscure, as indeed is the whole passage on account of its abrupt introduction into the narrative. The verb vyākṣaṇa has no object. If we are right in assuming that the passage consists of a eulogy of the Buddha Kāśyapa, it would seem out of place to appeal to him to proclaim Maitreya. It was for him to proclaim rather Śākyamuni Gotama. Besides Mātreyagotra, is nom. agreeing with tvam the subject of vyākṣaṇa. But even if Śākyamuni is the subject of the eulogy, it is difficult, as Senart admits, to understand why at this point he is urged to proclaim a future Buddha.

1 Yogakṣemin BSk., Pali yogakkhemin.
2 Yoga, of which there are four, identical with the four oghas—or “floods”, namely, kāma, bhava, doṣthi and avijjā. See P.E.D. for references.
3 Here begins another set of verses in a different metre in eulogy of Kāśyapa. The only explanation of their insertion here is that the compilers may have remembered that the history of Elapatra (Erakapatta) as recounted in the original tale preserved in DhA. (i.e.) began with his life as a monk under the Buddha Kāśyapa.

The Questions of Nālaka
Nālaka Kātiyāna¹ bowed his head at the Exalted One's feet and said to him:

My father is the household priest of King Tonekhāra. He is well versed in augury and adept in astrology.

In his compassion and moved by desire for my welfare, my father said to me, “A Buddha has appeared in the world. Go east and take up the religious life.”

And so, Lord, here I have come. Well would it be if thou wouldst ordain me”. The Tathāgata replied in words that were full of assurance.

He addressed the brāhmaṇa of Kātiyāna’s clan and said to him, “Come, monk.” Such was his initiation and ordination.

The venerable Kātiyāna⁶ said:

I fully understood all that Asita said to me, that it was the truth.² Now I ask thee, O Gotama, who art accomplished in all things.

(387) To one who has taken up the homeless life and seeks the life of a monk, tell, O Sage, what is this state of being a sage, man’s highest destiny?

The Exalted One replied:

The state of a sage that you ask about, O Nāla, is hard and difficult to attain. But come, I’ll tell you what it is.

Be steadfast and strong. Maintain your equanimity whether you be reviled or spoken well of in the village. Keep ill-will away from your mind. Be calm and humble.

Women high and low, like flames of fire in a wood, come forth to seduce the sage, but let them not succeed in doing so.

Abstain from sexual indulgence, and abandon pleasures high and low.⁶ Be frank and free with both the timid and the stout.

Regarding others like yourself and yourself like others, cause no one to be harmed or killed.

Give up even your small desire. Nay, be wholly without desire, and therefore freed.

Abandon desire and greed to which the common herd are addicted. The wise man will follow the right path and pass beyond the danger of hell.

¹ Reading, as Senart suggests, vandita for vanditam of the text. He also suggests that the Pali (Sn. 702) vanditam should be changed to the nom. pl. vanditā. As the text in both versions stands, the meaning would be “the equanimity which is reviled and praised”. It is obvious that Senart’s emendation gives a far better sense, for it makes the point that the monk is to preserve his equanimity whether men praise or revile him, and not his attribute. E. M. Hare, Women Cadences, p. 105, unaccountably takes samānihāra as though it were equivalent to samānihāram, and translates “Induce the quiet state of a recluse—mocked at and praised alike by the village.”

² Reading anumattā “not raised” = anumattā (Sn. 702), instead of anumatta, “approved of”, which clearly makes no sense here.

³ Literally “let them not seduce him,” tam mā pralobhaye, where pralobhaye is the augmentless aorist, 3rd pl. Cf. lobhaye, vol. 2, p. 425 (text) and see Edgerton, Gram., p. 229.

⁴ Par avara = Pali, id.

⁵ Literally, “not obstructed and not impeded,” aviruddho asamuddho. Sn. 704 has aviruddho asuddho, which Hare translates “gentle and dispassionate.” "Gentle” surely is a loose paraphrase for aviruddha. Faushell (S.B.E., X, p. 127 of Sn. trans.) renders the word “inoffensive”. Viruddha, among its secondary meanings, can have that of “hostile” or “adverse”, that is, it can have an active force, but samuddha, only be used, apparently, in its formal passive sense of “completely stopped or checked”, etc. If the reading is correct, therefore, both participles equally must be taken in a passive sense, and the verse interpreted to mean that the sage must not withhold himself in opposition to or aloof from the timid and the stout. There is another Pali parallel at Dh. 406, aviruddham viruddhasu, which Mrs. Rhys Davids (Min. Anth., p. 130) translates “who among standers, withstands not,” while Faushell (op. cit., p. 93 of Dh. trans.) translates “who is tolerant among the intolerant.” At Sn. 353, Hare translates aviruddha by “foe of none”.

⁶ Trasasthāvādā, properly of animals and plants, but here metaphorically used.

⁷ Pratipajjeya, from pratipajjate “to enter on a path,” restored by Senart after the Pali pratipajjaya of Sn. 706, for prativarjaya of the MSS. But the latter would give quite a good sense: “the wise man will avoid them.”

⁸ Tare narakam, “will surmount the hell.” This is a metaphorical use of the covetous and greedy, not necessarily as Hare, p. 105, renders, “cross man’s purgatory here.” The good man suffers no hell in this world or the next.
Then at dawn he will go down to the village to beg for alms. He will not indulge in loud begging nor rejoice in what the village offers.

When he has descended on a village the sage will not rush about in a hurry from house to house. (388) Chary of words as he begs for food, he does not make a speech when he has obtained it.

He will wander alone with his bowl in his hand, not dumb, though he seems to be so. He will not scorn a gift whatever it is, nor slight the giver.

He will say to him, "You have given; good was it of you. You have not given; good fortune be yours." In both cases he will keep the same frame of mind and avoid all harsh feelings.

1. Ṛkkhamulasaṃ he instead of Ṛkkhamulasaṃ he. See B.H.S.D. and P.E.D. If this is the sense of the word the verb abhinandaṇa must be translated twice over, "indulge", and "rejoice". It is hardly appropriate in English to speak of "rejoicing in loud begging". It is possible to avoid this duplication by taking Ṛkkaya in the sense of "invitation", as Fausboll does. Loose translates the corresponding Pali (Sn. 710). "Nor be o'erjoyed by alms offered or borne away." Senart says the Pali is "invited" and "invited" presumably are the alms the monk is invited to take." At Vism. 68 these two rules of a monk's conduct are expressed somewhat differently, namely as consisting of asahāna abhinandaṇā and abhikkhekaṇa, translated by Pe Maung Tin (Path of Purity, p. 78), "non-acceptance of invitation" and "and absence of wish for a meal to be served." 2. Abhihāra.

3. Āsāda is more than "come" simply. 4. Chinnakatha of broken speech. 5. It is surely better to read phāseṣara rather than have two negatives (na) in the sentence, the second of which Senart is forced to explain as explained. Senart's text has vaca (for vaca) prāpusṭum, and he explains the line as meaning "Que dans son désir d'obtenir de la nourriture, il n'interrompt pas ses exhortations pour mendier," an interpretation which is neither easy to explain nor appropriate to the context. The MSS. are definitely in favour of some form of prānapati, so that it is not justifiable to replace prāpusṭum with payutum, corresponding to payutum of the corresponding Pali verse (Sn. 711). The emendation prānapati "one who has obtained" which has been adopted for the translation here, is near enough to the MS. tradition and gives a reasonable sense.

6. Amūkta, Pali id., Sk. a-mūka. 7. Tasmā, id., "this or that..." But Sn. appam, "little".

8. Literally "He will be like" sadrīṣa, sc. what he was before. 9. Rukṣatā, subst. from rukṣa, "harsh", "rough", etc. Senart claims that the text here, rukṣatāna vinisātaya is superior to that of Sn. 712, rukṣham va upāvānivattati, "he returns to his tree." In support of Senart's claim it may be pointed out that the reading of the Pali would seem to imply that the text is done with instructions for the sage's conduct on his alms-round. But the very next verse (Sn. 713) is still concerned with the same subject, urging the sage to go about dumb, neither scorning the small gift nor despising the giver of it. It is out of place, therefore, for Sn. 712 to speak of his returning to his home at the foot of the tree.
THE QUESTIONS OF SABHIKA

388 THE MAHĀVASTU

The Beyond is not a future twice-repeated, nor is it merely a future once-repeated.1 Various are the courses of conduct revealed by the state of a recluse. This is what a man learns by observing the streams in chasms and ravines; their flood makes a loud roar. But the great ocean rolls on in silence. 

What is empty makes a noise: what is full is silent. The fool is like a pot not quite full;2 the wise is like a full pool. When the sage speaks much it is all on and about the goal. Because he knows nirvana he speaks much for the realisation of it.

He who is wise and moderate of speech, and though he knows, does not speak much, is a sage who merits the state of a sage, is a sage who has attained it.

Here end the Questions of Nālaka.

THE QUESTIONS OF SABHIKA

The Exalted One, perfectly enlightened and having attained the goal he had set himself, was staying in Benares, in the

1 This seems to be the only possible rendering, obscure though it is, of the line as it stands. Gunayeati has been taken as divisible into guna-ayati, which is, however, a strange, if not an impossible compound. If, on the other hand, gunayeati be taken as a causal of gunayati, we could, perhaps, still reach the same sense. The Pali (i.e., the Buddha) does not multiply the Beyond twice nor indeed once. This might conceivably be a way of saying that once nirvana is attained, there is no recurrence, either twice or once, of the process that led to it. Senart says of this line that he cannot make better sense of it than Fausboll (I.c.) did of the corresponding Pali (Sn. 714), which runs na pāram digunam yantu na idam eka gunam mutam. Fausboll translates "they do not go twice to the other shore. (this) is not once thought." The Māsou. version is na pāram avaytaddati ātipi cāsāma gunayeati, which would become nearer the Pali and a little more intelligible by the change of cāsāma into cāsām (ca-cham). Hare (I.c.) renders the Pali, "They are not you by twain." Yet single deem it not,3 the sense of which is by no means obvious. On the whole we may assume that the allusion is to the finality of nirvana, or to one of the groups of the four pratiyādās, courses of conduct, which are actually alluded to in the next line.

2 The text does not make it clear to whom this order was given.

3 From Pali sākhējanā, past pt. of sākhāyati, tekhet, "take her from home (start her in the religious life) and you will have a salary." The nurse is first mentioned in the next sentence.

4 Cf. Viśālakāshita, M. p. 201, n. 4.

5 Cf. Sn. pp. 91 ff.

6 In the Chinese version she is one of twins.

7 Miss 1. B. Horner, in a letter, gives a most interesting, and probably the correct, interpretation of this obscure passage. The Beyond (pāram), she suggests, is not here another world, but the state of happiness or delight, in a word the nirvana, which can be gained in meditation here and now in the present life. Once this meditative bliss has been experienced, the adept can regain it at any number of times. Hence this Beyond is not a once-repeated future. Nor is it a twice-repeated future, because each recurring experience is completely identical with the first.

8 Unakumbha. The Pali, Sn. 721, has ad̄d̄hakumbha "a half-filled pot".

9 As being one of triplets(?).

10 The text does not make it clear to whom this order was given. It has simply nām pravājīti na srihitā le bhejyati, "take her from home (start her in the religious life) and you will have a salary." The nurse is first mentioned in the next sentence.

11 Literally "was not able to understand farther," na sākhāti uttaram sandhāsum. Agramākhāyati. Ākhāyati in pass. sense. Cf. Pali aggam ahkhāyati. B.H.S.D. does not note this usage.

12 Gātingata.

13 Vaijākaranas, here, of course, with reference to brāhmaṇa scriptures, not to the ninth division of the Buddhist canon so named. See p. 120, n. 4.

14 Vethayiran from vethayati, vethēti, Pali id., "MIndic form of Sk. veṣṭ" (B.H.S.D.).
torch. In the market-place in the centre of the city he made this announcement. “Is there any one here skilled in words who will have a debate with me?" The people of Mathurā said to him, “Put out that torch. We have here a female Wanderer who is young, of tender years. She will debate with you on the seventh day from this, if that is, you will be able to hold debate with her; so eloquent is she.” He replied, “So be it, in seven days I will hold a debate with this female Wanderer, and you, sirs, must attend.”

Then the townsmen of Mathurā and the people of the surrounding districts summoned the female Wanderer, and said to her, “A brāhman from the south country has come, who is eloquent, proficient in the Vedas and eager to talk on matters of exposition. Can you hold a debate with him in seven days’ time?” She replied, “I am well able to hold a debate with this or any other brāhman. I, too, am eager to speak.”

When the townsmen of Mathurā heard the female Wanderer, bells were rung in the town at the cross-roads, at street-entrances and other places for making proclamations, and an announcement was made that the female Wanderer would on the seventh day hold a debate with an eloquent brāhman from the south country. All who wished to listen were to come. Platforms were set up around a stage. And when they heard of this a great crowd of the country people came to Mathurā.

Then the brāhman thought, “What sort of a Wanderer is she who is going to debate with me? What if I were to have a look at her?” So out of curiosity he went to the dwelling of the Wanderers to make inquiries. When he got there he asked, “Who is this Wanderer who is going to debate in public with the brāhman from the south country?” Those whom he asked pointed out the Wanderer to him sitting in her own cell, and reciting in a clear voice and with a torch. According to comm. on Thig. 60, “two-finger wit;” doyangulaprayā. Cf. Pali S.1 129 = Thig. 60. “According to comm. on Thig. 67, 1–5, the word refers to a feminine habit of taking grains of rice between two fingers to see if the rice is cooked enough.” (B.H.S.D.).

Now the brāhman was young and handsome, and the female Wanderer was young and handsome, too, and they fell completely in love with each other at first sight. The brāhman said to the female Wanderer, “Lady, I am in love with you.” She replied, “And I am in love with you.” He said, “Since it is so, lady, let us so arrange that we meet without anyone else knowing. We will come to an understanding before we debate in public. The one who is defeated must become the pupil of the other. There will be nothing strange in the woman being defeated by the man. But if you, a woman, defeat me I shall be reviled and despised by the whole crowd. People will say to me, ‘You were defeated by a mere woman’s two-inch wit.’ So, lady, arrange it that I defeat you there. Then you will become my pupil, and we can meet each other and no one will know of it.” The female Wanderer said, “So be it.” And the brāhman having made this plan with her went away.

Then on the seventh day many thousands of people gathered in the square arena. The king of Mathurā came, and the princes and counsellors, the townsmen with the treasurer at their head, the community of traders with the chief merchant at their head, and the college of brāhmins with the king’s chaplain at their head. The members of the eighteen guilds came, and recluse, brāhmins and heretical teachers. The brāhman, too, came, and the female Wanderer accompanied by several other female Wanderers, and when they had come into the middle of the throng they sat down on their seats.

1 Abhisamkāra, Pali abhisankhāra, properly “intent performance of an action.”
2 Sraddhābdhutin, “one who claims or professes the faith.”
3 Arthika, with instr. case.
5 The sole example cited in B.H.S.D.

1 Abhisamkāra, Pali abhisankhāra, properly “intent performance of an action.”
2 Sraddhābdhutin, “one who claims or professes the faith.”
3 Arthika, with instr. case.
5 The sole example cited in B.H.S.D.
The brāhmaṇ stood up and made an announcement to the king and the crowd, saying, “Gentlemen, we do a stupid and insensate thing when we enter into a debate with women. It would not be strange if I were to defeat this female Wanderer. Men would only say, ‘What is there wonderful in a woman being defeated by a man?’ But if the female Wanderer were to defeat me, then I should be reviled and despised by the whole crowd, and men would say to me, ‘You have been defeated by a mere woman’s two-inch wit.’ So I make this announcement before the king and the crowd. If this female Wanderer can defeat me in the presence of this crowd, then I shall be bound to become her pupil, while if I defeat her she must become mine.”

The assembly asked the female Wanderer, (393) “What do you think of what this brāhmaṇ says?” And she replied, “Let it be as he says.”

When this agreement had been made by the brāhmaṇ, he handed over his staff to the female Wanderer, and she in turn took off her cloak and gave it to the brāhmaṇ, as a mark of participating in the agreement. And so they spent that day in making statement and counter-statement, but neither was able to defeat the other. And as that day the whole week went by. Men who came home so very late from the meeting were asked by their womenfolk, “How is it that you are so late to-day, and all the week as well?” They replied, “Do you not know the reason why we are so late? There is a brāhmaṇ here who has come from the south country. He is proficient in the six Vedangas, adept in all the lore and in exposition. He has been debating a whole week with the female Wanderer, but he cannot defeat her.” The women said to their husbands, “You see then how clever women are. What man is there who can excel a woman in intelligence and in discussion?” The men thought, “If that brāhmaṇ be in any way defeated by that female Wanderer, then for all time the women will despise us and think us not worth a straw.”

The majority of the whole city became favourable to the male Wanderer rather than to the female. On the next day, when the crowd came together, the brāhmaṇ made a reply to the female Wanderer and she wilfully refrained from countering it. Then the crowd shouted “Hurrah! The victory is the brāhmaṇ’s. The female Wanderer is beaten.” The brāhmaṇ made her raise up his staff and hold his sunshade and shoes. She thus revealed herself in the eyes of the crowd to be in the state of pupillage. The
brâhman (394) went to the dwelling-place of the female Wanderer, and there they lived together to their mutual pleasure. As a result of frequent intercourse the female Wanderer became pregnant.

They then left Mathurâ and went travelling through the provinces of the south country. After nine or ten months they came to Śvetavalâkâ,1 where they lodged for the night. In the inn2 there the female Wanderer was delivered, and a boy was born, who was lovely, handsome, possessing the flower of perfect beauty. As the boy had been born in an inn they gave him the name Sabhika.3

The young brâhman was brought up by his parents. When in due course he had reached years of discretion,4 he was taught writing, numeration,5 mnemonics,6 and mathematics.7 He was taught all the lore of a Wanderer, and he became an eloquent preacher.

He sailed over the ocean as he sought for a wise man in one who was not wise.8 He wandered through the sixteen great provinces, and, coming to Benares, he went to the Exalted One in the Deer Park at Rishivadana.

Sabhika the Wanderer exchanged friendly and courteous greetings with the Exalted One, and sat down to one side. He then asked a question of the Exalted One.9

In doubt and perplexity I have come hither wishful to ask a question. The question that Sabhika now asks do thou, Lord, answer duly, properly, correctly and truthfully.

The Exalted One replied:

(395) From afar have you come hither, O Sabhika, wishful to ask a question. I will reply to your question and answer it duly, properly, correctly and truthfully.

When this had been spoken Sabhika the Wanderer said to the Exalted One:

What has a man attained that he should be called a monk? How does he come to be called gentle and tamed? How does one come to be styled a Buddha? This do I ask, and do thou, Lord, answer duly, properly, correctly and truthfully.

When this had been spoken the Exalted One said to Sabhika the Wanderer:

He who by a path he has himself made has won complete release and passed beyond all doubt, who has learnt what cessation of becoming is and what coming-to-be, who has finished his life in the world and is no more liable to rebirth—he is a monk.

Ever patient and mindful, he harms no one in the world; he does not, puffed up with pride, contract any āśrama.8

Who in this world has developed his faculties (396) both those within and those without, who has plumbed this world and the world beyond, and awaits the end well-trained—he is the tamed man.

He who has scattered all false fancies, the ills of rebirth, passing away and coming-to-be, who is free of blemish, defilement and sin, and who has reached the stopping and ending of life—he is called a monk.10

---

1 The text (so MSS.) has here suvāta “pious”, which does not suit the context. It must be regarded as a mistaken Sk. equivalent of the BSk. suvāta or āsāma, corresponding to the Pali sorato, “gentle, kind, self-restrained”. See P.E.D. and B.H.S.D. The latter does not note the occurrence of suvāta here.
2 Vîhâra.
3 Utsanna, “excessive”, as in Pali uussanna, the adjective corresponding to uṣada, BSk. uṣada (see vol. I, p. 6, n. 1), from uṣyant. The Sk. utsanna (ud-säd) in the sense of “raised”, “exalted”, would not be quite inapposite, but the corresponding Pali, uṣada yassa na santi (Sn. 516), makes it clear that the former is the right interpretation here.
4 Na karo衍āsramam. The Pali has soratu so, “he is the gentle man.”
5 After Hare, op. cit., p. 78, for nirvikāya, “penetrating”.
6 Kâlaṁ raksatā.
7 Viśkhytta. Sn. 517 has viceṣya, “discerning”, with which both Fausboll and Hare take kālpâti (see next note) in the sense of times.
8 Kalpâti. See B.H.S.D. for this sense of the word.
9 Catupâpātām, i.e. cata-uṭpâpātām. Senart retains cata for cuta, the BSk. and Pali forms for cyuta, as he cannot decide whether the form is due to a scribal error or whether it is not the form found in the original text.
10 In Sn. 517, this is the definition of a “Buddha”.
Then Sabhika the Wanderer, delighted at the words of the Exalted One, asked him a further question:

What has a man attained that he should be called a brāhmaṇ? How does a man come to be called a recluse, and how “one who has bathed”? How does a man come to be called a pure Nāga? This, Lord, I ask thee. Do thou reply duly, properly, correctly and truthfully.

When this had been spoken the Exalted One said to Sabhika the Wanderer:

He who has kept away from all sins, who is stainless, well-composed and steadfast; he who has passed beyond the whole round of recurrent life, who has lived his life, and is no longer liable to rebirth—he is a brāhmaṇ.

He who is tranquil, having abandoned all merit and its maturing, he who is passionless, knowing this world and the world beyond, (397) who has overcome birth and death—such an one is truly called a recluse.

He who has washed away all his sins, within, without, in all the world; who does not again come to the world of time among devas and men who are subject to time—he is “one who has bathed”.

He who commits no wrong in the world, who sheds the bonds that tie him to all attachments, who is ever independent and free—such an one is truly called a Nāga.

Then Sabhika the Wanderer said to the Exalted One:

What has a man attained that he should be called an expert in knowledge? How do men say that one is learned and how do they say that one is energetic? And how does a man come to be styled a sterling man? This question do I ask thee, Lord, and do thou answer duly, properly, correctly and truthfully.

When this had been spoken the Exalted One said to Sabhika the Wanderer:

He who has tested all the experiences of recluses (and brāhmaṇs). He, rid of passion in all feelings, having passed beyond all feelings, is the expert in knowledge.

(398) He who has seen through illustrious individuality within and without, recognising that it is instinct with passion; he who has been delivered from the bond at passion's root, such an one is truly called a learned man.

He who has cast off his bonds, is full of striving; he who has realised the stopping of ill, who is rid of defilement and always protects others—he is truly called an energetic man.

He whose bonds have all been broken, within, without, in all the world, and is delivered from the bonds of passion, him do the very wise men call a sterling man.

---

1 Sn. in the Buddhist sense; and so for the other terms.
2 Bāheta, that is, sāheta, cf. Pali bāhīti.
3 Ayatī = ava-ātīya. Philologically this is the equivalent of Pali avocca, which form is, however, “not sufficiently cleared semantically” (P.E.D.), for it is used in the sense of “certainly”, “definitely”, “absolutely”, etc. The corresponding Pali verse (Sn. 519), has atīca, that is, atī-īya. The Mūla. text, however, may not be correct. One MS. has ayatya, which is possibly a corruption of atīya.
4 Punyāntāka, or, perhaps, “reward of merit,” or “maturity of merit.” Sn. 520 has piñāñcāpām “merit and sin,” or better, “good and evil” and as Senart says, the metre requires piñāñcāpām here also. In Mūla. 1. 516 (text) we have exactly the same expression as in Sn. 520.
5 Reading deveamanusyuhi kalpiyehi (instr. for loc.) on the analogy of deveamanussessu kalpiyessu of Sn. 521. In the text reading, deveamanusyuhi kalpiyati, the latter must bear the sense of “vain imaginings” (see p. 95, n. 8); it can hardly be a past part. pass. agreeing with āpākāri of the first pada. Sn. 521.
6 Reading, as Senart suggests, punāk sa for punar. The final me of the verse is difficult. Senart renders “pour moi”, “suivant moi”, that is, taking it as an ethnic dative. It would seem better to go farther than Senart in emending and restore the text as punar āhu śnadv āti, “they (the punar has been taken with the preceding clause) call him “one who has bathed.”
7 Āgām (sic for āgām) na karoti, the popular etymology of Nāga. See vol. 4, p. 35. n. 4.

---

1 Vedaka, Pali vedāgī, in the Buddhist sense, of course, not with reference to the Vedas. Cf. Nādr. 612, where vedāgī is defined as one having catuṣu magesu rānam, “knowledge of the four Paths.”
2 Viṣāyakā. Sn. 529 has viṣāya.
3 Vedānī, so translated here, as there is twice in the verse a play on the common root of veda “knowledge”, vedand, “feeling” or “sensation”.
4 Lacuna in text; the translation is supplied from Sn. 529.
5 Reading, as Senart suggests, amārīda, to correspond with amuśca (= amuśa) of Sn. 530, for abhāvati of the text.
6 Prāpāca, Pali pāpača, “a word which in Pali and BSk. is very hard to define” (Edgerton, B.H.S.D.). Cf. P.E.D.
7 Rāgabāhāra. Sn. 530 has rogamālam “root of disease.”
8 Pradhānānapāt, for pradhānānapāt, Pali padhānānapāt. Not given in the dictionaries, but cf. BSk. pradhāna (for pradhāna), Pali pādhaṇāna. See vol. 2, p. 120, n. 2. This definition of the energetic man differs considerably from that in Sn. 521.
9 Šāyati, sauvāra na rākṣati. But the text must be regarded as very doubtful.
Again did Sabhika the Wanderer ask a question of the Exalted One:

"Then there is the man who is a knower of the field," said Sabhika as he asked a question of the Sage. "How, I pray thee, is a man called a sage? This question I ask of thee, Lord, and do thou answer duly, properly, correctly and truthfully."

When this had been spoken the Exalted One said to Sabhika the Wanderer:

He who has control over all fields, of devas, of men and of Brahmā, (399) and is freed from every bond that lies at the root of the fields, such an one is truly called a knower of the field.

He who has tested all the treasures of devas, of men and of Brahmā, and is freed from bondage to any treasure—such an one is truly called an expert.

He who has tested both kinds of senses, those within and those without; who has overcome the root of light and the root of darkness—such an one is truly called a skilled man. He who knows the dharma of the good and the bad; who is emancipated of heart, within and without; who is honoured of devas and men and has escaped the contamination of ties—he is a sage.

Then Sabhika the Wanderer said to the Exalted One:

"What has the man attained that he should be called learned? Why is one called an Aryan? How does a man come to be called a man of good conduct? And what is a Wanderer? This question do I ask of thee, Lord. Do thou answer duly, properly, correctly and truthfully."

When this had been spoken the Exalted One said to Sabhika the Wanderer:

He who hears and understands all things, the blame-worthy and the blameless, in the worlds of devas and of men; (400) who is unselfish, ungrasping, pure and free from evil—such an one do they call a learned man.

He who has cut off all clavings and all āsravas: who has escaped his bonds, who goes no more to lie in a womb, and who has no delight in sinful things—such an one is truly called an Aryan.

He who has achieved all that can be achieved in conduct; who with perfect knowledge surmounts all things and is endowed with knowledge and conduct—he is truly called "one whose conduct is good."

He who, faring with understanding, eschews everything that bears ill fruit, above, below, between, in the worlds of

---

1 Kṣetra, alluding probably to the field of karma. But Sn. 543 has Kṣetra, "conqueror of the field of the senses" according to Hare, op. cit., p. 79, who here follows SnA. 2. 428.

2 Samyama, but the verbal form samyamya is surely needed here. It is curious to note that in the four instances where Sn. has viceṣya, "discerning", the Mhu. has a different verb each time; see p. 395. n. 7 (viparīta); p. 397, n. 2 (vicāra), samyama here, and vicāra again, n. 5.

3 Sārśrīmālaṁkāraṁ-ārdbhān. This compound would be more logically arranged as in Sn. 542, sabbākhetāṁmālaṁkāraṁ. But the exact meaning of mālakāra is obscure. P.E.D. says "fundamental bond (?)" or "set of causes (?)". Faure, op. cit., p. 93 renders "radical bond", and Hare, op. cit., p. 79, "all their roots and bines." Perhaps the expression becomes clearer if kṣetra is taken as "field of the senses". The bond then lies at the root, of the field, that is, the cause of sensual life, is attachment to the world.

4 Vicāra, for viceṣya of Sn. 525.

5 Kuśala, apparently with a play on the words kōṣa, "treasury" and kuśala. Our text, however, does not contain the question asking for the definition of this term.

6 Vicāra, for viceṣya of Sn. 536.

7 This translation is made from the corresponding Pali. The text has kṣetraṁ tinā, which Saṇṭar says is preferable to the text of Sn. 536. He says that the expression refers to the two kinds of action, good and bad. But how the past part. pass. prakāraṁ, "abandoned", comes to have this sense, it is impossible to see. The Pali has dubbhayāni paṇḍarāni, which Faure, op. cit., p. 90, renders "two kinds of senses." Hare, op. cit., p. 79, renders "twin warring states," referring to paṇḍarā to root bhaṇḍati, "to quarrel" (cf. paṇḍa = bhaṇḍam P.E.D.). The P.E.D. gives to paṇḍa only the sense of "white, pale, yellowwhite". It is worth noting, however, that SnA. 2. 430 explains paṇḍarā by āyatāna, tāni hi paṭali-ṇaṁsi-dhātabā lōhiyā ca evaṁ vacanānti. This last reference is due to Miss I. B. Horner.

1 Paṇḍita. In Sn. 526 there is a play on the words paṇḍita and paṇḍita.

The following verse has too long a lacuna to admit of restoration. But the first word of the verse, śrotiṁ, is preserved, and this together with the verses given in reply, shows that the missing verse corresponded to Sn. 533. The translation here given is of the latter text.

2 Reading, with one MS., amamo for asama, "unequalled", of the text.

3 Reading as Edgerton (B.H.S.D. s.v. āsaya) suggests āsrayakī for āsayaṁ of the text. The latter could only be for āsayaṁ, "intentions", which, as Edgerton points out, is not used in the pejorative sense required here.

4 Arghya. See vol. 2, p. 339, n. 1, and now add B.H.S.D.

5 Literally "abandoned", hita. Sn. 535 has hita, and this, or chitoj should probably be read here also.

6 Reading as Edgerton (B.H.S.D. s.v. āsaya) suggests āsrayakī for āsayaṁ of the text. The latter could only be for āsayaṁ, "intentions", which, as Edgerton points out, is not used in the pejorative sense required here. The me in this line is inexplicable, unless it be an ethic dative, which is very improbable. Could not the right reading be tha, "here" corres­ponding to idha in Sn. 536? (p. 394)

7 Dharmā. Sn. 537 has karma.
devas and of men; who makes an end of deceit and pride, and of wrath and greed, and of individuality—him do men call a Wanderer who has attained what is to be attained.

Then Sabhika the Wanderer gratified with and grateful for the eloquent words of the Exalted One extolled him in these appropriate verses:

(401) In thy great wisdom thou, O Hero, hast cleared from the path the three and sixty tenets based on the arguments of recluses, based on taking sound for sense, those worn-out creeds. Thou art the ender of ill; thou hast passed through all states. Thou art perfect Buddha, rid of all the āsrayas. Thou art glorious, resolute, replete with wisdom. Making an end of ill thou art free of all passion.

O Sage, thou hast successfully and unwaveringly trod the path of sagedom. O Peerless One, kinsman of the sun, thou art a gentle giver of freedom.

When thou, O Nāga of Nāgas, O great Hero, speakest, all the devas rejoice, and both Nārada and Parvata as well.

The Man of insight explained things to me when he saw

1 Māyā, neut. for fem. māyā.
2 Osaratā. But this whole line as well as the corresponding one at Sn. 538 is regarded as corrupt. It may be questioned, however, whether the Māyu line is really as corrupt and inexplicable as it is made out to be, for example, by Edgerton in B.H.S.D., s.v. osaraṇa, and by the editors of Sn., p. 100, n. 8. Osaratā can well be explained as being from anāvatāra, of which Edgerton himself says, "it is also spelled with 5 or 7 for 1t, and MSS. sometimes show a for a1 after the sibilant, osaratā, osaratā ... cf. Pkt. Lex. osaratā = yuṣantarāṇa, parśiyajya." He then refers to Senart's note on p. 390 of vol. 1, where the latter cites many instances of a verb variously spelled osaratā, osaratā and osaratā and meaning "to abandon, reject, etc.", to which the most closely corresponding verb in Sk. would seem to be avarijī. See Vol. 2 (trans.) p. 253, n. 5, p. 293, n. 1 and 4. Senart's rendering of the line is unfortunate. He takes osaratā in the sense of "doctrine" in general, and māyā as gen., instead of abl., and renders "tu as rejeté les doctrines de la (bombe) voie."[1]

1 Reading, on the analogy of Sn. 540, yam me hānksitam aṭhāsa, for aham kāṇhkṣīlam aṭhāsa, which would give the irrelevant sense—"I followed one who was in doubt."[2]

2 Nīvaranā. See vol. 1, p. 117, n. 1.
3 Dhītamā. Sn. 542 has dhītamā (= dhrītimā), "resolute.
4 The same story, with certain variations, is found in the Mahāvagga (V. 1. 15 ff.). Windisch (op. cit., p. 26) points out that the details of Yasa's (or Yāsoda's) youth and upbringing formed the model for the future history of Gotama's youth. See Yasa in D.P.N.[3]
5 See D.P.N.[4]
6 Vistaraṇa nidānaṃ bhirāsa. But Edgerton (B.H.S.D.) says, against P.E.D., that there is no authority for the use of aṭhāna as an adj. This example seems to prove him wrong.
7 Literally "flourished" or "prospered", etc., samyādha.
women, believing that the banyan-tree answered prayers, came and prayed to it. The banyan-tree became known to the whole of Benares as a tree which answered prayers,1 for whatever a man prayed for at that tree came to pass.

There was once a man who approached a goddess to pray for prosperity. And quite by chance he secured it.2 It is just like this that false beliefs arise.

In the city of Benares there was a guild-president who was rich, wealthy and opulent, having great possessions and property, much money and money’s worth, large treasuries and granaries, abundance of gold, silver and other resources, and a large number of elephants, horses, sheep and goats, and female and male slaves and servants. But he had no son. In order to try and have a son he made several hundreds of sacrifices and prayers, but without success.

Then the guild-president’s wife heard that on the banks of the river Varanā there was a banyan-tree which answered prayers;3 whoever made a prayer there had the prayer answered. And so she said to the guild-president, “My good man, I have heard that on the banks of the river Varanā there is a big banyan-tree which answers prayers;4 whoever prays at that tree has his prayer answered. Let us go there to the banyan-tree and pray for a son.”5

The guild-president then, with his retinue and with great pomp and ceremony, went to the banyan-tree. He rendered it great veneration and worship, and with his wife addressed a prayer to it, saying, (403) “We wish to have a son through thee. If a son is born to me, I shall set up a shrine here and in it render thee great veneration and worship.”

1 Literally, “known because of its being a thing having true prayer” satyopayācanālo abhiṣṭāṇā.
2 Yādṛicchayā tām padam upaneti, “by accident (spontaneously) he reached that stage.” This follows Senart’s interpretation of upaneti as = upeti (upaiti), with n as a hiatus-bridge. See p. 86, n. 1, where reference is made to Edgerton’s strict sense on this interpretation (Gram. § 4. 65), and his suggested alternative reading param upanamati. But it is not easy to give a translation of this new reading which would suit the context.
3 Satyopayācanam, a neuter substantive, not an adj. in agreement with nyagrodhā. See n. 1.

4 Or “ Nyagrodha.”

5 The text here is difficult. Senart prints na hasya cidemināpi ācchindāmi, where emotā is inexplicable. Senart proposes to emend into cid manāpi (for manāgapī), and render “Je n’ai jamais été coupé (taking a ācchindāmi in passive sense) si peu que ce fût (manāgapi) par personne.” Edgerton (B.H.S.D., s.v. ācchindati) proposes a different restoration: asam na ḫasyaci demi nāpi ācchindāmi (adopting the form and meaning of Pali ācchindati). This certainly gives a clear grammatical construction, and makes excellent sense. For the BSk. (= Pali) ācchindati (so written by Senart), see vol. 2, p. 434 (text) and vol. 3, 7 (text).

6 ḫadhiṣṭa, past. perf. pass. of ādhiṣṭe. See B.H.S.D.

1 Or “Kauśika.”

2 This certainly gives a clear grammatical construction, and makes excellent sense. For the BSk. (= Pali) ācchindati (so written by Senart), see vol. 2, p. 434 (text) and vol. 3, 7 (text).

3 Adhiṣṭa, past. perf. pass. of ādhiṣṭe. See B.H.S.D.

1 I.e., Sakra. See vol. 2, p. 49, n. 4 and p. 60, n. 10.

Women are able to coerce men. When a man is successful, his wife is the cause of it. And when great heroes are slain in battle, women again are the cause of their misfortunes.

The guild-president’s wife also offered a prayer. “O banyan-tree,” she said, “thou art reputed to answer prayers. Just as the guild-president has promised thee a shrine and honour and worship, so I do also. But if thou dost not grant me a son, then shall I cut thee down to the very roots.”

Now a tree deva of the same name as the tree dwelt there, that is, in the banyan-tree there resided a deva called Banyan.1 And when that deva was prayed to by the guild-president’s wife in that way, he became alarmed. “For,” said he, “I do not give to anyone, nor take away from anyone.2 But now here is this guild-president’s wife who prays to me on these terms, namely, that if she does not have a son, she will have this dwelling-place of mine cut down with an axe.”

So Banyan the deva entreated3 Sakra, lord of devas, saying to him, “O Kauśika,4 I do not give to anyone nor take away from anyone. But now here is this guild-president who has rendered veneration and worship at my dwelling and offered up a prayer. This is then my request, that it be so arranged that this guild-president of Benares may have a son, lest my dwelling-place be cut down.” Sakra, the lord of devas, reassured Banyan the deva, saying, “Be not afraid. I will so arrange that he will have a son and that your dwelling-place be not cut down.”

(404) At that time in the world of the Trāyāstrimśa devas there was a certain deva who was meritorious, distin-
guished, of great magic and power, who had rendered service to former perfect Buddhas, whose root of merit was mature, who was near nirvana, liable to only one more rebirth and in a condition to depart from among the devas of Trayastrimśa. Sakra, lord of the devas, spoke to him thus. "You are in a condition to depart, for the signs of it are manifest. You will therefore pass away hence and be reborn. Reappear then in the womb of the guild-president’s wife." The deva replied to Sakra, lord of the devas, saying, "I do want to be reborn among men, for I should then take up the religious life following the teaching of the exalted Buddha and thus make an end of ill. But it will not do for me to be reborn in Benares in the guild-president’s family, because his family will provide me with pleasant things and bar the way to good states. I will, therefore, be reborn in some middle-class family. Then to my heart’s content and without impediment I shall embrace the religious life after the teaching of the Exalted One and shall make an end of ill."

Sakra replied and said, "Set your heart on rebirth in that guild-president’s family. For I will see to it that you will go forth from home and embrace the religious life after the teaching of the Exalted One." So at the bidding of Sakra, lord of the devas, that deva set his heart on the family of the guild-president, Oka. Leaving the devas of Trayastrimśa he reappeared in the womb of the wife of the guild-president in Benares, and after a period of nine or ten months she was delivered.

She gave birth to a boy who was lovely, handsome, noble of appearance, possessing the perfect flower of beauty. When he was born, the guild-president celebrated joyous birthday festivities. (405) Drink and solid and soft foods, perfumes, garlands and ointments were dispensed to recluses and brāhmans, to the poor and the beggars, and to other people. Oil, ghee and drink flowed in streams. When a week was up a number of brāhmans skilled in astrology were summoned and bidden to give a name to the boy. They gave him a name, calling him Yaśoda. The brāhmans were then regaled

and served with solid and soft foods, given a large quantity of gold and money, and then dismissed. Four nurses were put in charge of Yaśoda. One anointed and bathed him; the second suckled him; the third washed off his faces and urine, and the fourth carried him about in her arms. So the young Yaśoda grew up like a blue or red or white lotus. As was said by the Exalted One:

The meritorious man grows like a banyan-tree; but the man of little merit becomes stunted like a tree planted in the roadway.

When the lad had reached years of discretion he was taught writing, mathematics, mnemonics, and business. His father had three palaces built for him, one for the winter, the second for the summer and the third for the rainy season, and established for him a harem of sixty thousand women. These palaces had staircases fitted by means of mechanical devices which took five hundred men to bring up and remove. And when they were being brought up and removed the noise could be heard for half a yojana.

Now a kinsman who had been to the eastern country on business returned home. The guild-president sent him a message, saying, (406) "Come and see the prowess of my son." So the kinsman came to the guild-president’s house. The guild-president made him sit down on the same sofa as he. He then called for the young Yaśoda, who, having saluted his father and his kinsman, was also made to sit on the same

---

1 Utsanga. This expression has already occurred in vol. 2, p. 421 (text), where the translator (vol. 2, p. 374, n. 3) has suggested that uutsanga can well be taken, in its sense of "lap". They were given, that is, a "lapful" of gold. This seems more natural than saying "a high-number" (say "myriads") of gold. This latter is the sense given by Senart to uutsanga, however, on the basis of Lal. Vist. 76. It is now seen that Edgerton (B.H.S.D.) gives it the same sense, but it is pertinent to note that he quotes the Tibetan definition of the word in the Mvyut as meaning "lap-top".

2 Hiranyasvarpa. Better, perhaps, "gold" simply.

3 This verse has already been quoted with reference to Ikṣvāku. See vol. 2, p. 423 (p. 376, trans.).

4 Vṛjyāyākula, which Senart interprets as "wife’s kinsman." But Edgerton (B.H.S.D.) doubts this meaning, as it would require dvītyākula, and he would prefer to give the word the meaning of "a second or fellow kinsman." On the next page kuśika alone is used.

---

1 Cyavanadharma.
2 The first time he has been named.
sofa. So all three settled themselves on one and the same sofa.

Then it happened that the king sent a message to the guild-president, telling him that there was some urgent state business to be done and that he was to come at once. The guild-president said to his kinsman, "Sit here with the lad until I return from the king's palace." He then went to the king's palace, and his kinsman, who was a layman, sat with the young lad Yasoda.

Now when the kinsman saw the accomplishments of Yasoda, the guild-president's son, he thought, "Surely this boy must not be accepted as a home-dweller, though he has such ample means of enjoyment at his disposal. There is no doubt that he is to be accepted as one who has rendered service to a Buddha, Pratyekabuddhas and distinguished disciples, who has been given all good qualities, has the memory of past lives, has achieved a previous association with a Buddha, who is unique, and who has planted the roots of merit. If the lad were to see the exalted Buddha, the deva above all devas, it would do him great good." The layman then said, "My boy, all youth ends in old age, all good health in sickness, all life in death, and all prosperity in adversity. From all things dear and pleasant sooner or later there comes parting and separation and deprivation. You will leave this father of yours or you will leave this life. Have you not, my boy, seen the Exalted One?" The lad asked, "Whom do you mean by the Exalted One?" The layman answered and said, "I mean the deva who is above all devas, the Exalted One, Tathāgata, Arhan, perfect Buddha, (407) who is gifted with knowledge and conduct,

---

1 Icchitavya, according to a normal use of Sk. icchati, "to wish." See B.H.S.D., where, in opposition to Senart’s theory that icchitavya stands here for ikṣitavya, "to be regarded," it is pointed out that in Pali and Prakrit icchati seems always to represent Sk. ic staat here as the more straightforwardly opposite word, though the sense is clear on either interpretation.

2 Vāśivasāana.

3 Kriyapūraayoga. Edgerton (B.H.S.D.) says that Senart in his note on p. 267 is wrong in assuming that pūraayoga necessarily implies "réunion antérieure" with a Buddha. But the context here, and probably always, implies such an association. Cf. vol. 2, p. 245, n. 2.

4 Avasa pūrṇa pāla. Edgerton cites a similar usage in MPS. 3.

---

1 In the Buddhist sense of course, and so for the following brāhmaṇical terms. Cf. p. 396, n. 1.

2 Brāhiṇī. If he would be joined to or endowed with great good," maḥa-

3互 tārthanā samyujjaya.

4 Nānābhāva. B.H.S.D. cites a similar usage in MPS. 3.
former life,1 was in his last existence. And there arose in him a desire to see the Exalted One. There arose in him, too, a feeling of disgust with his sensual pleasures. He gave his mind entirely to the thought of leaving home. To this did his heart turn, and there it stood and settled.

Now it happened that at midnight he woke up and saw the women of the harem asleep. One was clasping a vīṇa,2 another a śāṇa,3 another a sughoṣañā,4 another a nakula,5 another a venu,6 another a mahāśī,7 another a vādīśa,8 another a viṅkuiśa,9 another a bhamarikā,10 another an ekāśa,11 another a mṛidanga,12 another an ālingikā,13 another a panava,14 and another a dardura.15 Some had their arms round one another’s necks, some were holding up their chins, and others were drizzling. When the young man saw this sorry change in his harem, there arose in him a presentiment of the burial-ground, and he became eager to leave home. “I will go forth from home,” said he, “into the homeless state in the company of the Exalted One.”

Then Śakra, lord of the devas, came with a retinue of countless thousands of devas carrying fragrant garlands. The stairs were brought up by the devas, and when Yaśoda had set his foot on the last step, the devas scattered a shower of celestial flowers so that in the guild-president’s house there was a sea of flowers a knee deep. Thus the young man, surrounded by hundreds of thousands of devas, left the city of Benares and went to where the Exalted One was. A radiance was shed by the Exalted One, and the noble Yaśoda beheld him on the farther bank of the river Varanā, lovely and attractive to look on. He then doffed his bejewelled sandals,1 and addressed the Exalted One in a verse:

“I am oppressed, O Recluse; I am oppressed, honoured sir.”

The Exalted One said, “Come, young man, be not afraid of this oppression. When you have heard this dharma of mine preached you will be rid of passion.”

Then Yaśoda, the guild-president’s son, approached the Exalted One, bowed his head at his feet, and sat down on one side. And the Exalted One delivered to him an edifying discourse, that is to say, a discourse on charity, morality, heaven, merit and the ripening of merit. And Yaśoda, the guild-president’s son, trustfully put his faith in the Exalted One.

The Exalted One then revealed to Yaśoda, the guild-president’s son, the Four Noble Truths. He taught, made known, explained, communicated, manifested, and revealed the noble truth of ill, the noble truth of the arising of ill, the noble truth of the cessation of ill and the noble truth of the course that leads to the cessation of ill. (409) And Yaśoda, the guild-president’s son, as he sat there, attained the three super-knowledges, the six super-knowledges and mastery of the powers, and acquired the various kinds of magic power.

But when the night was over the parents of Yaśoda, the guild-president’s son, failing to find him, sobbed and wept. Accompanied by a large crowd of kinsfolk and thousands of other people, they left Benares and came to the Exalted One seeking after Yaśoda, the guild-president’s son. On the banks of the river Varanā the parents of Yaśoda, the guild-president’s son, saw his bejewelled sandals. And on seeing them they picked them up and kissed them, weeping, crying, mourning and lamenting the while. Thus weeping, crying, mourning and lamenting they approached the Exalted One,
bowed at his feet and said to him, "Has the Exalted One seen Yaśoda, the guild-president's son?"

Now Yaśoda, the guild-president's son, was immersed in such rapt concentration of thought that neither his parents nor anyone else saw him sitting there. The Exalted One said to the parents of Yaśoda, the guild-president's son, "Sit down, layman. The opportunity is now here. Look at Yaśoda, the guild-president's son, and seeing him have faith in him." Then the parents of Yaśoda, the guild-president's son, bowed at the feet of the Exalted One and sat down to one side, and so did the rest of the crowd.

Then the Exalted One mentally addressed Yaśoda, the guild-president's son, bidding him to display a miracle of magic. And Yaśoda, the guild-president's son, rose up in the air to the height of a palm-tree, and displayed various miracles of magic. From being one he became many; from many he became one. (410) He appeared standing over against a wall, a rock and mountains without touching them. He emerged from the ground and sank into it. Just as a man sinks into and rises from the water without dividing it, so did he emerge from and sink into the ground. Sitting down cross-legged he stroked and touched the mighty and powerful moon and sun with his hand. He did what he liked with his body, even to flying up to Brahmā's heaven. He performed various miracles of double appearance. The lower part of his body would be in flames, while five hundred jets of cold water streamed from his left side. His left side would be in flames, while five hundred jets of cold water streamed from his right side. His right side would be in flames while five hundred jets of cold water streamed from his left side.

Next Yaśoda, the guild-president's son, transformed himself by his magic power into a bull of a blue-black colour, which disappeared in the east and reappeared in the west. It disappeared in the west and reappeared in the east; it disappeared in the south and reappeared in the north; it disappeared in the north and reappeared in the south. Yaśoda, the guild-president's son, transformed himself by his magic power into a lion, king of beasts, fanged, powerful and maned, which thrice roared a lion's roar. It then disappeared in the east and reappeared in the west; it disappeared in the west and reappeared in the east; it disappeared in the south and reappeared in the north; it disappeared in the north and reappeared in the south. It disappeared from the earth and reappeared in the sky; it disappeared from the sky and reappeared on the earth.

By his magic power Yaśoda, the guild-president's son, transformed himself into an all-white elephant, with six tusks, a red head, and seven sturdy limbs, the colour of a white lotus. It disappeared in the east and reappeared in the west; it disappeared in the west and reappeared in the east; it disappeared in the south and reappeared in the north; it disappeared in the north and reappeared in the south. It disappeared from the earth and reappeared in the sky; it disappeared from the sky and reappeared on the earth.

Then Yaśoda, the young man of good family, transformed himself into the guise of a universal king, possessing the seven treasures and attended by an army of the four arms. He disappeared in the east and reappeared in the west; he disappeared in the west and reappeared in the east; he disappeared in the south and reappeared in the north; he disappeared in the north and reappeared in the south. It disappeared from the earth and reappeared in the sky; it disappeared from the sky and reappeared on the earth.

1 Literally, "he went to a manifestation over against a wall" abhirbāvam tirovhūyam... gacchati. Cf. D. 1. 78 = A. 3. 280.
2 Asajjajamāṇa, Pali id., negative of pres. part. pass. of sañ!.
3 This simile is much lengthened in translation so as to make it clearer. The phrase udāke pi abhījajamāṇa corresponds to the Pali stock phrase in the description of this miracle—udāke pi abhījjañhāna. See P.E.D. for the numerous instances, in about half of which the reading is, however, abhījjañhāna. On this reading and on that of the Mkh. the translation is ("he goes in") the water without splitting it, that is, the participle is to be taken as middle. On the other reading, we have ("he goes in") the water which is not split, that is, the participle is passive. The point of the simile would seem to be that in rising from and sinking into the ground, he left no permanent mark on the surface, any more than he would do in the case of water.
4 See p. 186, n. 3.
5 See p. 186, n. 4.
6 See p. 115. n. 4.

1 Sarvasveta, but his head was red.
2 Indragopa (or indrogoPa). In Sk. and Pali both forms denote a red insect. According to B.R. "the cochineal insect" (B.H.S.D.). Miss I. B. Horner, in a letter, gives it as her opinion that the colour denoted by indragopa is that of a lady-bird, pinkish or vermillion.
disappeared in the north and reappeared in the south. He
disappeared from the earth and reappeared in the sky; he
disappeared from the sky and reappeared on the earth.

Next Yaśoda, the guild-president’s son, rose up in the air
to the height of a palm-tree. He moved, he stood, he sat,
lay down, 1 he rushed around with his scorching heat. 2

Just as in the last month of summer the winds called the
“Smashers” 3 blow, so did Yaśoda, the guild-president’s son,
having risen in the air to the height of a palm-tree, move,
stand, sit, lie down and rush about with his scorching heat.

While he stood at the height of one or two palm-trees, from
being one he became many, and from being many he became
one. The story is to be continued as in the first chapter 4 up to
—from the height of seven palm-trees 412 he descended to
the height of six, from six to five, from five to four, from
to three, from three to two, from two to one, and from the
height of one he descended to the ground. From being one
he became many, and from being many he became one. He
appeared standing over against a wall, a rock and mountains
without touching them. He emerged from and sank into the
ground. Rising up from the ground, he moved, stood, sat,
lay down and rushed about with his scorching heat.

Then two Wanderers belonging to other sects 6 and the

1 Literally, “made his bed” šeyyām (Pali id., Sk. śayyām) kalpayati.
Cf. Pali šeyyām kappeti.

2 Literally, “he scorched all round and rushed all round,” paripaṭati ̆ ti
paribhramati ̆ ti.

3 So Edgerton (B.H.S.D.) for sanghaṭakā, a name given to the monsoon
winds. Only here apparently.

4 Parivaraka. The “first chapter” presumably refers to the beginning
of the account of Yasoda’s magic-working, where, however, the stock
description of rising in the air by stages of the height of one palm-tree to
that of seven is not given.

5 The translation here is a Summary to avoid the cumbersome and obscure
terms denoting each sectarian. As the female recluse is said to be third,
tritiya, implying a series of three sectaries, it is assumed (so Senart) that her
companions were two male sectaries, a trāditaśravaka, a name given to the
monsoon winds. Only here apparently.

6 Pali paripaṭati ̆ ti, meaning “rushed about.”

1 Senart takes this to be a proper name, but it would be possible to take
it as meaning “a sister wearing a dress or decoration of owl’s feathers”
(uḷukapākṣika, Pali uḷukapākākhi). See B.H.S.D.

2 Danacanapsīloka. For chinnapsīloka see p. 64, n. 5. The force of
danda, “stick”, however, is obscure, and it is apparently found only
here in this connection.

3 Alam alanārṣīya alan praśādaya.

4 Rajojalam, which would in itself mean dust and water. But there
could be no doubt that the word is intended for rajojalam, as in the Pali version
of these verses, I.e., Dhp. 141-2. The verses also occur at Divy. 339, where
the word appears as rajojalam, “dirt and impurity.”

5 Uṭhujakapraśādānam, Pali uṭhujakappadānam (Dh. 141)
son, were seated on those seats, they won the pure and stainless dharma-insight into things and came to understand the states of several thousands of beings.

Then the parents of Yaśoda, the guild-president's son, said to the Exalted One, "Lord, initiate Yaśoda, the guild-president's son." And the Exalted One pronounced the formula of "Come, monk", saying, "Come, monk, live the brahma-life under the Tathāgata."

When Yaśoda, the guild-president's son, had been addressed with the words "Come, monk," every mark of a layman, every badge, every emblem and every sign disappeared from him. He was seen to have the three robes and the sumbhaka bronze bowl, his hair in its natural state, and his deportment established—all just like those of a monk who had been ordained a hundred years. Such then was the initiation of Yaśoda, the guild-president's son, his ordination and his admission as a monk.

Here ends the story of Yaśoda, the guild-president's son.

JĀTAKA OF YAŚODA

The monks said to the Exalted One, "Lord, as the maturing of what karma did Yaśoda, the guild-president's son, who was rich, wealthy, opulent and born in a guild-president's family, become quick of attainment even as a layman and achieve mastery of the powers?" The Exalted One replied, "Monks, Yaśoda, the guild-president's son, made a vow to that effect in a former life."

(414) Once upon a time, monks, long ago, here in the city of Benares, there was a son of a decayed family, who was indigent and poor and made a living by working for others. Now when there are no Buddhas in the world, and in the intervals between the Buddhas, there appear in the world Pratyekabuddhas, who are worthy of offerings, who are splendid in their silence and live in loneliness like a rhinoceros. They train each his own self and attain nirvana. They are worthy of offerings and constitute a field for winning merit.

There was then at that time a Pratyekabuddha named Bhadrika, who, dressing himself betimes and taking his bowl and robe, neither too early nor too late, when it was time for the morning meal, left Riśivadana and came into the city of Benares to beg for alms. He was well-restrained in body, speech and mind, with steady mindfulness, tranquil of heart, and with his faculties under control.

Now as he went round the city of Benares in quest of alms he was seen by that man from the decayed family. Devas and men were kind and favourably disposed to that man. When he saw Bhadrika the Pratyekabuddha his mind became exceeding trustful. With faith in his heart he took him to his home and provided him with food. He then made a vow, saying, "Inasmuch as there is a root of merit in my having rendered a service to such a worthy man, may I never pass to a sphere of ill, nor go to ruin, nor ever be reborn in poor families. But may I be reborn in families that are rich, wealthy and opulent."

Then Bhadrika the Pratyekabuddha, being aware of this vow, flew away through the air like a king of swans. And when the man saw Bhadrika the Pratyekabuddha flying through the air like a king of swans, eager to emulate the Pratyekabuddha he made a vow with still greater faith in his heart. "May I," said he, "come to possess the qualities which this religious man has."

The Exalted One said, "Monks, this Yaśoda here, the guild-president's son, at that time and on that occasion (415) was the man of decayed family in this city of Benares. Inasmuch as he did a service to the Pratyekabuddha and made a vow, as a ripening of that karma, therefore, he has never been

---

1 See vol. I, p. 250, n. 1. Add now Edgerton (B.H.S.D.)—" actually the compound (khadgaviśāna) means a rhinoceros", not its horn.
2 Or "honoured with", pratimānīta from pratimānayati. There is not sufficient difference between saying "to provide with" and "to honour with", to warrant regarding this use of the verb as specifically BSk. Cf. Pali pratimāneti.
THE TEMPTATION BY MĀRA

The Exalted One, fully enlightened and having realised the aim he had set himself, was staying in Benares, in the Deer Park at Rishivadana. And there the Exalted One spoke to the venerable good group of five monks. "Monks," said he, "I am freed from all snares, whether of devas or of men. Go on your journeys, monk, but do not go two of you the same way. For, monks, there are beings who are pure, undefiled, with but little dust in their eyes, but who, because they have not heard the dharma, are losing ground. As for me, I will go to the village of Senāpati at Uruvilvā, out of compassion for the Matted-Hair Ascetics."

Then most wicked Māra thought, "Here is this recluse Gotama staying in Benares, in the Deer Park at Rishivadana. And he has spoken to the group of five monks, saying, 'Monks, I am freed from all snares, whether of devas or of men. You, too, monks, are freed from all snares, whether of devas or of men. Do you, monks, go on your journeys, but do not go two of you the same way. There are, monks, beings who are undefiled and with but little dust in their eyes, but who, because they have not heard the dharma, are losing ground. As for me, I will go to the village of Senāpati at Uruvilvā, out of compassion for the Matted-Hair Ascetics.' What, then, if I were (416) to go to them in order to confuse him?"

Then wicked Māra addressed the Exalted One in a verse:

Unfreed, thou thinkest thyself freed. What meanest thou to say thou art freed? In close bonds art thou bound, for from me thou wilt not escape, O Recluse.

But the Exalted One replied to wicked Māra in a verse:

Freed am I from all snares, whether of devas or of men. Know this, wicked one, that thou art beaten by me, O Death.

Then wicked Māra, thinking "Gotama the recluse knows me," wretched, dejected and discomfited forthwith disappeared. This is the tradition.

The Exalted One, perfectly enlightened and having realised the aim he had set himself, was staying in Benares, in the Deer Park at Rishivadana, teaching devas and men. And while the Exalted One was alone in seclusion and retirement this mental reflexion uprose in him. "Sensual pleasures", thought he, "are impermanent, ill, liable to change." But then wicked Māra thought, "Here is this recluse, Gotama, staying in Benares, in the Deer Park at Rishivadana, and he, while he is alone in seclusion and retirement has had the mental reflexion that sensual pleasures are impermanent, ill and liable to change. What if I were to go to him and confuse...

---

1 ṛāgāstvā from ṛāgāyati. To the note in this word in vol. 2, p. 339, n. 2, has now to be added reference to the long article in B.H.S.D., where Edgerton explains the verb as "a quasi denom. to an unrecorded ṛāgā cl. ṛāgā and ṛāgāna, but prob. actually formed as a pendant and opposite to vīrāgāyati with which it is often associated; used exclusively as substitute for ṛāgānīyati, which is often . . . recorded as v.l. for this."

2 See p. 313, n. 2.

3 Reading alparajaskajjātikā for aparokṣajjātikā. The parallel passage, V. 1. 28, has aparokkajjātikā. The aparokṣajjātikā of Lal. Vist. 403 is no analogical justification for preserving aparokṣajjātikā (-jjātiko) in the Mhū. The Lal. Vist. compound admits of intelligible analysis, but, as Edgerton himself confesses, the precise meaning of aparokṣajjātikā is obscure. (B.H.S.D. s.v.) See further p. 312, n. 3.

4 See vol. 2, p. 119, n. 2.

5 jātīlas. V. 1. 21 says only dhammadesanāyā—"to teach the dharma."
him?" And so wicked Māra approached the Exalted One and addressed him in verse:

Fast is the snare I've set, for it is the very life of thy mind. By means of this I'll hold thee bound; thou wilt not escape from me, O Recluse.

(417) But the Exalted One replied to wicked Māra in a verse:

There are five strands of sensual pleasures in the world; the mind has been declared a sixth. Gone, scattered, destroyed is my wish for them. Know this, O wicked one; thou art beaten, O Death.

Then wicked Māra thought, "Gotama, the recluse knows me." Wretched, dejected and discomfited he forthwith disappeared. Such is the tradition.

The Exalted One, perfectly enlightened and having realised the aim he had set himself, was staying in Benares, in the Deer Park at Rīṣīvadana. And while the Exalted One was alone in seclusion and retirement this mental reflexion uprose in him. "All attachment to existence", thought he, "is impermanent, ill, and liable to change." But wicked Māra thought, "Here is this recluse, Gotama, staying in Benares, in the Deer Park at Rīṣīvadana. And he, while he is alone in seclusion and retirement has had the mental reflexion that all attachment to existence is impermanent, ill and liable to change. What if I were to go to him and confuse him?" And so wicked Māra approached the Exalted One and addressed him in a verse:

He who has sons delights in his sons; the cowherd delights in his cattle. Man delights in attachments, but he who has no attachments has naught to delight in.

(418) But the Exalted One replied to wicked Māra in a verse:

He who has sons worries over his sons; the cowherd worries over his cattle. A man is tormented by his attachments to existence. But he who has no attachments has no occasion to worry.¹

Then wicked Māra thought, "Gotama the recluse knows me." Wretched, dejected and discomfited he forthwith disappeared. Such is the tradition.

Far famed is the stainlessness of the exalted Gotama, the spotless, the undefiled and the pure one.² He gives to all beings this honoured³ place. He brings within reach⁴ of the whole world complete extinction of the deed.⁵

The monks asked the Exalted One, "How does the Lord speak a solemn utterance'? He in whom no illusion dwells, nor pride; he who is rid of passion, free from evil⁶ and from longing; he who has shaken off all wrath, and whose self is completely freed, he is a brāhmaṇa, he is a recluse, he is a monk.⁷

INSTRUCTIONS ON BEGGING

The monks asked, "Lord, how ought we to conduct the alms-round? Are we to say 'Give alms'?" The Exalted One replied, "No. You should stand in silence and point to your alms-bowl."

Once upon a time, monks, long ago, here in the city of Benares the king's son had a companion of the same age, named Asthisena, who was the son of the household priest.

¹ These last two verses are almost verbally identical with Sn. 33, 34, where they are, as here, put into the mouths of Māra and the Buddha, respectively, and with two of the verses in the parallel passage at S. 1. 107-8.
² This verse and the next one are introduced abruptly, having no connection either with what precedes or with what follows.
³ Tam arahita pradelam. But Senart's restoration must be regarded as very doubtful. For arahita (= Sk. arhita), see C.P.D.
⁴ Prāpupeti, in causal sense, according to Senart, but Edgerton (B.H.S.D. s.v.) points out the uncertainty of the text.
⁵ Kriyābhīminivrūṭti, i.e., deliverance from the results of action.
⁶ Anigha. See p. 399, n. 4.
⁷ Cf. Sn., 464, 494.
Asthisena, seeing the danger of sensual pleasures, went forth to embrace the religious life. (419) He observed chastity, lived following the path of the ten moralities and became proficient in the Veda and familiar with all branches of learning relating to the religious life.¹

Then the king's son ascended the throne. And he addressed Asthisena, the priest's son, in a verse:

Wise men, O Asthisena, do not despise a mendicant. O chaste youth, you are dear to me. Ask, O brähman, for whatever you wish.

Then, monks, Asthisena the mendicant replied in a verse:

He who begs becomes disliked; he who gives not becomes disliked. And so I ask not of my lord, lest I incur hatred.³

But, monks, the king of Benares replied to Asthisena the mendicant in a verse:

He who is a beggar and begs not when he should, causes another to lose merit, and harms himself.

Then, monks, Asthisena the mendicant replied to the king of Kaśi:

They say that begging leads to weeping; refusal to give likewise causes weeping. And so I beg not of you, my lord, lest I be the cause of weeping.³

The wise man does not; the Aryan deigns not to make his need known.⁴ The Aryans stand and show their alms-bowls. Such is the way the Aryans beg.

Then, monks, the king of Kaśi replied to Asthisena the mendicant in a verse:

I offer you, O brähman, a full thousand red cows, together with a bull. (420) For, being an Aryan, how should I not give⁴

¹ Parivṛtajātāstra.
² Literally, "lent there be hatred (videśpā, Pali viddesanā. Sk. videśpā)
³ of me."
⁴ Literally, "a weeping be mine," me śravadana bhavet.
⁵ Vedicum, for vedayitum. So Senart, and as in the repetition on the next page. (Vedīta, for vedayitum.) Dadvik. In form this may be either 3rd or 1st sg. opt. (BSk.). Perhaps
⁶ Dadvik. In form this may be either 3rd or 1st sg. opt. (BSk.). Perhaps
⁷ Of 29. 42 as 3rd.

The Exalted One said, "The Wanderer, named Asthisena, the son of the household priest and friend of the king of Kaśi was not anyone else. For I at that time was the Wanderer Asthisena."

Here ends the Jātaka of Asthisena.¹

The Exalted One said:

"Verily the wise man does not ask; the Aryan deigns not to make his need known. The Aryans stand and show their alms-bowls. Such is the way the Aryans beg."

"It is in this way, monks, that you are to make your alms-round.

Then the monks asked the Exalted One, "Lord, when we have received alms, are we to say 'bless you, bless you'?" ²

The Exalted One replied, "No, monks, you are not to salute when you have received alms."

To commit no sin, to achieve virtue, to master one's heart—this is the teaching of the Buddhas.

Then the monks, having stayed in the Deer Park at Rishi-vadana for the rainy season, set out on their tours in various directions. And on seeing empty and desolate the places where the monks had stood, walked, sat and lain down, a

¹ Cf. Fausbgl, no 403.
² Or, "good luck," saasti.
³ Adālāt, See B.H.S.D., where Edgerton compares Hindi ādes, "salutation," and late Sk. ādesa with the same meaning, and refers to an article by himself in JAOS. 38. 206 f.
⁴ Paryādāpana. This word is interpreted here as a substantive from the causal of paryādāti, "to master." The verse is Dh. 183, where the corresponding Pali word is paryiyodāpana, "purification," and the P.E.D. may be correct in saying that the form in our text is a corrupt BSk. form of the Pali. The correct BSk. form, paryavaddāpana, is found in Dwh. 3 and Gt. 492 (see B.H.S.D. which does not list the word of our text). It is interesting to note, however, that Burnouf in his note on the Dh. verse (Lotus, p. 522, § 5, quoted in Max Müller's note on p. 51 of his translation of Dh. in S.B.E., vol. X), prefers the form pariyodama, "complete subjection", which in meaning approximates paryādāpana. (Müller himself says that paryiyodama is the correct reading). Note also that two MSS. of the Mkhv. actually have paryādāmanā. There is, therefore, some ground for believing that in its original form this celebrated verse of the Dh. spoke of the mastering and not of the purification of the mind or heart.
deva of the Deer Park felt sad. He approached the Exalted One and addressed him in a verse:

This place looks sad to me to-day, for I see it empty and deserted of men. (421) Learned men of varied talk were they. Where, O Gotama, are those disciples of thine gone?

The Exalted One replied:

They have gone to Magadha and to Kośala, and some have gone to the land of the Vajjis. The monks live unfettered lives and roam about free as deer.

The Exalted One set out. A boatman saw the Exalted One approaching the banks of the Ganges and brought up his boat. The Exalted One stepped on board and said to the boatman:

Besprinkle this boat, O monk. Besprinkled with love, it will float more lightly for you. Cut out passion and ill-will. Thus will you go on to nirvana.

Besprinkle this boat, O monk. Besprinkled with pity, it will float more lightly for you. Cut out passion and ill-will. Thus will you go on to nirvana.

---

1 This episode, with more or less similar verses, is found at S. 1. 199.
2 In S. the question is put to and answered by another deva.
3 This episode, so abruptly introduced, looks like a commentarial invention to serve as introduction to the following verses, which are greatly enlarged versions of Dh. 368 and 369.
4 But in the following verses, as in Dh., he is addressed as monk.
5 I.e., your self.
6 Literally, "it will be light for you," te laghu bhesyati. The Pali version of this verse (Dh. 359) reads sīka bhikkhu imam nāvam sitā te lahaṃ essati, "Bale out this boat, monk; baled out it will lightly go along for you" (Mrs. Rhys Davids, Minor Anthologies I, p. 121), or as Max Müller (S.B.E. X, p. 87) renders it, "O Bhikku, empty this boat! If emptied, it will go quickly." But it may be doubted whether "bale" or "empty" is the right rendering of sīkāti, although at the only other place where the expression nāvam sīkāti occurs, namely Sn. 771, both Fausball (i.e.) and Hare (i.e.) translate it by "to bale." But sīkāti means "to pour out," "to sprinkle liquid on to something," and if it here really means "to bale," nāvam sīkāti is a pregnant expression equivalent to "pour the water out of the boat." In the Mhou., at least, sīkāti is often used to denote the "sprinkling" of a road or floor preparatory to sweeping or scouring. See e.g. vol. I, p. 231 (text), siktam samṛitiṣam (of a roadway). Anyhow, the Mhou. version will hardly admit of the figure of "baling out" a boat, for the verse continues maitrīye sīkāte lahaṃ bhesyati. That is to say, the Mhou. seems to change the metaphor from that of "baling out," if, that is, such is the meaning of the Pali, into that of cleaning or "sprinkling" it, first with love, and then in the succeeding verses, for which there are no parallels in Dh., with the other three of the brahmavihārā. (See p. 423, n. 2).
A man is not a monk just because he begs alms from others. He is no monk as long as he harbours wrong states of mind.

He who, living the brahma-life, regards pleasures of sense as evil, and has become a ladder, he, with his wisdom, is in truth said to be a monk.

When he walks abroad, when he stands, when he sits, when he lies down, when he bends his body and when he straightens it,

He should be restrained as he moves, restrained as he lies down. He should be restrained of purpose as he meditates diligently. (423) He who takes joy in study, is concentrated, and content to be alone—him do they call a monk.

Restraint in eye is good, and good restraint in ear. Restraint in smell is good, and good restraint in tongue. Restraint everywhere, the monk from ill obtains release.

The boatman was led by the Exalted One to the state of mastery. When the Exalted One spoke the words, “Bespinkle the boat,” every mark of the layman, every badge, every emblem and every sign disappeared (from the boatman’s person). He was seen to have the three robes and the sumbhaka bowl, his hair in its natural state, and his deportment established—all just like those of a monk who had been ordained a hundred years. Such was the initiation of the venerable boatman of the Ganges, his ordination and his admission into monkhood.

1 Vismam dharmam.
2 Nihshrenabhata. The metaphor is based on the idea of crossing, here by means of a "ladder", from the world of sense to the world beyond the senses. The monk, that is, who, as he is said to have done in the first part of the verse, has renounced the pleasures of sense, has thereby made for himself a "ladder" to cross to the beyond, or, in modern parlance, to ascend from earth to heaven. The symbolism is even carried further, and he is said to have actually "become a ladder". Miss I. B. Horner, in a communication, points out that this is in accord with traditional Indian symbolism, and she appositely quotes RV. X. 61. 16, apat ca vipras tarati svasetub, "the sage crosses the water, himself the bridge." The analogy is complete if we regard a ladder as an upright bridge.
3 This is copied from Mrs. Rhys Davids’ version of the corresponding verses at Dh. 360-1, which, however, contains one more line than our text. See Minor Anthologies I. p. 119.
4 Text has so, "he", only.
5 Sc. of the powers of an aryastravaka.
6 See p. 67, n. 3.
beautiful Matted-hair Ascetics and he cowered before them. "A great crowd of people is near at hand," thought he, "and they will come to this retreat of mine. They have faith in me, believing that there is no one in the world the equal of the seer Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa with his company. But now here is this other seer, with his company of a thousand Matted-hair Ascetics, who has great magic and power. He has to-day come to this retreat, and the whole crowd of people will put their faith in this seer, with his company of a thousand and with his great magic and power. Believing in him, they will trustfully serve him, honour, revere, respect, venerate and worship him, and they will pay no attention to me and my company."

But the Exalted One, being aware of this mental reflexion on the part of the seer Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa, put off his disguise of a Matted-hair Ascetic, and caused the thousand Matted-hair Ascetics whom he had conjured up to disappear. When the thousand Matted-hair Ascetics had disappeared Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa, the Matted-hair Ascetic, saw the Exalted One in his proper guise as the Tathāgata, Arhan, perfect Buddha, endowed with knowledge and conduct, the Sugata, the peerless knower of the world, the driver of tameable men, (425) the his proper guise as the Tathāgata, Arhan, perfect Buddha, strong with the ten powers of a Tathāgata, confident on the four grounds of confidence, gracious and comforting, a Buddha, strong with the ten powers of a Tathāgata, confident on the four grounds of confidence, gracious and comforting, with his faculties and mind under control, having attained the utmost perfection of self-control and calm, Nāga-like, having accomplished his task, with his faculties not turned outwards, his mind not turned outwards, but steady, as it had reached conformity with the dharma, well-guarded, a Nāga, with his faculties in subjection, transparent as a pool, pure, serene, erect like a bejewelled sacrificial post, like the golden bimba, a blaze of shining splendour, flaming with glory like another rising sun, charming and not repellant to behold. When Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa, together with his company, saw this he

1 Or "shrank", sankocamāppana.
2 The red fruit of Mornordica monadelpha, a species of Amaranth.
Then Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa and his company, standing in the air above, offered a sacrifice to Agni. When the fire would not burn they asked one another, "Whose power is it that prevents the fire burning? It must be the power of Gotama the recluse." And when the fire did burn they said among themselves, "Gotama the recluse has great magic and power, but we have greater magic." He threw the oblation into the fire, but it would not fall in it. They asked themselves, "Whose power is it that prevents the oblation falling into the fire? It must be the power of Gotama the recluse." And when they had decided that it was the power of Gotama the recluse, then the oblation fell into the fire.

When they had completed the fire-sacrifice (427) they prepared to descend² from the air. But they could not do so. They asked themselves, "Whose power is it that makes us unable to descend from the air into our retreat? It must be the power of Gotama, the recluse?" And when they had decided that it was the power of Gotama the recluse, then they descended from the air into their retreat.

Then they wished to sit down, each on his own litter. But they failed to see the litters. They asked themselves, "Whose power is it that prevents us seeing our litters? It must be the power of Gotama the recluse." And when they had decided that it was the power of Gotama the recluse, then they were able to see their litters. They thought, "Gotama the recluse has great magic and power, but we have greater magic." Next they prepared to go and fetch water in their water-pots. But they could not see the pots. They asked themselves, "Whose power is this? It must be the power of Gotama the recluse." And when they had decided that it was the power of Gotama the recluse, then they were able to prepare the food. They thought, "Gotama the recluse has great magic and power, but we have greater magic."

When they had had their meal, they set about cutting logs. They raised their axes, but they could not bring them down. They asked themselves, "Whose power is this? It must be the power of Gotama the recluse." And when they had decided that it was the power of Gotama the recluse, then they were able to bring down their uplifted axes and cut the logs. They thought, "Gotama the recluse has great magic and power, but we have greater magic."

In this way, by five hundred miracles, the Exalted One convinced Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa, his two brothers³ and his company. And the last miracle was this.⁴ The Exalted One

---

¹ Lacuna.
² Literally, "(they said) we will descend", otariyāmo ti. And so of their other intended actions.
wished to go into seclusion and he said to Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa, "O Kāśyapa, I should like to go into seclusion in your fire-hut." But Kāśyapa replied, "O Gotama, this fire-hut must not be entered by any man or deva. For in it there dwells a malevolent Nāga, and we ourselves keep far away from that fire-hut for fear of the Nāga." The Exalted One, however, said, "Give me your consent, O Kāśyapa, and I will go into seclusion in that fire-hut." Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa said, "No, Gotama, I will not consent that you go into the fire-hut. This fire-hut is reputed to be evil. But here are all these many hundreds of huts of grass and leaves. Let the honourable Gotama seek seclusion in whichever one of these he likes."

But the Exalted One rose from his seat and entered the fire-hut of Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa (429) and sat down in seclusion. There in the fire-hut the Exalted One turned himself into the element of fire. The Nāga, unable to endure the heat of the Exalted One fled into the Exalted One's bowl, which had been given him by the Four Great Kings. The Exalted One inspired him with love, tamed him, and rendered him harmless, so that he no more displayed malevolence.

Because of the Exalted One's fire the fire-hut appeared to be one flaming mass. And the Matted-hair Ascetics thought, "Gotama the recluse has been burnt by the malevolent Nāga, and the whole hut is on fire." So they ran and carried water to quench the burning hut and to rescue Gotama the recluse. But the Exalted One, having tamed the Nāga and rendered him harmless, presented him to the honourable Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa. When they saw the Nāga in the Exalted One's bowl, Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa and his company were amazed.

"Gotama the recluse," said they, "has great magic and power, inasmuch as he whose dwelling might not, so 'twas said, be entered, has been overcome, by the fire of Gotama the recluse."

With this last miracle Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa and his two brothers and their companies were convinced by the Exalted One.

When he had tamed the king of serpents in the fire-hut of Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa, he carried him out in his bowl and presented him to the honourable Kāśyapa.

"See, O Kāśyapa," said he, "how the fire of him whose dwelling no one in the world might enter has been overcome by my fire."

Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa and his company were thrilled when they saw that the Nāga had been tamed and calmed by the Nāga among men.

That Nāga, because of whom the great seer's dwelling could not be entered, had been tamed and rendered harmless by the power of the Buddha.

(430) The Exalted One said:

There is no malice in one trained by me; among such, O Kāśyapa, there is none that is unrestrained. Though the heavens fall or the earth be cleaved in two, a man who has been tamed by the Buddha will fare immune from poison.

The Exalted One let the serpent go, saying, "This serpent is a restrained Nāga." The serpent assumed a human form and walked in the footsteps of the Sugata.

"Be my refuge, O Best of men," said he, "there is no longer any sin in me, since I have just now discarded the wicked heart that was mine, O greatly wise One."

"O Supreme of men, I have thrown off my guilt, since

---

1 Parivādina, past. part. of pariṣadittā. See B.H.S.D. Cf. Pali pariṣadīyatī. See also p. 421, n. 4.
2 See p. 101, n. 2.
3 A metrical version of the episode.
4 Nharati, Pali id., Sk. nirharati.
5 Literally "will not fare having poison", na... savīṣo caret.
6 Reading, as suggested by the MSS. and the metrical version below, Yāsya bhavanam, for paśya bhagavan of the text.
7 Literally "that sin (sc. which used to be mine) is not mine," āyaṁ na me aṭṭaya (Pali acaayo).
8 Aparādā, masc. with neut. predicate bāhyam kriyam; the phrase is passive in the original.
I am now sinless. O Best of guides, may I come again to thy refuge.”
And then repeatedly saluting from the right and doing obeisance with great reverence, the Nāga departed.

All the three brothers, Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa with his company of five hundred, Nadi-Kāśyapa with his company of three hundred, and Gayā-Kāśyapa with his company of two hundred were by means of these five hundred miracles converted by the Exalted One into the state of mastery. All were initiated and ordained by means of the “Come, monk” formula. “Come, monks,” said he, “live the brahma-life under the Tathāgata.” And when the Exalted One had pronounced the words “Come, monks,” every mark of the seer, every badge, every emblem and every sign disappeared from their persons. They were seen to have the three robes and the sūmbhāka bowls, their hair in its natural state, and their deportment established—all just like those of monks who had been ordained a hundred years. Such was the initiation, ordination and admission into monkhood of the three brothers, the venerable Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa, Nadi-Kāśyapa and Gayā-Kāśyapa and their companies.

(431) Now their nephew, named Upasena, had constructed a hermitage on the banks of the river Nairāṇjanā, which was well-supplied with leaves, flowers and fruits. He lived there with a company of three hundred. He was master of the four meditations, had attained the five super-knowledges, and had great magic and power.

Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa and the monks with him had thrown all the trappings they had had as seers, their shoes and their cloaks of antelope hide, their cotton robes and their water-pots, to be carried away by the river Nairāṇjanā. “Our nephew Upasena and his company,” said they, “will make use of these trappings.” And when these saw the trappings

1 See p. 67, n. 3.
2 Not certainly identical with any of the persons of this name mentioned in the Pali texts, nor with the monk who, according to the Mhvu., converted Śāriputra (see vol. 3, p. 60, text). This same Upasena has, however, been already mentioned in our text (3. 103).
3 As Senart points out, this number should be corrected into 250, ardhatriśāta. See below, p. 432 (text).
4 The text names them.
5 Moham, AMg. 6th, Sk. and Pali mogham (B.H.S.D.).
6 Jāha, 2nd sg. opt., used as aorist. See Edgerton, Gram., § 32. 91-2.
magic and power and were so quick of attainment?" The Exalted One replied, "They made a vow to that effect in a former life. It is by way of the ripening of the root of merit planted under a Buddha that these should now be possessed of great magic and power and be so quick of attainment."

Once upon a time, monks, long ago, in Hastinapura there was a king named Mahendra, who was meritorious, distinguished, righteous, a king of righteousness. He had loyal subjects, and he was generous and charitable. Now when he was king, the Buddha named Puspa, a Tathāgata, Arhan and perfect Buddha, with his community of disciples, was staying in Hastinapura by invitation.

In the land of the Kalingas there was a town named Simhapura, where three brothers of the same mother were ruling. In their kingdom a treasure had been discovered, and they brought that treasure with them from Simhapura to Hastinapura and presented it to King Mahendra. On that account King Mahendrakā became kindly disposed to the three brothers, and he asked them, "What shall I do for you?" They replied, "We desire that out of compassion for us the exalted Puspa dwell in our city for the rainy season. If we secure this to-day, we wish to perform a great deed of merit." King Mahendrakā replied, "The exalted Puspa can well stay in our city some other time. (433) May you find favour with this Pusya."

The brothers then invited the exalted Puspa and his community of disciples to their city. So the Exalted One spent the rainy season in their city, and there he passed away. The brothers paid worship to the body of the deva Puspa and erected a tope in his honour.

When King Mahendra was ruling the earth in justice and guiding his conduct with knowledge, there were three brothers living in unison, with sons and daughters loyal to them. And while they thus lived together in unison, they ruled their realm with justice, having abundant wealth and being encompassed with riches. They thus lived in joy for many years.

When the compassionate Master passed away, we, in our wisdom, we and our sons and daughters and our kinsfolk, our nobles and our chieftains, erected a tope for him here in our city.

Then with warriors on elephants, horsemen, charioteers and footsoldiers, with dance and music and song, (434) with incense, garlands and ointments, we did honour to the great seer.

And now, as the fruit of this worship at that tope, we shall not go to a bourne of ill for ninety-two kalpas. By this karma, O great Sage, we are now all tamed in thy teaching, O Wise One.

Here ends the Jataka of the venerable Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa, Nadi-Kāśyapa and Gayā-Kāśyapa.

---

1 Pali Mahinda. See D.P.N. s.v. Uruvela-Kassapa for Pali references to the story of a former life of the three Kāśyapas.
2 Pali Phussa.
3 Two other cities of this name are mentioned in the Mvw., namely, a city of the Kinnaris (2. 05, text) and the capital of Śākyamuni (3. 238, text). The Kalinga city of this name seems to be identical with one of the three Simhapuras mentioned in Pali texts. The two cities are entirely different. See D.P.N.
4 Senart doubtfully restores āparām (or āparām) for the inexplicable prāśūram and prāpādham of the MSS. He takes āparām (prāśūram) as equivalent to āparām, but has to confess that this latter word is not used by the Buddhists. Perhaps, in spite of the MSS., we should fall back on restoring the simple word pūyaṃ.
5 Reading puṣyaṇa for puṣyaṇa. The text would give "may you be favoured by this deed of merit." But the deed of merit was yet to be performed. As the Pali name of the Buddha in this story is Phussa, it is likely that we should read Puṣya for Puṣya throughout. The two names are often interchangeable in MSS. and editions, and Senart himself has often emended the latter into the former. See B.H.S.D. for instances of this confusion.
6 Or "made", akārīmaka 1st pl. aor. of karoti. See Edgerton, Gram., § 32. 40 where it is pointed out that the metre requires akārīmaka, which is also the reading of one MS.
7 Senart doubtfully restores pūparām (or pūparām) for the inexplicable prāśūram and prāpādham of the MSS. He takes pūparām (prāśūram) as equivalent to pūparām, but has to confess that this latter word is not used by the Buddhists. Perhaps, in spite of the MSS., we should fall back on restoring the simple word pūyaṃ.
8 Properly "bound to", avibaddha. But avibaddha is a compound of which it is difficult to give a significant analysis. It is Senart's conjecture from the still more obscure avanāni bandhānāni of the MSS. A possible emendation of the whole line would be prabhātabhagārānān bandhānamāh, "with abundant wealth and riches and many relations."
THE MAHĀVASTU

THE CHAPTER OF THE THOUSAND

The Exalted One left the retreat of Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa with his community of one thousand two hundred and fifty monks, and came to Dharmārāṇya1 where some great seers had their hermitage. Seven hundred Matted-hair Ascetics lived there, all of whom had mastered the four meditations and attained the rules of morality. All were two thousand years old; their roots of merit were mature and they were in their last existence. For their sake the Exalted One entered their retreat and recited to the Matted-hair Ascetics the Sahasravarga of the Dhammapada.2

Better than a thousand speeches made up of profitless words is one profitable speech by which a man who hears it is made calm.3

Better than a thousand verses made up of profitless words is one profitable verse by which a man who hears it is made calm.4

Better than a man who beats in combat hundreds of thousands of men is he who conquers one, his own self. He, verily, is the noblest conqueror.5

He who can beat hundreds of thousands month after month, is not worth a fraction6 of him who puts his faith in the Buddha.

1 Or "the Forest of Dharma". Senart gives this as a proper name in his introduction, but does not list it as such in his index. There is no corresponding Pali place-name in D.P.N., nor does it appear in B.H.S.D. either as a proper or common noun.
2 Dhammapadeto sahasravarga. Cf. the Sahassavagga of the Pali Dhammapada, vv. 100 ff. Senart maintains that the use of the two genitives vākānāṃ and gāhānāṃ, both dependent on sahasam, in the first two stanzas, respectively, with a qualifying adj. in the nom., samhitā, is not without parallel in our text, but that it puzzled the redactor of the corresponding Pali who was misled to adopt what, according to Senart, is the less admissible construction of sahasam with the nom., sahasam...vākā. Senart argues from this that the Pali represents an inferior tradition as compared with the Māhu. Max Müller (Ś.B.E. X, p. 13, n.) however, says, "Here the Pali text seems decidedly more original and perfect."
3 Dh. 100.
4 Dh. 101.
5 Dh. 103.
6 Literally, "is not worth a sixteenth part of" kalamārghati sotaśīṃ. This is verse 106 in Dh. but a different main verb in each text, yajetha (from yajati) in Dh. and jayeta (from jayati) in Māhu, gives a completely different turn to each. It is needless to remark how easily these two similarly sounding verbs could be confused in oral tradition. There can be little doubt that the Pali yajati is more original here, and gives a better sense.

(435) He who can beat hundreds of thousands month after month, is not worth a fraction of him who puts his faith in the dharma.1

He who can beat hundreds of thousands month after month, is not worth a fraction of him who puts his faith in the Sangha.

He who can beat hundreds of thousands month after month, is not worth a fraction of those who have mastered the rules of morality.

He who can beat hundreds of thousands month after month, is not worth a fraction of those who have the well-preached dharma.

Month after month the foolish man may take his meal on tip of kūsa grass, but he is not worth a fraction of the man who puts his faith in the Buddha.2

Month after month the foolish man may take his meal on tip of kūsa grass, but he is not worth a fraction of the man who puts his faith in the dharma.

Month after month the foolish man may take his meal on tip of kūsa grass, but he is not worth a fraction of the man who puts his faith in the Sangha.

Month after month the foolish man may take his meal on tip of kūsa grass, but he is not worth a fraction of the man who puts his faith in the meditations.

Month after month the foolish man may take his meal on tip of kūsa grass, but he is not worth a fraction of the men who have mastered the rules of morality.

Month after month the foolish man may take his meal on tip of kūsa grass, but he is not worth a fraction of the men who have the well-preached dharma.

A man may live a hundred years in careful tendance of

1 This and the next nine stanzas are not in the Pali Dh. See vol. II, p. 202, n. 5.
2 A proverbial expression for a scanty meal.
3 The first line of this stanza and the last line of the preceding together make up stanza 70 of Dh., in the chapter entitled Bālavaggo "The Chapter of the Fool." For sākhādhammānaṃ, however, the Dh. has sankhāda-dhammānaṃ "those who have reckoned on or recognised the truth of things or the dhamma." Sankhādhamma is an epithet of the Arhan (S. 2: 47: 4.210) and of the Paccekabuddha (Sn. 1308). It might seem better, therefore, to emend the Māhu accordingly and read sankhyāta, which in BSk. has a meaning similar to the Pali sankhāta.
the sacred fire, eating from his bowl, dwelling among corpses, and performing many a penance;

A man may, too, for just one moment worship one in whom the self is developed—that one act of worship is worth more than a hundred years of sacrificing.  

Whatever a man has offered or sacrificed in this world as he pursues his year-long quest of merit, is worth but a quarter of the homage paid to upright men.

One may live for a hundred years, immoral, with mind unconcentrated, but better is the one day's life of him who is moral and who meditates.

One may live for a hundred years, sluggish and inert, but better is the one day's life of him who firmly exerts his energy.

One may live for a hundred years without seeing the Buddha's teaching, but better is the one day's life of him who sees it.

One may live for a hundred years without seeing the unsurpassed dharma, but better is the one day's life of him who sees it.

One may live for a hundred years without seeing the rise and fall of things, but better is the one day's life of him who sees them.

One may live for a hundred years without seeing the immovable, but better is the one day's life of him who sees it.

One may live for a hundred years without seeing the immortal, but better is the one day's life of him who sees it.

The Matted-hair Ascetics were all converted by the Exalted One to mastery of the powers, and they all passed to nirvana. The Exalted One paid honour to their bodies and erected topes for them. He then left Dharmarānya and returned to the Goatherd's Banyan-tree.

---

1 These last two verses are comparable to, but not identical with Dh. 107.
2 Dh. 108.
3 Dh. 110.
4 Dh. 112.
5 Dh. 113.
6 Sc. nirvana, acyutam padam.
7 Dh 114.

THE CONVERSION OF BIMBISĀRA

The Exalted One, perfectly enlightened and having realised the aim he had set himself, was staying, not long after his enlightenment, at Uruvilvā, at the foot of the Goatherd's Banyan-tree on the banks of the river Nairaṇjanā.

Now it happened that King Śreniya Bimbisāra's brahman household-priest and tutor had at daybreak gone up to the upper terrace of the palace and was reading the detailed description of the thirty-two marks of a Great Man. King Śreniya Bimbisāra heard him, and there came to him then the recollection of the Buddha. “Ah!” said he, “may the exalted Buddha appear in my realm once more, and may I once more see him. And when I have seen him may he approve of my way of life. May I with trustful heart pay homage to the Exalted One. And may he teach me the dharma, and may I listen to and understand the dharma.”

And when the night was past King Śreniya Bimbisāra gave instructions to a certain man, saying to him, “Go, man, and quickly hitch the fine carriages, and let me know when it is done.” “So be it, your majesty,” said the man in obedience to King Śreniya Bimbisāra. Quickly he hitched the fine carriages, and when he had done so he reported. “Your majesty,” said he, “the fine carriages are ready and at your disposal.”

Then King Śreniya Bimbisāra mounted a fine carriage, and with great royal majesty and splendour and to the accompaniment of shouts of “bravo” and “hurrah” and the noise of drums, tabours, cymbals and trumpets he left the city of Rājagriha and came to a certain park. He drove on as far as the ground allowed, and then proceeded on foot. He roamed and wandered through the park, and then sat down on a golden palanquin with his face to the east, surrounded by his women and attended by his council of ministers.

---

1 Cf. the account in the Mahānāga 1. 22. The circumstances related by way of introduction are peculiar to the Mhov. Verbal parallelism with the Pali version begins only with p. 441.
2 The text repeats the whole previous statement.
3 Paryupāsyaṃ, opt. of paryupāsyati, a BSk. formation of paryupāsa. Cf. Pali paryupāsati.
When King (438) Bimbisāra looked towards the city of Rājagriha, its hills and lotus-pools, and remembered the nobles of old who were dead and gone, there came to him the forthright understanding\(^1\) of one who is disgusted\(^2\) with pleasures of sense.

He who brought increase to the realm of the Angas\(^3\) left the park and sat down on his splendid throne of gold.

The fair blossoming sāl-trees, rustling as with sound of music,\(^4\) and just then duly bursting into bloom,\(^5\) were laden with flowers.

He gazed on the hills that were filled with wild beasts, the haunts of monkeys and numerous lions.

The king sat down with his face to the east and thought of the days of old. With tear-dimmed eyes he recited these verses:

Though I now stand in glory like snow-white mount Kailāsa, yet my father and my grandfather are dead and gone, their craving still unsatisfied.\(^6\)

To what regions are they now gone, who spent their lives among these fair and bright and happy glades, these lotus-pools and crags?

To what regions are they now gone, who spent their lives among these wide-spread domains?

To what regions are they now gone, who, when they lived, enjoyed these clothes and necklaces and earrings?

To what regions are they now gone, who bathed in these delightful lotus-pools which echo to the songs\(^7\) of various birds and (439) are covered with fragrant white lotuses?

To what regions are they now gone, who spent their lives among these delightful and heavenly resorts, with their green grass nestling by the water, shady and cool and pleasant?

---

\(^1\) Yokodo manasibāro.

\(^2\) Jūgutsuno (as), gen. sg. of jūgutsu, “unhistorical hyper-Sk. for MIndic jugucchu.”

\(^3\) Jūgucchu = Sk. jūgutsu” (B.H.S.D.)

\(^4\) Sc. Bimbisāra.

\(^5\) Tantrīghobhinādita. But Senart, with reason, doubts the correctness of tantrī and suggests devīja or pātīri or other term for “bird.”

\(^6\) Samyakādālapānbodhāna, “waking up at the right time.”

\(^7\) Avadāniyā.

\(^8\) Vikālājīta, past. part. of kājāti. But this compound seems to be unknown to the dictionaries.
of Magadha, great gain is yours in that there has appeared in your land a Tathāgata whose fame is wide-spread like that of the Himalaya mountain. (441) Endued with morality, forbearance and austerity, he has lived the brahma-life and is at the end of all worldly things.

He gathers hundreds of thousands of nayutas of beings and enables them to attain immortality, the calm and the matchless peace.

King Bimbisāra replied to his brāhmaṇ priest and tutor in a verse:

Dear brāhmaṇ, you have praised1 him who is dear to me.
You have praised him who is dear to my kingdom, the dear Buddha2 who lives for the good of the world.

I give you sixteen villages of your choice, ten chariots with thoroughbred steeds harnessed to them, a hundred female slaves, and a hundred cows, because3 you have celebrated4 the glory of the dear Buddha.

Now5 it happened that the Exalted One was touring Magadha with a great company of monks to the number of one thousand two hundred and fifty. He made for Rājagriha, the city of the Magadhans, reached it, and stayed there. And King Śreniya Bimbisāra heard from his brāhmaṇ priest and tutor that the Exalted One, while touring Magadha with a great company of monks to the number of one thousand two hundred and fifty, had made for Rājagriha, the city of the Magadhans, reached it, and was staying there in the park Yaśṭivana on the hill Antagiri. When he heard this6 he gave instructions to a certain counsellor, saying to him, "Ho there, counsellor, I am going to meet the exalted Buddha. Have Rājagriha gaily bedecked. Fit out fine carriages, for

1 Kirtaye, opt. in sense of aor., 2 sg., of kirtayati.
2 Budāḥsaya, gen. obj. of kirtaye (understood); the preceding obj., priyam, "him who is dear" is, however, acc.
3 The text, however, has no causal particle here.
4 Prakirtaye, opt. = aor. 2 sg.
5 What has just been related is obviously a fragment of another version or tradition of the story of Bimbisāra's conversion. But it is cut short and recourse is had instead to the same tradition as that embodied in the Mahāvagga (V. i. 35 f.). Anyhow, from this point the account is closely parallel with that in the latter text, although there is also considerable and interesting variation in circumstantial detail.
6 These details are not in the Mahāvagga.

all the brāhmans and householders and all the craftsmen and guildsmen of Rājagriha are to go with me to meet the exalted Buddha."

(442) "So be it," said the royal counsellor in obedience to King Śreniya Bimbisāra. Quickly he hitched the fine carriages, and at the cross-roads and entrances to bazaars in the city of Rājagriha, he caused proclamations to be made, announcing, "The exalted Buddha has arrived at the park Yaśṭivana on the hill Antagiri near Rājagriha, and thither all must go along with King Śreniya Bimbisāra to meet the Exalted One."

On hearing this proclamation there assembled at the gates of the palace the council of princes and counsellors, the brāhmans with the household priest at their head, the towns- men with the guild-president at their head, the community of traders with the chief merchant at their head, and all the eighteen guilds of Rājagriha. There were1 jugglers, court-bards,2 musicians, actors, dancers, athletes, wrestlers, tambourine-players, clowns, tumblers, tam-tam players, buffoons, dvśvalas, reciters, pañcavatukas, singers, guṇavartas3, dancers, cetayikas4, courtesans,5 jesters, performers on the drum, trumpet, kettle-drum, tabour, flute, cymbal, guitar, the lute and the yella(?)—these and many other musicians gathered at the gates of the palace. All the guildsmen were there, to wit, goldsmiths, bankers, cloak-sellers, workers in jewels and stones,6 perfumers, kośānikas, oil-dealers, hawkers of jars of butter, factors of sugar, of curds, of cotton, of dried treacle, of sweet-meats and kanṭhukas, factors of wheat-flour and of barley-meal, hawkers of fruit, of roots, perfumed oil from ground powder, attavānījās,7 adivāhakas, makers of confectionery from sugar, dealers in honey and candied sugar—

1 Cf. the list on p. 113 (text), p. 111 ff. (trans.), with the notes there. The two lists are not, however, quite identical.
2 Reading vaidililīkā as on p. 113, for tilīkā.
3 Not on p. 113. Cf. guṇa, "string"; of a musical instrument.
4 Not on p. 113.
5 Gaṇikās. Not on p. 113.
6 Maṇiprastiirikī. On p. 113 we have maṇikkāra and prastiirikī, two separate words. Of prastiirikī itself B.H.S.D. says "perh. jewel-merchant?"
7 Corresponding to the equally inexplicable āgrīvatyād on p. 113. More than 18 guilds, it will be noticed, are mentioned, which is evidently the result of later elaboration.
these and other business people were there. And all the the craftsmen were there, to wit, brass-founders, coppersmiths, goldsmiths, bowl-makers, pracoopaka, roseyanas, tinsmiths, makers of lead sheets, machine-makers, garland-makers, vegetable-growers, potters, tanners, makers of iron pans, makers of mail armour, dyers, cleaners, cotton-spinners, painters, carpenters, carvers, masons, modellers, barbers, hairdressers, woodcutters, decorators, and tricksters—these and other people of various classes, lower, upper and middle, all assembled at the gates of the palace.

When the royal counsellor saw that the great crowd had assembled and the fine carriages hitched, he went to King Śreniya Bimbisāra and said to him, “Your majesty, the fine carriages are hitched and the great crowd has assembled. Sire, now let it be as you wish.” Then King Śreniya Bimbisāra mounted his fine carriage, and escorted by twelve nayutas of the brāhman and householders of Magadha, in great royal splendour and to the accompaniment of shouts of “bravo” and “hurrah” from the people, and the noise of kettledrums, tabours, cymbals and trumpets, left the city and proceeded on foot to where the Exalted One was.

Exalted One, and sat down to one side; others called out their personal and clan names to the Exalted One, and sat down to one side; others stretched out their joined hands to the Exalted One, and sat down to one side; others, again, the brāhman and householders of Magadha, remained silent and sat down to one side.

Now it happened that at that time Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa was sitting down not far from the Exalted One. And the thought occurred to those brāhman and householders of Magadha, “Does Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa live the brahma-life under Gotama the recluse, or does Gotama the recluse live the brahma-life under Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa?” But the Exalted One, aware that there was such a thought in the minds of those brāhman and householders, addressed Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa in a verse:

What did you see, O dweller in Uruvilvā, that, renowned as you were for your penances, did you abandon the sacred fire? I ask you, O Kāśyapa, the meaning of this. How did you come to abandon the fire-sacrifice?

When this had been spoken, the venerable Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa replied to the Exalted One in a verse:

In the sacrifice men speak of food and drink and sweet things, of sensual pleasures and women. But I am aware of what is dross among attachments and I therefore take no delight in sacrifice and offering.

The Exalted One spoke to the venerable Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa in a verse:

But if you do not set your heart on these things, on food and drink and sweet things, there must be something better in the world of devas and of men in which your heart delights.

(445) And the venerable Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa replied to the Exalted One in a verse:

When I had seen the Sage, calm, free from all substrate...
of rebirth, possessing nothing, rid of all attachments to existence, unchanging, and not led by others, then I lost all delight in sacrifice and offering.

The Exalted One said to the venerable Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa in a verse:

In vain did you offer the fire-sacrifice; in vain did you make your penance, since at the last you abandoned them as a snake its cast-off skin.

Then the venerable Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa replied to the Exalted One in a verse:

Yea, in vain did I offer the fire-sacrifice; in vain did I make my penance, since at the last I abandoned them as a snake its cast-off skin.

"Man is freed by fire-sacrifice and offerings," so in my ignorance I formerly believed, as I blindly followed after birth and death, unable to see the perfect immovable state.

But now do I see that pure state, for it has been so clearly revealed to me by the mighty noble Nāga. I have attained that complete and perfect state, and have escaped the round of births and death.

Many men are lost though they perform divers austerities. They do not reach perfection because they have not passed beyond doubt.

Long was I soiled, bound in the chains of wrong belief. But the clear-sighted Exalted One has set me free from all my fetters.

"The Exalted One is my Master, and I am a disciple of the

1. **Anupadika.**
   3. **Sarvabhavesvasakta.** *V. has kāmabhave asatam, "not attached to sensations" becoming." (I. B. Horner, *Ic*).
   4. This and the preceding verse are not in *V.,* and are repeated here from p. 431. The compiler has also overlooked the fact that the Buddha's reply is said to be given in a single verse (ṣākya), and has added from his memory some verses which he considered opposite here. These latter verses bear some resemblance to Thag. 1, 34. 1.
   5. **Tāyin.** See vol. 2, p. 318, n. 2. The explanation of the word there given is now found confirmed by Edgerton's remarks in *B.H.S.D.,* although the translation "mighty" i.e. "such", "so great", is still preferred to Edgerton's "holy". In other instances, e.g. 3, 257, 260, 402, the word is not an epithet of the Buddha, and has been taken as equivalent to *tāyin.*

---

Sugata." Then Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa rose up from his seat, arranged his robe over one shoulder, and bending his right knee to the ground he bowed his head at the feet of the Exalted One. After going round him thrice from the right, he stood behind the Exalted One and fanned him with a peacock's tail-feathers. It then occurred to those brāhmans and householders of Magadha that it was Uruvilvā-Kāśyapa who was living the brahma-life under Gotama the recluse.

The Exalted One then delivered a discourse on dharma to the brāhmans and householders of Magadha. "O brāhmans and householders," said he, "Body arises and ceases to be. Feeling arises and ceases to be. Perception arises and ceases to be. The *samskrāras* arise and cease to be. Consciousness arises and ceases to be. Noble disciples, brāhmans and householders, regarding body as subject to arising and ceasing to be, one regards feeling, perception, the *samskrāras* and consciousness as impermanent. Regarding body as impermanent, and feeling, perception, the *samskrāras* and consciousness as impermanent, regarding body as ill, and feeling, perception, the *samskrāras* and consciousness as ill, one regards body as being not the self, and feeling, perception, the *samskrāras* and consciousness as being not the self. Regarding body as being not the self, and feeling, perception, the *samskrāras* and consciousness as being not the self, (447) one understands that body appears and disappears. Understanding this, one understands that feeling, perception, the *samskrāras* and consciousness appear and disappear. Understanding this, one understands that feeling, perception, the *samskrāras* and consciousness are ill. Understanding this, one understands that feeling, perception, the *samskrāras* and consciousness are impermanent. Understanding this, one understands that body is ill. Understanding this, one understands that feeling, perception, the *samskrāras* and consciousness are impermanent. Understanding this, one understands that body is not the self. Understanding this, one understands that feeling,
perception, the *samskāras* and consciousness are not the self. When one understands this one does not grasp at anything in the world. And when one does not grasp one personally wins complete release. One knows that one can say 'Rebirth is ended for me. I have lived the brahma-life and done what was to be done. There is for me no further release.' Then those brāhmans and householders of Magadha thought, "Now since body is not the self, and since feeling, perception, the *samskāras* and consciousness are not the self, who is it that acts, or causes the act, prompts or instigates it, or rejects it? Who is it that appropriates or rejects these *samskāras*, since these *samskāras* are void, without a self, or what is possessed of self?"

But the Exalted One, aware that there was such a thought in the minds of those brāhmans and householders, said to his monks, "The foolish man, though it is admitted that he is without a self, avers that body, feeling, perception, the *samskāras* and consciousness are his self. But not so do I say that I am the one that acts, or causes the act, or prompts it, or appropriates it, or rejects it? If it is that appropriates or rejects these *samskāras*, since these *samskāras* are void, without a self, or what is possessed of self?"

The Tathāgata, monks, teaches that the self is a reconstitution of beings. With my deva sight, which is more complete than the sight of men, I perceive beings passing away and coming to be. I perceive beings fair and foul, happy and unhappy, mean and exalted according to karma. Again, monks, I do not say that I am the one that acts, or causes the act, or prompts it, or appropriates it, or rejects it, the one who rejects these *samskāras* here and appropriates others elsewhere. The *samskāras* rise and they cease to be, and they do so from a cause.

"There is the erroneous view of becoming and not-becoming without a cause. But, monks, who perceives with true perfect insight that it is from a cause that the *samskāras* arise, will have none of this erroneous view of becoming, this heresy of eternalism. He, monks, who perceives with true perfect insight that it is from a cause that the *samskāras* cease to be, will have none of this erroneous view of ceasing to be, this heresy of annihilation. And so, monks, the Tathāgata, avoiding these two extremes, teaches a dharma that is a mean between them.

"The *samskāras* are the result of ignorance; consciousness is the result of the *samskāras*; individuality is the result of consciousness; the six spheres of sense are the result of individuality; touch is the result of the six spheres of sense; feeling is the result of touch; craving is the result of feeling; grasping is the result of craving; coming-to-be is the result of grasping; birth is the result of coming-to-be, and the result of birth is old age, death, grief, lamentation, ill, despair and tribulation. In such a way there comes to be the arising of all this great mass of ill. But from the cessation of ignorance there comes the cessation of the *samskāras*; from the
cessation of the *samskāras* comes that of consciousness; from the cessation of consciousness comes that of individuality; from the cessation of individuality comes that of the six spheres of sense; from the cessation of the six spheres of sense comes that of touch; from the cessation of touch comes that of feeling; from the cessation of feeling comes that of craving; (449) from the cessation of craving comes that of grasping; from the cessation of grasping comes the cessation of coming-to-be; from the cessation of coming-to-be comes the cessation of birth; from the cessation of birth comes that of old age and death; from the cessation of old age and death comes that of grief, lamentation, ill, despair and tribulation. In such a way there comes to be the cessation of all this great mass of ill.”

Thus did the Exalted One speak when he was staying in Rājagṛihā, in the park Yasāṭivana on the hill Antagiri. And while this exposition was being given King Śreniya Bimbisāra won the spotless, pure and clear dharma-insight into things, as also did the eleven *nayutas*. And the twelve *nayutas* of teamsters and coachmen afterwards came to the refuge of the Buddha, dharma and Sangha. The enraptured King Śreniya Bimbisāra, monks, and the brāhmans and householders of Magadha applauded the words of the Exalted One.

**ARINDAMA**

The monks said to the Exalted One, “Behold, Lord, how a rich reward was given by King Śreniya Bimbisāra to his household-priest when he came to hear of the Exalted One.” The Exalted One replied, “Monks, that was not the first time he did so.” The monks asked, “Was there another occasion, Lord?” The Exalted One replied, “Yes, monks.”

---

1 Presumably, of the brāhmans and householders. But the number of these is given on p. 443 (text) as "twelve nayutas".

2 This is Jātaka No. 529 (Fausboll). J. 5. 247. But the details vary greatly in the two texts.

3 Reading *pasiya* for *kisya* of the text.

4 *Ācchāya*, Prakrit for *ācchāda*. For the latter see p. 36, n. 2.

---

Once upon a time, monks, long ago, in the city of Mithilā, the capital of the country of Videha, a king named Arindama was ruling. He was righteous, a king of righteousness, had loyal subjects, and was charitable and generous. He had a great army and many beasts of burden. He had sixty thousand elephants and sixty thousand horses all fully caparisoned; he had sixty thousand chariots with coverings made of the skins of tigers and lions, and carrying banners and bells, (450) with stout armour, and flags and pennons fluttering aloft. He had sixty thousand milch cows sucking calves; sixty thousand girls and sixty thousand palanquins of gold, silver and ivory.

Again, monks, King Arindama had sixty thousand vessels of gold and sixty thousand of silver. Again, monks, King Arindama had sixty thousand treasures inherited from his great grandfather, and sixty thousand cities which were flourishing, rich and peaceful.

Now King Arindama’s household priest had a son named Śrōṇa who was proficient in the three Vedas, in phonology, in the fifth branch of study, that is, traditional lore, in the indexes and ritual, and expert in the verbal exposition of the Brāhmaṇas and Vedas. He lived following the path of the ten moralities. Seeing the peril of sensual pleasures he went to the Himalayas and embraced the religious life of a seer. There, pursuing the brāhmaṇic way of life with endeavour, effort and exertion, he achieved the four meditations, attained the five super-knowledges, and became a seer of great magic and power.

But, monks, after a long time had gone by, Śrōṇa the seer thought, “King Arindama and I were boys and playmates..."
together. Now he has been ruling his kingdom for eighty-four thousand years, and it is time for him to go forth to the religious life. Let me then urge him to do so." Then, monks, Śrōṇaṅka the seer, in the time it takes a strong man to stretch out his folded arms and fold his outstretched arms, in a moment’s time rose up in the air at his hermitage in the Himalayas and alighted in the Mango Grove of Mahādeva. And, monks, the brāhmaṇa household priest and royal tutor of King Arindama saw Śrōṇaṅka the seer seated at the foot of a mango tree in the Mango Grove of Mahādeva. He approached him, and having welcomed and greeted him he bade him farewell, and then proceeded (451) to Mithilā to inform King Arindama. At that very time, monks, there had come to King Arindama a loathing for pleasures of sense. After profound thought there came to him a desire to see Srotaka.aka.aka.aka.aka.aka.

And, monks, the brahman household priest and royal tutor of King Arindama saw Śrōṇaṅka the seer seated at the foot of a mango tree in the Mango Grove of Mahādeva. He approached him, and having welcomed and greeted him he bade him farewell, and then proceeded (451) to Mithilā to inform King Arindama. At that very time, monks, there had come to King Arindama a loathing for pleasures of sense. After profound thought there came to him a desire to see Śrōṇaṅka the seer. And, monks, on that occasion King Arindama recited these verses:

I’ll give a fair village and gaily dressed women to him who gives me news of Śrōṇaṅka, my friend and playmate. The king had a brahman teacher of good family, who, seeing him so unhappy and dejected, said to him, ‘Give the fair village and the gaily dressed women to me, for I will give you news of Śrōṇaṅka, your friend and playmate. In your own dominion, in the ground of your own park, where the mangos flower and bear fruit, there sits the seer. Then the king hurriedly spoke to a counsellor:

1 I.e., he was a caabasaṁtin. Cf. M. 2. 76 where 84,000 years seem a stock term of years for playing at boy’s sports, being a viceroy, king, etc.

2 Or “in the mango grove of a Mahādeva.” It is listed as a proper name in Senart’s index, but is not recorded in B.H.S.D., nor mentioned in Pali texts. On the whole it is simpler to take it as a proper name of a place. But Miss I. B. Horner, in a letter, makes the brilliant suggestion that the right reading here should be Mahakāva. She writes: “According to the Makkhadeva Sutta (M. 2. 74) Makkhadeva’s Mango Grove was near Mithilā and according to MA. 3. 309 the grove was originally planted by Makkhadeva, and although other kings replaced trees that died, the grove was known by its early name.”

3 Vyākulaṇḍa. See p. 441, n. 4.

4 Actually the king speaks only the first verse.

5 Ākhyāśi, aorist with future sense(?), so Edgerton, Gram., p. 210, but Senart would rather regard it as a truncated form of a future ākhyāya, with optative ending.

6 The second line is identical with the corresponding line in J. 5. 250, but the first line, stating the reward, is totally different.

7 In J. the news is given by a young lad from the harem.

ARINDAMA

Quickly harness for me all my caparisoned elephants. Let the drums and tabours sound, and one trumpet among them. I fain would see my comrade Śrōṇaṅka, and reverently wait upon him. And he set forth for the forest with its varied fruit-bearing trees...

And there he saw the seer, his former friend and playmate, and on seeing Śrōṇaṅka there he thus spoke to him.

(452) How is it, monk, that, wretched, shaven, clad in a robe, and poor, without mother and father, you stand in meditation at the foot of a tree?

But, monks, Śrōṇaṅka the seer replied to King Arindama in a verse:

O king, he is not wretched who realises the dharma in his own person. But whoso does violence to the dharma, the man who delights not in this dharma, it is he, O king, that is wretched, his destiny utter darkness.

Then, monks, King Arindama, spoke to Śrōṇaṅka the seer in a verse:

How, friend Śrōṇaṅka, can you be at ease as you lie at the edge of the forest? How, living alone in the wood, can you be happy?

How can it be that your body suffers no torment? I’ll bestow on you my protection and take you to the city.

* This verse has too long a lacuna to admit of translation. It does not seem to correspond to any verse at J. 5. 251.

* Reading, as Senart suggests, amādāpiṇika for samātā. The corresponding verse in J. 5. 251 has amātiho apīthiko.

* Reading dharmam kāyena sampriśāno for dharmakīyasaya triyāpī ca of Senart’s text, which the MSS. do not seem to support at all. The emendation proposed brings the line into complete accord with the corresponding Pali (J. 5. 251)—dhammaṁ kāyena phassaṁ, which J. trans. (5, p. 130) renders, ‘who in his every action has aye attained to truth.’ But to translate kāyena by ‘action’ is incorrect. Kāya is here both nāma-kāya and rūpākāya (see e.g. SaA. 2. 394), the ‘whole person’. The verse occurs also at Divy. 560 ‘na rājan kriyāno loke dharmakāyena sampriśato.

* Samupākramya, corresponding in sense to nirāṃkatae of J.

* It is difficult to conceive what opposite sense can be drawn from Senart’s text here. He reads jyotiṣataṁ pārāśayaṁ, “his end is the jyotiṣaṁ” (= a particular name for a Soma sacrifice. See M.W.). The MSS., however, clearly have tama not stoma. Jyotiṣataṁ might possibly be interpreted to mean the “darkness (or darkening) of light,” but, it has been thought better to restore here the reading of Divy. 560, kāyena kāyaṁ pārāśayaṁ “his end is darkness of darkness.”
But, monks, Śrōṇaka the seer replied to King Arindama in a verse:

O king, what is a kingdom to a man who fares all alone?
This is the first blessing of the poor, homeless monk.\(^1\)

I go from village to village, traverse kingdoms and towns, heedless of all, with none to thwart me. This is the second blessing of the poor, homeless monk.

Though there be robbers on the way he goes, with his bowl and his robe he ever moves secure. This is the third blessing of the poor, homeless monk.

(453) Though Māthila be on fire, there is nothing of his that is burning. This is the fourth blessing of the poor, homeless monk.

These monks do not hoard,\(^2\) in granary, pot or basket.\(^3\) But they stand around and beg,\(^4\) and live dutifully on what they get. This is the fifth blessing of the poor, homeless monk.

Wanderers are maintained by various families and by

---

\(^1\) There is considerable difference in the respective descriptions of these blessings in J. and Mhev. The former enumerates eight blessings.  
\(^2\) Or “deposit”, osaranti. The context requires that this verb be given a causal sense, or even actually changed into the causal osārenti. Edgerton (B.H.S.D.) s.v. avasarati, after noting that the verb in the corresponding Pali verse (J. 5. 232) is upeñti, renders osaranti here by “go to” or “resort to”. Avasarati, however, the Sk. form of the verb, denotes “to arrive at” quite as often as “to approach to”, and in our text here osaranti is used in conjunction with the loc. case. Osārenti, the causal form, is used in BSk., as in Pāli, in the technical sense of “restoring” a monk to his status after doing penance for a fault. But in Pāli it is also, even if only as a v. of osāpeti, used in the sense of “to deposit” (P.E.D.). This last verb is, according to Morris (J.P.T.S., 1887, p. 153) caus. of ava-sā, Sk. avasāyayati (cf. Pāli ava-seti, oseti), but by MSS. and Pāli grammarians it is taken as caus. of ava-pi, sarāpeti being contracted to tāpeti. See P.E.D. The verb oseti itself is found at Thag. 2. 285 of which the repetitive passages at J. 2. 252 and S. 1. 236 have opeti, which, in turn, may be the caus. of opeti, and is anyhow used in the sense of “to deposit” “to receive”. Thag. glosses opeti with thapeti. Opeti also is a v. for upeti at J. 2. 352. Not only the context, therefore, but the parallel passages make it clear that whatever the exact form of the verb in our text may be it must be given the meaning of “to deposit”, or something similar. The absence of any object to osaranti (osārenti) need be regarded as no more strange than the frequent absence of in the English “to deposit” and “to hoard”,

\(^3\) Reading as Edgerton (B.H.S.D.) rightly suggests, kalaṭiya, loc. sg. of kalaṭipahā (loc.). The Mhev. MSS. have kalaṭiyāyaṃ. Senart’s restoration leads him sadly astray in his interpretation. He has, for example, to take koṭhāsamim osaranti as a loc. absolute, and translates it, “quand laisse (le provision dans) le grenier.”

\(^4\) Reading esāna for esāno.
To Saññīva, Kālasūtra, Sanghāta, and the two Rauravas, Mahā-Avīci, Tapana and Sampratāpāna.1

So are those eight great hells called. Hard to get through are they, being full of frightful creatures.2 Each has a subsidiary hell.

Four-cornered3 are they, with four gates. They are divided up and well-laid out in squares, a hundred yojanas high and a hundred square.

These hells are surrounded with walls of iron,4 with a vault of iron above. Their floor is of hot and glowing iron.

Greedily burning5 are they, terrible, flaming, hard to endure, hair-raising, fearful, terrifying, and evil.

They are awe-inspiring, being filled with hundreds of flames. Each sheds its glow abroad for a hundred yojanas.

Here the many fearsome creatures, the great sinners, burn a long time, even for hundreds of years.

With huge scourgings of fire the warders of hell mercilessly beat those who have sinned.

(455) All this I shall tell you of duly in verse. Give ear and attentively listen to me as I speak.

In the hell Saññīva creatures hang with their feet up and heads down, the while they are trimmed with axes and knives.

Carried away by anger and frenzy, they assail one another with their own sharp talons of iron.

Sharp knives also grow in their hands, wherewith these utterly demented creatures rend one another.

A cool wind blows on their mangled limbs, and every limb grows whole again, that their former deeds may be requited.6

In a cool wind blows on their mangled limbs, their former deeds may be requited. 6

For these hells and the whole passage generally, see vol. I, p. 6 ff. Edgerton (B.H.S.D.), however, quotes F. Mus, La Lumière des six voies (p. 94 ff.) who says that catukāraḥ should be retained, with the same meaning.

Reading, as in 1. 9, ayaḥ prākārāparipāsāt for atthacaraparipāsāt, "and those who are thrown into hell." Otherwise Edgerton (B.H.S.D. s.v. prākāraḥ), but it is the hells, not the inmates, that are described here.

Kadaryatāpanā. Kadaryā, Sk., = "stingy," and so Pali kadariya. Edgerton (B.H.S.D.) says, "perh. evil, wicked (of persons)" but this and the other adjectives are applied to the hells themselves, not to the inmates. Cf. vol. I, 9 (text) where more or less the same adjectives are applied to āvasātāḥ, "dwellings," (in opposition to narākā, implied).

The text here gives a better sense than that of the corresponding verse at vol. I, p. 10 (text).
They give them molten red copper to drink, and this passes through their inwards down to their lowest parts.

Evil-doers who follow the path of sensual pleasures and do not perform the right deed, go down to hell.

But the men who eschew wicked deeds, whose conduct is entirely virtuous, do not pass to the bourne of ill.

Therefore with regard to the two kinds of karma, the good and the bad, one should avoid the bad and ensue the good and fair.

Or in other words one should cultivate the noble and fair Eight-fold Path, and by abandoning all that is ill come to know the dharma that brings no rebirth.

(457) Such, your majesty, are the sufferings borne in the hells by those who are evil-doers, the heedless and the foolish.

This, O king, do I say unto you—be not heedless of the dharma lest you fall headlong into a terrible hell.

When he heard the eloquent words of Sronaka, the king was greatly moved and a strange and shuddering tremor took him. Huddled then he spoke to his counsellor and said, "Quickly bring here the young prince Dirghayu.

"For I have a young son, Prince Dirghayu. Him will I establish on the throne and he will be your king."

Then the king's messengers and the counsellors out of pity quickly fetched Prince Dirghayu.

Then, monks, King Arindama addressed Prince Dirghayu in verse:

I tell you, sir, the religious life appeals to me, lest like the witless crow I become a slave of my desires.

Here I have sixty thousand cities and a rich and peaceful realm. To these succeed, my son; I hand over my kingdom to you.

This very day I will go forth to the religious life, lest like the witless crow I become the slave of my desires. Who knows but that tomorrow I shall be dead? For there has to be a meeting with Death and his mighty host.

Here I have sixty thousand elephants all gayly caparisoned, tusked and powerful, wearing harness of gold, with riders armed with spears, lances, clubs, axes and lassoes.

To these succeed, my son; I hand over the kingdom to you.

This very day I will go forth to the religious life, lest like the witless crow I become the slave of my desires. Who knows but that tomorrow I shall be dead?

Here I have sixty thousand steeds of Sindh, fleet of foot, gaily bedecked, all ridden by heroes... lest like the witless crow I become the slave of my desires.

Here I have sixty thousand cows each with a suckling calf. To these succeed, my son; I hand over the kingdom to you.

This very day I will go forth to the religious life, lest like the witless crow I become the slave of my desires. Who knows but that tomorrow I shall be dead?

Here I have sixty thousand maidens with jewels, gems and earrings bedecked. To these succeed, my son; I hand the kingdom to you.

This very day I will go forth to the religious life, lest like the witless crow I become the slave of my desires. Who knows but that tomorrow I shall be dead?

Here I have sixty thousand palanquins made of gold and silver. To these succeed, my son; I hand over the kingdom to you.

---

2. Āgāmya, Pāli āgāma. B.H.S.D. cites only one instance (Divy. 269) of this sense of the word in BSk. The usual meaning is "because of", etc. See vol. I, p. 198, n. 2. For dhūpaṃāgāmya karma vol. I, p. 12 has dhūpaṃā-pārāyāḥ karmas, "karmas are of two kinds."
3. Aka vā punar, "or yet again."
4. Dharmam niropādham. See B.H.S.D.
6. Literally, "last I go to the power of my desires," mā hāmādyām eka-manuvaṅgā. The verb anuvaṅgā (anu-aga) is the root aorist of anu-agā, without a consonantal termination. The same form appears elsewhere on the same page, but in the repetition on the next page, the form used is anuvaṅgā, with yrd pers. ending for the rst. See Edgerton, Grem. § 32. 106. The augmented form of the aorist is used here with mā, instead of the usual Sk. augmentless form.
This very day I will go forth to the religious life, (459) lest like the witless crow I become the slave of my desires. Who knows but that tomorrow I shall be dead? For there has to be a meeting with Death and his mighty host.

Here I have sixty thousand vessels made of gold and silver. To these succeed, my son; I hand over the kingdom to you.

This very day I will go forth to the religious life, lest like the witless crow I become the slave of my desires. Who knows but that tomorrow I shall be dead? For there has to be a meeting with Death and his mighty host.

Here I have sixty thousand treasures, a plentiful store of gold. To these succeed, my son; I hand over the kingdom to you.

This very day I will go forth to the religious life, lest like the witless crow I become the slave of my desires. Who knows but that tomorrow I shall be dead? For there has to be a meeting with Death and his mighty host.

Here I have sixty thousand treasures, a plentiful store of the seven precious stones. To these succeed, my son; I hand over the kingdom to you.

This very day I will go forth to the religious life, lest like the witless crow I become the slave of my desires. Who knows but that tomorrow I shall be dead? For there has to be a meeting with Death and his mighty host.

Then, monks, Prince Dirghāyu replied to Payaka,

quickly lead him within the women's apartment in my palace, where all joy abounds. These deva-like maidens will delight him.

Then the magnificent chief counsellors took the prince and with great royal pomp led him within the city of Mithilā.

But then a royal maiden gaily bedecked with garlands and jewels stood up and spoke to the king:

Tell us this, are you a Gandharva, or are you Śakra, the razer of cities? By your majesty's consent, I ask you: How can you leave us, your rich and peaceful realm, Prince Dirghāyu, your counsellors, and all your stores and wealth?

The king replied to the royal maiden:

No deva, or Nāga, or Gandharva, or Śakra the razer of cities, am I. I am a human being who became terrified of sensual pleasures on hearing the counsel of a seer. And lest like the witless crow I become the slave of my desires, (461) this very day will I do what I wish. Who knows but that tomorrow I shall be dead? For there has to be a meeting with Death and his mighty host.

---

1 Senart misunderstands this simile. He takes it to mean that the king is afraid he will drag the boy to ruin as the wrecked ship does the merchants. He accordingly prints mā vayam antarāyam karoma . . . mama, "lest we (= I) cause an obstacle to (this son) of mine," i.e., lest I lead him into danger. But the king conceives he is going forth to his salvation in the religious life, to which wives and sons and daughters are acknowledged hindrances. It is obvious, therefore, that Senart's text should be emended to read, on the analogy of J. 5. 250, mā evyam antarāyam kareyya . . . mama. Whether the four syllables still wanting to complete the line can be supplied by restoring putakali (= putakali in the Pali) cannot be decided on the evidence of the MSS. quoted in the apparatus. For the verb form kareyya cf. vol. 2, p. 144 (text). See Edgerton, Gram., p. 207.

2 It is better to take this line as the second line of this verse, where Senart leaves a lacuna instead, than as the first line of the next verse, to which he assigns three lines.

3 See vol. 2, p. 52, n. 1.

4 Rājānātim, for -ānattim, adverbial acc. of -ānati, Pali and BSk. (only in Mhū.) Sk. ānapati. The context requires the sense of "permission" here, rather than command. B.H.S.D. does not cite this instance of -ānati, all the instances there cited being from the prose passages.

5 The Mhū. differs considerably from J. here.

6 kuryātiṣṭam. Kuryāti (t) is 3rd sg. opt. with 1st sg. subject. Cf. Edgerton, Gram., § 25. 11, where, however, this instance is not cited.
When he had so spoken the king was initiated into the religious life in the presence of Śrōṇaka the seer.

The Exalted One said, "Do you think, monks, that at that time and on that occasion the seer named Śrōṇaka was somebody else? Verily you must not think so. And why? Because I at that time and on that occasion was the seer named Śrōṇaka. Nor must King Arindama be thought to be somebody else, for he was King Śreniya Bimbisāra here. Then, too, did he bestow a rich reward on him who told him of Śrōṇaka the seer. And now likewise has he bestowed a rich reward on the priest's son for speaking the praises of the Buddha."

Here ends the Jātaka of King Arindama.

Thus did the Exalted One speak, and the devas, Asuras, Gauḍjas, Kinnaras, Mahoragas, the whole concourse, and the monks, were elated, and applauded the words of the Exalted One.

Here ends the Mahāvastu Avadāna in the version of the Lokottaravādins of the noble Mahāsāṅghikas.

---

1 The text actually ends with a distich, a sort of envoy summing up the doctrine of the Mahāvastu as follows—"The Tathāgata spoke of the cause of those things which proceed from a cause, and the Great Recluse also told of their cessation." Finally, Senart prints the colophon of the Bibliothèque Nationale manuscript (Fonds Burnouf), the foundation of his text, with variations from the Minayeff manuscript. The colophon is dated the year 920 of the Nepal era (A.D. 1800).
INDEX

Body, 52 f., 374, 329 f., 331 f., 334 f., 336 f.

Bonds (bondage), 59, 175, 374, 397 f., 417

Bowls, material of, 292


Brahma-states, 104 n., 422 n., 423 n.

Brahman(s), a brahman, 242, 263, 383, 397, 404, 407, 419 (the true), 420, 425 (the true), 439, 443, 447 f., 451 f.

Brass, 335

Brides purchased, 8

Bronze, II9, 191, 335, 444

Brutes, sphere of, 242, 263, 383

Bronze, II9, 191, 335, 444

Bonds (bondage), 59, 175, 374, 397 f., 406; plurality of, 134; previous association with, 268, 287, 374, 389; of other worlds, 337, 318; of the sun, 377; dharma, 92, 114, 379; kinsman of, 134

Braves, 323

Brothers of the sun, 377; dharma.

Buddha(s), a brāhmā, 407; antiquity of his teaching, 200 ff., 231 ff.; attributes of, 98, 300, 376, 407, 426; austerities, 288, 299; compassion, 98, 120, 227, 243; deval devas, 107, 269, 299, 308, 317, 335; divisions of his thoughts about, 195 f.; eighty minor characteristics, 65, 310, see also Great Man; either be-theman or kṣatriyān, 236 f.; eye of, 307; faith in, 436, fast after enlightenment, 99, 261 ff., 277, 299, 299; feet of, 117, 119; field of, 135, 262 f., 265, 337, 340 n.; first sermon, 333 f.; form of escort, 244; former, 221 f.; future, 230, 233, 235 f., 267, 320, 322; hands of, 248, 256; hesitation to preach dharma, 302 f.; his insurance, 69, 98, 137, 198, 307, 407, 426; his dharma body, 339; king of dharma, 92, 114, 379; kinsman of the sun, 377 f.; 409; length of life, 226 ff.; marvels attending journey, 96 ff., 99, 244 f.; meditation in eating, 107; Nāga of Nāgas, 400, 446; obligation of, 318; of other worlds, 337 f.; plurality of, 134; previous association with, 300, 406 f.; rarity of, 63; second sermon, 329 ff.; service to former Buddha, 56, 269, 271, 322, 335, 394, 406; sixty qualities of voice, 338; seven stripes of, 110, 377; smile of, 134 f.; states of, 193, 210, 220, 407; ten powers of, see Tathāgata;

three-tenth marks of excellence, 65, 250, 331, 375, 376; veil of hair between eyes, 249; versed in the Vedas, 220; walks on air, 114.

Burden, 250 f., 304 n.


Caravanserai, epithet of Buddha, 66, 344

Carpet, 117

Carriages, 40, 43, 100, 119, 143, 173, 175, 176, 178, 210, 215 ff., 220, 223, 225, 236, 282, 297, 306 (the true), 328, 330, 361, 367, 374 f., 370 ff., 389 f., 396 (the true), 397, 404, 407, 419 (the true), 420 f., 425 (the true), 439, 443, 447 f., 451 f.

Brass, 335

Brides purchased, 8

Bronze, 119, 191, 335, 444

Brutes, sphere of, 242, 263, 383

Buddha(s), a brāhmā, 407; antiquity of his teaching, 200 ff., 231 ff.; attributes of, 98, 300, 376, 407, 426; austerities, 288, 299; compassion, 98, 120, 227, 243; deval devas, 107, 269, 299, 308, 317, 335; divisions of his thoughts about, 195 f.; eighty minor characteristics, 65, 310, see also Great Man; either be-theman or kṣatriyān, 236 f.; eye of, 307; faith in, 436, fast after enlightenment, 99, 261 ff., 277, 299, 299; feet of, 117, 119; field of, 135, 262 f., 265, 337, 340 n.; first sermon, 333 f.; form of escort, 244; former, 221 f.; future, 230, 233, 235 f., 267, 320, 322; hands of, 248, 256; hesitation to preach dharma, 302 f.; his insurance, 69, 98, 137, 198, 307, 407, 426; his dharma body, 339; king of dharma, 92, 114, 379; kinsman of the sun, 377 f.; 409; length of life, 226 ff.; marvels attending journey, 96 ff., 99, 244 f.; meditation in eating, 107; Nāga of Nāgas, 400, 446; obligation of, 318; of other worlds, 337 f.; plurality of, 134; previous association with, 300, 406 f.; rarity of, 63; second sermon, 329 ff.; service to former Buddha, 56, 269, 271, 322, 335, 394, 406; sixty qualities of voice, 338; seven stripes of, 110, 377; smile of, 134 f.; states of, 193, 210, 220, 407; ten powers of, see Tathāgata;
INDEX

Yaṣṭa (yittha), 123
Ruccha (lokhā), 179
Rocati (id.), 60
Roṣṭa(?), 112
Roṣyasa(?), 444
Langhaka (id.), 111
Lagnati (laggati), 125
Lahu (id.), 2
Lūkha (id.), 363

Vanigrāma, 156
Valāčī, 264
Vārīka, 112
Vigrāheta (viggahita), 278
Vijīhati (id.), 457
Vittāleti, 124
Vilulita (id.), 130
Visarjayati (vissajjeti), 205
Visārtha, 352
Vītisārayati (vittisāreti), 46
Vīra, 368
Vutta (id.), 338
Vuddhi (vudṣhī), 22
Vusta (vuttha), 316
Vethayati (vethetī), 389
Vethati (id.), 327
Velambaka, 111
Veṣṭeti, 173
Vaiṭālīka (vetālikā), 110
Vaiṣṭārika (vīṭhārika), 227
Vopasamati (ūpasamati), 368
Vyākutsanā, xviii, 441